

WebWorks ePublisher Platform

Writer Guide

April 30, 2014

Copyright © 2001-2014 Quadralay® Corporation. All rights reserved.

Quadralay and WebWorks are registered trademarks of Quadralay Corporation. FrameMaker is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Inc. Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation. Sun, Java and JavaHelp are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries. . Doc-To-Help is a registered trademark of ComponentOne LLC. All other trademarks used herein are the properties of their respective owners and are used for identification purposes only.

Portions of this software are copyrighted by others, as follows:

Apache Ant

Copyright © 1999-2006 The Apache Software Foundation

Apache FOP

Copyright © 1999-2006 The Apache Software Foundation

DITA-OT

The DITA Open Toolkit is licensed for use, at the user's election, under the Common Public License v1.0 or the Apache Software Foundation License v2.0. If, at the time of use, the Project Management Committee has designated another version of these licenses or another license as being applicable to the DITA Open Toolkit, user may select to have its subsequent use of the DITA Open Toolkit governed by such other designated license.

Copyright © 1999-2006 The Apache Software Foundation

Ghostscript API wrapper

Copyright © 2004, Pelagon Limited. All rights reserved.

ImageMagick

Copyright © 2002 ImageMagick Studio, a non-profit organization dedicated to making software imaging solutions freely available.

International Components for Unicode (ICU)

Copyright © 1995-2003 International Business Machines Corporation and others. All rights reserved.

iText

Copyright © 1999-2005 by Bruno Lowagie and Paulo Soares. All rights reserved.

Java and JavaHelp

Copyright © 2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved. Use is subject to license terms. Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun Logo, Solaris, Java, the Java Coffee Cup Logo, JDK, Java Foundation Classes (J.F.C.), Java Plug-in and JavaHelp are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

JGL - The Generic Collection Library for Java™

Copyright © 1997 ObjectSpace, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Microsoft DotNetZip

Copyright © 2006, 2007 Microsoft Corporation, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399 U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Microsoft Help Workshop

Copyright © 2004 Microsoft Corporation, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399 U.S.A. All rights reserved.

NetAdvantage

Copyright ©1992-2005 Infragistics, Inc., Windsor Corporate Park, 50 Millstone Road, Building 200 - Suite 150, East Windsor, NJ 08520. All rights reserved.

Oracle Help

Copyright © 2002 Oracle Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Saxon

Copyright © 1999-2003 Intalio, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Various .Net Utilities

Portions copyright © 2002-2004 The Genghis Group (<http://www.genghisgroup.com/>)

Xerces

Copyright © 1999-2004 The Apache Software Foundation. All rights reserved.

Contents

The WebWorks ePublisher Platform Documentation	xv
Contacting Quadralay.	xv
Conventions	xvi

Chapter 1: Introduction to the WebWorks ePublisher Platform 1

What Is ePublisher?	1
Workflow.	2
WebWorks ePublisher Platform Components.	2
Supported Input Formats	3
Supported Output Formats.	4
How ePublisher Helps You	4
Streamline and Automate the Content Publishing Process	5
Produce High Quality Deliverables with Fewer Individual Dependencies.	5
Reduce Support Costs and Increase Customer Satisfaction	6
Quickly Update and Deliver Content More Often.	6
Reduce Content Management Life Cycle Costs	6
How Organizations Use ePublisher	7
Automatically Update Content on Web Sites and Wikis	7
Deliver Full-Featured, Context-Sensitive Help Systems.	8
Produce Single-Sourced Print and Online Optimized Content	8
Features Available in Each Output Format	9

Chapter 2: Planning and Installing ePublisher 11

Licensing Considerations.	11
Components and Supported Configurations	11
Checklist: Installing ePublisher Components	12
Requirements	13
ePublisher Express, ePublisher Designer, and ePublisher AutoMap Requirements.	13
Additional Input Format Requirements.	14
Additional Output Format Requirements	14
Downloading ePublisher Installation Kits	22
Downloading and Installing the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework.	23
Enabling JavaScript	23

Installing ePublisher	23
Installation Order for ePublisher Components	24
Installing ePublisher Components	24
Understanding Installed Sample Projects and Stationery	27
Enabling Target Setting Permissions After Installing ePublisher Express	27
Working with Contract IDs	28
Viewing Licensing and Contract ID Information	28
Obtaining Contract IDs	29
Entering Contract IDs	30
Managing Licensing in Environments without Internet Connectivity	30
Updating Licensing	30
Deactivating Licensing	31
Upgrading from Previous Versions	31
Preparing to Upgrade	32
Upgrading Typical ePublisher Implementations	34
Upgrading Implementations with Advanced Customizations	35
Uninstalling ePublisher	37
Troubleshooting Installation, License Keys, and Uninstallation	38
Problems Installing ePublisher	39
Problems with Contract IDs and Licensing	41
Problems Uninstalling ePublisher	41

Chapter 3: Exploring ePublisher 45

Understanding the ePublisher Workflow	45
Stationery Designers and ePublisher Designer	46
Writers and ePublisher Express	47
Automating Output Generation with ePublisher AutoMap	48
Exploring the ePublisher User Interfaces	49
Exploring the ePublisher Express User Interface	49
Exploring the ePublisher Designer User Interface	50
Understanding the Start Page	51
Understanding Document Manager	52
Understanding Output Explorer	55
Understanding the Log Window	57
Understanding Style Designer	57
Understanding the Preview Window	58
Exploring the ePublisher AutoMap User Interface	60
Exploring ePublisher Using Sample Source Documents, Projects, and Stationery	60
Checklist: Exploring ePublisher and Producing Output	61

Producing Output Using Sample Source Documents and Stationery	62
Resetting Evaluation Materials	62
Understanding the Sample Source Documents and Stationery	63
Adding Sample Source Documents to the Exploring ePublisher Project	65
Reviewing Sample Exploring ePublisher Source Documents	67
Generating Output Using the Exploring ePublisher Project	68
Reviewing Exploring ePublisher Generated Output	69
Customizing Exploring ePublisher Output	74
Implementing Online Features Using Sample Source Documents and Stationery	80
Exploring Additional ePublisher Capabilities	88
Customizing Your ePublisher Workspace	89
Specifying General ePublisher Preferences	89

Chapter 4: Preparing Adobe FrameMaker Source Documents 91

Checklist: Preparing FrameMaker Source Documents	91
Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker	93
Understanding Custom Marker Types in FrameMaker	93
Understanding Paragraph and Character Formats in FrameMaker	97
Obtaining and Applying the Latest Adobe FrameMaker Template	99
Importing Custom Marker Types in FrameMaker	100
Creating Custom Marker Types in FrameMaker	100
Creating a Passthrough Marker in FrameMaker	101
Creating Cross-References and Links in FrameMaker	102
Working with Tables in FrameMaker	105
Applying Table Formats in FrameMaker	105
Creating Table Header Rows in FrameMaker	105
Creating Table Footer Rows in FrameMaker	106
Working with Images in FrameMaker	107
Inserting Images in FrameMaker	108
Creating Image Links in FrameMaker	110
Creating Clickable Regions for Image Maps in FrameMaker	112
Assigning Image Scales in FrameMaker	116
Assigning Image Styles in FrameMaker	119
Creating Index Entries in FrameMaker	121
Using Variables in FrameMaker	123
Importing or Creating Variables in FrameMaker	123
Inserting Variables into FrameMaker	125
Changing Variable Values in FrameMaker	125
Deleting Variables in FrameMaker	126

Using Conditions in FrameMaker	127
Creating Conditions in FrameMaker	127
Applying Conditions in FrameMaker	128
Removing Conditions in FrameMaker	129
Modifying Conditions in FrameMaker	129
Showing and Hiding Conditions in FrameMaker	130
Using Passthrough Conditions in FrameMaker	130
Deleting Conditions in FrameMaker	131
Conditional Output Using Expressions in FrameMaker	132
Specifying Output File Names in FrameMaker	133
Creating Context-Sensitive Help in FrameMaker	134
Understanding Context-Sensitive Help in FrameMaker	135
Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in FrameMaker	137
Creating Popup Windows in FrameMaker	139
Checklist: Creating Popup Windows in FrameMaker	141
Creating Popup Window Links in FrameMaker	141
Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker	144
Using Paragraph Formats to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker	145
Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in FrameMaker	146
Creating Related Topics in FrameMaker	148
Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in FrameMaker	151
Creating See Also Links in FrameMaker	152
Creating Meta Tag Keywords in FrameMaker	156
Assigning Custom Page Styles in FrameMaker	158
Creating What's This (Field-Level) Help in FrameMaker	160
Opening Topics in Custom Windows in FrameMaker	162
Customizing Table of Contents Icons in FrameMaker	163
Specifying Context Plug-ins in FrameMaker	167
Creating Accessible Online Content in FrameMaker	169
Understanding Accessible Content in FrameMaker	169
Understanding Accessible Content Navigation in FrameMaker	171
Validating Accessible Content in FrameMaker	172
Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in FrameMaker	172
Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker	176
Assigning Alternate Text (Summaries) to Tables in FrameMaker	185
Excluding Tables from Accessibility Report Checks in FrameMaker	186
Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in FrameMaker	187
Assigning Alternate Text to Acronyms in FrameMaker	189
Providing Citations for Quotes in FrameMaker	190
Troubleshooting FrameMaker issues	192

Chapter 5: Preparing Microsoft Word Source Documents 195

Checklist: Preparing Word Source Documents	195
--	-----

Implementing Online Features in Word.	197
Understanding Custom Marker Types in Word	197
Understanding Paragraph and Character Formats in Word.	201
Obtaining and Applying the Latest Microsoft Word Template.	203
Working with the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word	204
Understanding the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word	204
Installing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word.	204
Manually Installing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Microsoft Word	205
Initializing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Microsoft Word	205
Displaying and Hiding the WebWorks Transit Menu in Word.	206
Creating Custom Marker Types Using the WebWorks Transit Menu in Word	207
Creating a Passthrough Marker in Word.	208
Working with Tables in Word	209
Applying Table Styles in Word.	209
Creating Table Header Rows in Word	210
Working with Images in Word.	211
Inserting Images in Word	212
Validating Images in Word	213
Creating Image Links in Word	214
Creating Clickable Regions for Image Maps in Word	215
Assigning Image Scales in Word.	219
Assigning Image Styles in Word.	221
Creating Index Entries in Word.	224
Using Variables in Word	225
Creating Variables in Word.	226
Inserting Variables into Word	227
Changing Variable Values in Word.	227
Deleting Variables in Word.	228
Using Conditions in Word	229
Creating Conditions in Word.	230
Applying Conditions in Word	231
Validating Conditions in Word	231
Removing Conditions in Word	232
Modifying Conditions in Word	233
Highlighting All Conditions in Word	234
Displaying Conditionalized Content with Conflicting Settings in Word	234
Using Passthrough Conditions in Word	235
Deleting Conditions in Word.	236
Specifying Output File Names in Word.	236
Specifying Page Output File Names in Word	237
Creating Context-Sensitive Help in Word	241
Understanding Context-Sensitive Help in Word.	241
Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in Word.	243

Creating Popup Windows in Word	245
Checklist: Creating Popup Windows in Word	246
Creating Popup Window Links in Word	247
Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in Word	250
Using Paragraph Styles to Create Popup Windows in Word	251
Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in Word	252
Creating Related Topics in Word	254
Creating Links to PDF in Word	257
Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in Word	257
Creating See Also Links in Word	259
Creating Meta Tag Keywords in Word	262
Assigning Custom Page Styles in Word	264
Creating What's This (Field-Level) Help in Word	265
Opening Topics in Custom Windows in Word	267
Customizing Table of Contents Icons in Word	268
Specifying Context Plug-ins in Word	272
Creating Accessible Online Content in Word	274
Understanding Accessible Content in Word	274
Understanding Accessible Content Navigation in Word	276
Validating Accessible Content in Word	277
Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in Word	277
Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in Word	280
Assigning Alternate Text (Summaries) to Tables in Word	290
Excluding Tables from Accessibility Report Checks in Word	291
Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in Word	292
Assigning Alternate Text to Acronyms in Word	293
Providing Citations for Quotes in Word	295
Troubleshooting Word issues	296

Chapter 6: Preparing DITA Source Documents 297

Checklist: Preparing DITA Source Documents	297
DITA 1.2 Support	298
Keyref elements	298
Conref extensions	298
New Document Type Definitions	298
Using Ditaval files in DITA	299
Using Passthrough outputclass in DITA	300
Creating Context-Sensitive Help in DITA Source Documents	301
Understanding Context-Sensitive Help	301
Output Formats that support Creating Context-Sensitive Help Links In DITA Source Documents	304
Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in DITA Source Documents	305
Creating Hyperlinks in DITA Source Documents	305

Creating Popups in DITA Source Documents	306
Understanding Popups	306
Requirements for Creating Popups in DITA Source Documents	307
Creating Popup Links in DITA Source Documents	307
Using Paragraph Styles to Create Popups in DITA Source Documents	307
Creating Related Topics in DITA Source Documents	308
Understanding Related Topics	308
Requirements for Creating Related Topics Links in DITA Source Documents	309
Specifying Related Topics Links in DITA Source Documents	309
Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in DITA	310
Creating See Also Links in DITA Source Documents	311
Understanding See Also Links	311
Requirements for Creating See Also Links in DITA Source Documents	312
Specifying See Also Links in DITA Source Documents	312
Assigning Custom Page Styles to Pages in DITA Source Documents	313
Understanding Page Styles	313
Requirements for Specifying Custom Page Styles for Pages in DITA Source Documents	314
Specifying Custom Page Styles for Pages in DITA Source Documents	314
Customizing Table of Contents Icons for Topics in DITA Source Documents	315
Requirements for Specifying Custom Table of Contents Icons in DITA Source Documents	315
Specifying Custom Table of Contents Icons in DITA Source Documents	315
Using markopen and markclose	318
Configuring markopen and markclose entries for dropdowns in ePublisher	319
Troubleshooting DITA issues	323

Chapter 7: Producing Output Based on Stationery 325

Checklist: Producing Output Based on Stationery	325
Understanding Projects and the Project Folder Structure	326
Understanding Projects	326
Understanding the Project Folder Structure	327
Understanding Source Documents	329
Understanding Targets	329
Understanding Stationery	330
Creating Projects Based on Stationery	332
Working with Source Documents	333
Adding Source Documents to Projects	333
Opening Source Documents from Document Manager	335
Scanning Source Documents	335
Relinking Source Documents	338
Removing Source Documents from Projects	338
Understanding Source Documents Groups	339
Organizing Source Documents Using Groups	340

Working with Targets	342
Specifying Active Targets	343
Adding Targets to Projects Based on Stationery	343
Renaming Targets	344
Deleting Targets	344
Working with Projects	345
Saving Projects	345
Opening Existing Projects	345
Closing Projects	346
Synchronizing Projects with Stationery	347
Deleting Projects	351
Generating and Regenerating Output	352
Understanding Output Generation and Regeneration	352
Generating Output	353
Regenerating Output	354
Generating Output from FrameMaker or Microsoft Word	355
Modifying Help System Title Bars	355
Customizing or Removing Splash Page Images in WebWorks Help	356
Viewing Output	358
Viewing Output by Automatically Opening Generated Output	358
Viewing Output in Output Explorer	359
Viewing Output in the Output Folder	362
Changing the Location of the Output Folder	363
Working with Output Log Files	364
Validating Output Using Reports	365
Understanding Accessibility Reports	366
Understanding Filenames Reports	366
Understanding Links Reports	367
Understanding Styles Reports	367
Understanding Topics Reports	368
Understanding Images Reports	368
Configuring Reports	369
Generating Reports	370
Understanding Report Messages	371
Merging Help Systems (Multivolume Help)	373
Deploying Output	376
Understanding Output Deployment	377
Creating Output Destinations	377
Specifying Output Destinations for Targets	379
Deploying Output to Output Destinations	380

Customizing Target Settings	380
Specifying Accessibility Settings	383
Specifying Company Information	384
Specifying File Processing Behavior for Front Matter, Index, and Table of Contents Files	384
Specifying Page Breaks Settings	385
Specifying Page, Image, and Table File Naming Patterns	385
Specifying Index Settings	386
Specifying How Links to Files or External URLs Display in Browser Windows	387
Specifying Character Encoding for Targets	387
Specifying the Language Used by Targets	388
Specifying PDF Generation Settings	388
Specifying Table of Contents Settings	389
Specifying Report Settings	392
Specifying Output Format-Specific Settings	392
Customizing Variable Settings in Projects	393
Customizing Condition Settings in Projects	395
Customizing Cross-Reference Settings in Projects	395
Customizing File Mappings	398
Understanding File Mappings	399
Modifying File Mappings	399
Creating New File Mappings	400
Deleting File Mappings	401

The WebWorks ePublisher Platform Documentation

The WebWorks ePublisher Platform provides many resources to help you use the product components to deliver integrated, single-sourced information solutions:

Evaluation Guide

Provides general information about the product and guides you through the trial and evaluation process.

Design Guide

Provides strategy and best practice information for designing and deploying standardized Stationery for information development teams to use. This book defines terminology and provides the concepts and procedures you need to achieve the look and feel you want for your information deliverables. This book also outlines how to automate the publication process.

Writer Guide

Provides the information you need when developing content to publish. This book provides the concepts and procedures you need to create the source files and then publish those files using a defined Stationery.

Help

Provides context-sensitive information and step-by-step guidance for common tasks, as well as descriptions of each field on each window. The Help provides a comprehensive, integrated deliverable that includes all the information from the books. To display the Help, click **Content** on the **Help** menu in the console.

Contacting Quadralay

Please contact us with your questions and comments. We look forward to hearing from you. If you need assistance with an issue, please contact Technical Support. The Support Web site allows you to review the support policy and create a case to track an issue.

Telephone: 877.893.2967 (only in the United States and Canada)
512.719.3399

Email: info@webworks.com

Support www.webworks.com/Support

Web Site: www.webworks.com

Conventions

The WebWorks ePublisher Platform documentation uses consistent conventions to help you identify items. The following table summarizes these conventions.

Convention	Use
Bold	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Window and menu items• Technical terms, when introduced
<i>Italics</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Book titles• Variable names• Emphasized words
Fixed Font	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• File and folder names• Commands and code examples• Text you must type• Text (output) displayed in the command-line interface
Blue	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Links
>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Submenu selections, such as Generate Reports > All
Brackets, such as [value]	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Optional parameters of a command
Braces, such as {value}	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Required parameters of a command
Logical OR, such as value1 value2	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Exclusive parameters. Choose one parameter.

Introduction to the WebWorks ePublisher Platform

Content development, publication, and maintenance are complex, time-consuming processes. Each day, companies spend numerous hours writing, formatting, and publishing information needed by internal and external users. At the same time, these users search among vast amounts of content to find the information they want and need. Companies need to streamline content production processes while delivering the content to users when, where, and how they need it.

Adding to this complexity, teams across the company use multiple content authoring tools, such as Adobe FrameMaker, Microsoft Word, and XML editors, to create the content. These teams must be able to use the authoring tools that best meet their needs. However, mastering these tools for content development is only half the battle. Content developers also need tools to publish content consistently in multiple formats, such as print, HTML, and PDF. This requirement is difficult to meet and often leads to increased production costs or an inconsistent corporate image. In addition, corporate branding standards change over time, and implementing these changes across all content adds to production and maintenance costs.

With all these variations in content creation, publication, and maintenance, delivering the right information to the right people in the right format and at the right time is an endless and costly struggle that consumes enormous time and resources across organizations.

What Is ePublisher?

The WebWorks ePublisher Platform (ePublisher) is a powerful, comprehensive solution that delivers cost-effective processes for efficiently publishing and maintaining online and print information. ePublisher gives you the flexibility to deliver content from multiple types of source documents, such as Adobe FrameMaker, Microsoft Word, and DITA, in virtually any output format you need without incurring training or software deployment expenses. The open, standards-based architecture provides a powerful engine that does not lock your content in a proprietary format that can become outdated as tools and standards change.

With the robust combination of input and output formats supported by ePublisher, you can develop the content using your preferred content authoring tools, and then produce and maintain all your deliverables within a single publishing environment. You can implement a consistent look and feel across all deliverables and quickly modify and deploy that branding if and when needed. ePublisher integrates seamlessly with your content management or version control systems, so you can automatically generate and deploy the deliverables you need and reduce the time demands on your teams.

Workflow

WebWorks ePublisher Platform components provide a workflow that ensures you can deliver your content your way every time. A successful online content delivery workflow includes the following items:

- Creation and automation of consistent, reusable online content designs
- Packaging of online content designs for seamless, consistent reuse
- Application of online content designs to new and existing projects to ensure consistent content delivery and deployment

ePublisher supports this workflow by allowing ePublisher users to perform the following tasks:

- Stationery designers use ePublisher Designer to create and manage online content designs, then package the designs into Stationery for writers to use
- Writers use ePublisher Express and Stationery to create and deploy consistent online content
- ePublisher AutoMap can be configured to automatically generate and deploy online content

For more information about the WebWorks ePublisher Platform components that support this workflow, see “WebWorks ePublisher Platform Components” on page 2. For more information about the ePublisher workflow, see “Understanding the ePublisher Workflow” on page 45.

WebWorks ePublisher Platform Components

With ePublisher, you can write your content in your preferred authoring tools, then use ePublisher components to design and deliver your content. The ePublisher components allow you to design all the content output formats you need, and then automate the publication process and integrate it with your company-wide processes, such as product builds and Web site updates.

ePublisher includes the following components:

ePublisher Designer

The design tool for creating and designing Stationery. **Stationery** defines the appearance and functionality of all the output formats you need. ePublisher provides several default formats that you can use as a basis for your Stationery, and then you can customize that standard and save it as your Stationery for your deliverables produced using the other ePublisher components.

ePublisher Express

The on-demand publishing tool that transforms your content based on your Stationery and converts your source documents into the desired output formats. This component is installed on the desktop and integrates with your existing authoring tools to support the features you require, such as related topics and expand/collapse sections within your deliverable. With this component, you can quickly prepare your source documents and generate your final deliverables.

ePublisher AutoMap

The automation tool that enables you to automate the content conversion process, batch processing, and integration with content management or version control systems. This component lets you schedule conversion projects to occur at times when you are not using your computer. For example, you can schedule the conversion to occur overnight. Then, when you arrive the next morning, your transformed content is ready for you. You can also automatically generate and deploy deliverables to meet your specific needs, such as updating Web site content based on updated source documents.

Supported Input Formats

ePublisher provides a single-sourcing environment that works with several **input formats**, such as Microsoft Word, Adobe FrameMaker, and tools that support DITA authoring.

Please refer to the following website for the list of input requirements:

<http://wiki.webworks.com/Permalinks/Solutions/Input/InputRequirements>

Supported Output Formats

ePublisher lets you define your **output formats**, such as XHTML and WebWorks Help, so content developers can focus on developing quality content without worrying about tedious conversion requirements for various deliverables. You can manage your content as you want and produce deliverables in the following formats:

- HTML 3.2
- XHTML 1.0
- XML+XSL
- Wiki Markup
- WebWorks Help
- WebWorks Reverb
- Microsoft HTML Help
- Microsoft WinHelp
- Eclipse Help
- Sun JavaHelp 1.1.3 or 2.0
- Oracle Help
- PDF
- PDF - XSL-FO
- Microsoft Reader
- Palm Reader
- eBook - ePUB 2.0

How ePublisher Helps You

With ePublisher and its agile enterprise publishing capabilities, you have unparalleled design flexibility with the ability to deliver your information, regardless of input format, in multiple output formats. This solution enables both large and small organizations to implement the publishing environment that works best for them.

Streamline and Automate the Content Publishing Process

In a traditional content authoring environment, a content author produces content designed for a single output format. This environment typically has the following limitations:

- Content is often duplicated across multiple content-producing teams.
- Content is not maintained consistently across the multiple teams.
- Production is expensive with multiple tools and technologies.

Using ePublisher, you can quickly publish content from your source documents. You can develop the content using your preferred content authoring environment, such as Microsoft Word, Adobe FrameMaker, or DITA. You do not have to spend time and resources learning how to format content for each and every output format in which your content will be delivered. You can focus on the content, and then use your Stationery to quickly and easily deliver information in the multiple formats that meet the requirements for your organization.

ePublisher reduces wasted time and expenses that occur when multiple groups in your organization unknowingly produce the same information at the same time. This publishing environment allows your organization to produce content one time. This content can then be shared in varying input formats across your organization.

Produce High Quality Deliverables with Fewer Individual Dependencies

Instead of requiring team members to understand the entire process to produce content in multiple formats, team members can focus on their areas of expertise. Content developers can create informative content to add value to the products and services they document. You can also expand the skills of individual team members into important new areas, which strengthens your team as a whole.

ePublisher lets you concentrate on producing high-quality content within the authoring environment that works for you. You spend much less time on designing, implementing, and delivering multiple output formats. With ePublisher, you quickly generate complete, ready-to-deploy publications.

ePublisher also allows you to preview, proof, and review your content before you publish and deploy it. The comprehensive reports and on-demand reporting help you identify and correct any issues that may effect your online content, such as invalid styles, missing links, and compliance with Web accessibility standards. In this way, ePublisher ensures that the content you produce is of the highest quality and consistency.

Reduce Support Costs and Increase Customer Satisfaction

When you consider the many steps content goes through to get from the content developer to its final destination, publishing content can be a tedious, costly process. When an organization does not commit its attention and resources to product information, the negative results impact many aspects of the business.

Customers want to find their solution by reading as little as possible. Consistent content helps customers skim the content and find the information they need. The time content developers spend formatting content for various output formats reduces the time they have to review and improve the content. Customers can become frustrated when they spend time sorting through inconsistent and potentially inaccurate or incomplete information.

Frustrated customers quickly give up and contact customer support, often with a negative impression of the company. Increased customer support calls, especially for basic concepts and product usage, can waste valuable company resources.

ePublisher provides a workflow designed to make the publishing process as non-intrusive as possible. By allowing you to choose your preferred authoring environment and having role-focused software components, training time and production costs are reduced. The published content is consistent and delivers more value to your customers.

Quickly Update and Deliver Content More Often

If your style or online content requirements change in your organization, you need to make changes throughout your content to implement these new requirements. Extended production times increase the difficulty and complexity of these changes. ePublisher streamlines the production process to enable you to quickly implement and deploy updated content. With these streamlined processes in place, you can deliver updated content more often.

ePublisher allows you to define and deploy centralized Stationery that all projects use. When corporate standards change, such as logos and branding, you can quickly update the Stationery to incorporate the new standards. Then, content developers can import the updated Stationery into their projects and publish their updated deliverables using the new standards without changing or redesigning their source documents.

Reduce Content Management Life Cycle Costs

Due to the limitations of the traditional content model, many organizations want to move to a single-sourcing environment. **Single sourcing** allows the same content to be used multiple times and delivered in different formats. Organizations use single sourcing to eliminate duplicate content, reduce content translation and maintenance costs, improve content consistency, and minimize errors. Single sourcing also allows organizations to produce information in various formats using the same source.

Many single-sourcing solutions require all content authors to use the same authoring tool. ePublisher allows you to develop the content using your preferred content authoring environments, such as Microsoft Word, Adobe FrameMaker, or DITA. Each department can standardize on the authoring tool that is right for them, and ePublisher ties all the input formats together with a single, unified, reliable publishing process. ePublisher allows you to create integrated deliverables with source documents from multiple authoring tools.

With ePublisher, you can use your existing authoring tools and content management systems to meet organization-wide publishing needs without incurring training or software deployment expenses. The open architecture, based on industry-standard XSL, provides a flexible solution that you can customize to meet your needs without locking you into a proprietary format that could result in expensive future migration costs.

How Organizations Use ePublisher

Companies use ePublisher to meet many of their content development, delivery, and maintenance needs:

- Update Web sites automatically with thousands of HTML pages every day
- Merge content across functional boundaries and deliver consistent content on corporate intranets and extranets
- Deliver integrated, context-sensitive help systems with products
- Single-source and deliver content in online and print formats
- Deploy content for multiple platforms and devices

The following sections highlight several ways you can use ePublisher to deliver consistent, comprehensive information.

Automatically Update Content on Web Sites and Wikis

Corporate Web sites have evolved into far more than just flashy advertising with contact information for your business. In addition to attention grabbing marketing about products and features, many company Web sites feature tutorials, product demos, specific product requirements and details, and Web 2.0 resources such as Wikis and community forums where customers can share information.

With ePublisher, you can consistently update the content on your Web site to maintain the latest information and make sure it is available to your customers. You can schedule and automate content processing and deployment to deliver up to date information each and every day.

ePublisher also allows you to easily maintain corporate intranets and publish source documents from multiple organizations across your company. You can define a standard Stationery and templates for teams to use. You can then define an ePublisher job and schedule it to search a drop-box folder on a regular basis and publish the content from the source documents in that folder using your standard Stationery. This scenario ensures your team members have the latest information they need and reduces the expenses associated with publishing and maintaining this content on your intranet.

Deliver Full-Featured, Context-Sensitive Help Systems

Products need to provide comprehensive help systems that meet the needs of many potential audiences. Content design and delivery must ensure that users get the information they need when, where, and how they need it. Some products need to deliver different content to different audiences. Other products are sold by multiple companies and require distinct product branding.

ePublisher provides comprehensive support for many advanced features used in online content design and delivery, including the following elements:

- Customizable browse navigation and breadcrumbs
- Customizable table of contents and mini-TOCs
- Pop-ups and expandable/collapsible text sections
- Related topics
- Images, image maps, and multiple forms of multimedia
- Context-sensitive help topics
- Merged help systems (multi-volume help)
- Variables and conditions
- Accessibility features, such as alternate text and long descriptions
- Field-level help

Produce Single-Sourced Print and Online Optimized Content

Customers have different needs and expectations for product content. In many cases, producing information in multiple formats for users involves extensive conversion and customization work to develop and deliver the various formats. Content authors must shift their attention to manipulating and converting the content into the many different user formats, often for both print and online, instead of focusing their time and efforts on developing quality information for users.

With ePublisher, you can quickly and efficiently produce consistent, effective print and online content in multiple formats. ePublisher provides XML/XSL processing and intelligent caching to process your source documents faster than ever before.

ePublisher produces the formatting code for you, whether it is HTML, XML, RTF, Wiki Markup, or a completely custom format. You do not need to know how to tag files for various output formats. With ePublisher, content developers can produce a printable PDF manual and a comprehensive online help deliverable immediately after finishing their content using the Stationery defined separately from their content.

Features Available in Each Output Format

ePublisher supports many output formats and you can implement many powerful features in your online content. Some features are available only in certain output formats. The following table summarizes which features are available in each output format.

Feature	Simple HTML	Dynamic HTML	XML and XSL	WebWorks Help	WebWorks Reverb	Microsoft HTML Help	Microsoft WinHelp	Eclipse Help	Sun JavaHelp	Oracle Help	PDF	PDF -XSL-FO	Microsoft Reader	Palm Reader	eBook - ePUB 2.0	Wiki - Atlassian Confluence	Wiki - MediaWiki	Wiki - MoinMoin
Abbreviation alternate text		+		+	+	+				+		+						
Acronym alternate text		+		+	+	+				+		+						
Bidirectional language support		+	+	+	+	+		+				+						
Bullet customization		+		+	+	+						+						
Categories																+	+	+
Citation alternate text		+		+	+	+				+		+						
Context-sensitive help using topic aliases (topic IDs)				+	+	+	+	+	+	+								
CSS customization		+		+	+	+		+		+						+	+	
Expand/Collapse sections		+	+	+	+	+		+										
Favorites				+		+		+	+	+								
File name definition and control	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+		+	+	+	+	+	+	+
Help window customization					+	+	+			+								
Image alternate text	+	+	+	+	+	+		+	+	+			+		+	+	+	+

Feature	Simple HTML	Dynamic HTML	XML and XSL	WebWorks Help	WebWorks Reverb	Microsoft HTML Help	Microsoft WinHelp	Eclipse Help	Sun JavaHelp	Oracle Help	PDF	PDF -XSL-FO	Microsoft Reader	Palm Reader	eBook - ePUB 2.0	Wiki - Atlassian Confluence	Wiki - MediaWiki	Wiki - MoinMoin
Image long description		+	+	+	+	+		+	+	+			+		+	+	+	+
Image long description by reference		+		+	+	+		+	+	+			+		+	+	+	+
Image map alternate text	+	+	+	+	+	+		+	+	+			+		+			
Image scaling by image (GraphicScale)	+	+		+	+	+	+	+	+	+		+	+	+	+			
Image style by image (GraphicStyle)	+	+		+	+	+	+	+	+	+		+	+	+	+			
Index	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
Inline comments																+		+
Meta tag keywords		+		+	+		+	+	+	+								
Mini (partial) table of contents	+	+		+	+	+	+	+	+	+		+				+	+	+
Multimedia links	+	+		+	+	+		+				+						
Page style customization	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+		+	+		+	+	+	+
Popup windows				+		+			+	+								
Related topics	+	+		+	+	+		+	+	+						+	+	+
Search				+	+	+	+	+	+	+						+	+	+
See also links				+		+												
Splash page customization				+	+													
Table alternate text (table summary)		+		+	+	+				+								
Table of contents	+	+		+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+				+	+	+
Table of contents icon customization per topic				+		+			+	+								
Toolbar customization				+	+	+	+											
What's This help						+												

Planning and Installing ePublisher

2

This section helps you plan your ePublisher installation and install ePublisher components. This section provides information about ePublisher components and supported configurations and ePublisher requirements. This section also explains how to download and install ePublisher components, use your **contract identifier** (Contract ID), work with license keys, upgrade ePublisher, and troubleshoot installation and licensing issues.

Licensing Considerations

Before you can generate output using ePublisher, you must have a valid Contract ID. ePublisher uses your Contract ID to automatically handle the licensing of all ePublisher components and features. Your Contract ID is valid for your ePublisher use. Your contract ID may also be valid for other users, as long as the other users were included in the contract associated with the contract ID at the time ePublisher was purchased or the other users have been added to the same contract.

Currently ePublisher is licensed based on component and input format. ePublisher components include ePublisher Express, ePublisher Designer, and ePublisher AutoMap. ePublisher input formats include Adobe FrameMaker, Microsoft Word, and DITA-XML. Based on the input format of the files you use to author content, you may have access to one or more input formats. For more information about each ePublisher component, see “WebWorks ePublisher Platform Components” on page 2. For more information about Contract IDs, see “Working with Contract IDs” on page 28.

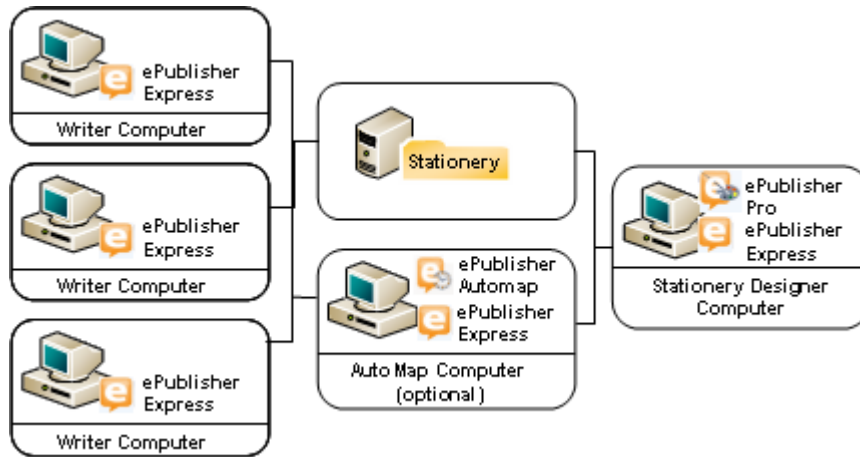
Components and Supported Configurations

Stationery designers must install ePublisher Designer and ePublisher Express on their computers. Stationery designers use ePublisher Designer to design Stationery and ePublisher Express to test Stationery.

Writers install ePublisher Express on their computers. Writers use ePublisher Express to generate output using Stationery created by a Stationery designer.

If you want to use AutoMap to automate output generation and integrate your output generation with content management or version control systems, install ePublisher AutoMap and ePublisher Express on the computer where you want to use ePublisher AutoMap. ePublisher AutoMap requires ePublisher Express. You can install ePublisher AutoMap on its own separate computer, or you can install ePublisher AutoMap on a Stationery designer or writer computer where ePublisher Express is already installed.

The following figure shows a sample ePublisher configuration.



Checklist: Installing ePublisher Components

Use the following checklist to help you install ePublisher components.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Verify your computer meets system requirements. For more information, see "Requirements" on page 13.
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. Download the ePublisher components you want to install. For more information, see "Downloading ePublisher Installation Kits" on page 22.
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. Ensure you have a WebWorks Contract ID obtained from WebWorks staff. For more information, see "Obtaining Contract IDs" on page 29.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task
<input type="checkbox"/>	4. Verify that the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework is installed on each computer where you will install ePublisher components. For more information, see “Downloading and Installing the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework” on page 23.
<input type="checkbox"/>	5. Enable JavaScript in Internet Explorer on each computer where you will install ePublisher components. For more information, see “Enabling JavaScript” on page 23.
<input type="checkbox"/>	6. <i>If you have installed previous versions of ePublisher components on your computer</i> , uninstall all previous ePublisher versions. For more information, see “Uninstalling ePublisher” on page 37.
<input type="checkbox"/>	7. Install ePublisher components. For more information, see “Installing ePublisher” on page 23.

Requirements

This section lists requirements for ePublisher components and input and output formats.

ePublisher Express, ePublisher Designer, and ePublisher AutoMap Requirements

The following table lists the minimum and recommended system requirements for ePublisher Express, ePublisher Designer, and ePublisher AutoMap.

Note: Memory requirements can vary with the size of the job, including number of files to generate, size of each file, number of images and tables, and more. Generally, performance increases with available memory. The following values provide good performance for an average job.

	Minimum	Recommended
Processor	Pentium IV or AMD equivalent processor	3 GHz or faster Pentium IV or AMD equivalent processor
Memory	512 MB RAM	1 GB RAM

	Minimum	Recommended
Available Disk Space	1 GB available hard disk space	2 GB available hard disk space
Operating System	Microsoft XP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Microsoft Windows XP or later • ePublisher AutoMap has also been tested and verified for compatibility on Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition and Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition.
Additional Software	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Depending on input requirements • Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 or later 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Depending on input requirements • Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 or later
Display	800 x 600 display screen resolution	1280 x 1024 display screen resolution (dual monitors supported)

Additional Input Format Requirements

Please refer to the following page for up-to-date input requirements:
<http://wiki.webworks.com/Permalinks/InputRequirements>

Additional Output Format Requirements

You can use ePublisher to produce output in several different formats. This section provides output format requirements for each output format ePublisher supports.

Dynamic HTML

To view Dynamic HTML, users must have a browser that supports HTML 4.0 installed. HTML 4.0 was published in late 1997, and the major browsers, such as Internet Explorer, Firefox, and Safari support HTML 4.0. For more information about the HTML version a browser supports, see the documentation for the browser. If you choose to implement online features that require JavaScript, such as popups, users may also need JavaScript enabled. Most browsers have JavaScript enabled by default. For more information about enabling JavaScript in a browser, see the documentation for the browser.

eBook - ePUB 2.0

To generate output in this format, there are no external tools required. However, you will need a compatible ePUB reader in order to view the generated output. For development purposes, it is common practice to use an ePUB reader on your computer desktop, for example, you can use Adobe Digital Editions available at:
[http://www.adobe.com/products/digitaleditions/Microsoft Windows](http://www.adobe.com/products/digitaleditions/Microsoft_Windows).

Eclipse Help

To generate Eclipse Help, you must have the Java2 Platform SDK version 1.2.2 or later installed. You can download the Java2 Platform SDK for free from the Sun Microsystems Web site at <http://java.sun.com/javase/index.jsp>.

If you are using ePublisher to generate Eclipse Help, ePublisher includes a viewer that you can use on the computer where you installed ePublisher to view the Eclipse Help you generated using ePublisher.

To view Eclipse Help when you include Eclipse Help with an application, users must have the Eclipse integrated development environment (IDE) installed. Typically, application developers configure their applications to install the Eclipse IDE with the Eclipse Help content to ensure users can view the Eclipse Help while using the application. To view Eclipse Help, users must also have Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later or a Mozilla-based browser 1.7 or later installed.

Microsoft HTML Help 1.x

To generate Microsoft HTML Help, you must have Microsoft HTML Help Workshop 1.x installed. If you do not have Microsoft HTML Help Workshop installed, ePublisher will ask you if you want to install Microsoft HTML Help Workshop during the ePublisher installation process. You can also download the Microsoft HTML Help Workshop for free from the Microsoft Developer Network Web site at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms669985.aspx>.

To view Microsoft HTML Help, users must have the Microsoft HTML Help viewer installed. The Microsoft HTML Help viewer is installed with most Windows operating systems in use today. Users must also have Internet Explorer 4.0 or later installed. Microsoft HTML Help does not require that users use Internet Explorer as their default browser. Microsoft

Note: Due to the legacy nature of this help run time, if you are generating your help from a networked location, you must map your help drive to a mapped letter such as z:\. UNC drives such as \\server.example.com\directory will not work as output locations for this help format. For more information on this issue, please refer to [Microsoft's Support website](#) and search for your version of Windows.

Microsoft Reader

To view Microsoft Reader files, users must have Microsoft Reader installed. You can download Microsoft Reader for free from the Microsoft Web site at <http://www.microsoft.com/reader/downloads/default.asp>.

Microsoft WinHelp

To view Microsoft WinHelp files, users must have the Windows Help viewer (`winhlp32.exe`) installed. The Windows Help viewer has been included with Microsoft Windows versions starting with the Microsoft Windows 3.1 operating system. However, beginning with the release of Windows Vista, the Windows Help viewer no longer ships as a feature of Windows. Users who want to view Microsoft WinHelp on computers running Windows Vista must download and install the Windows Help viewer from the Microsoft Download Center at <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/search.aspx?displaylang=en>.

Oracle Help

To generate Oracle Help, you must have the Java2 Platform SDK version 1.2.2 or later installed on your computer. You can download the Java2 Platform SDK for free from the Sun Microsystems Web site at <http://java.sun.com/javase/index.jsp>. The Java 2 Platform is also known as the Java Platform, Standard Edition (Java SE).

To view Oracle Help, users must have the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) installed on their computer. Typically application developers configure their applications to install the JRE with the Oracle Help content to ensure users can view the Oracle Help while using the application. Oracle Help components must be installed and viewed on the local computer.

Palm Reader

To generate Palm Reader files, you must have DropBook installed. DropBook is a Palm Reader utility that ePublisher uses to convert generated output into a single `.pdb` file required by Palm Reader software. You can download the DropBook utility for free from the eBook Reader Web site at http://www.ereader.com/ereader/software/product/15099_dropbook_win.htm.

To view Palm Reader files, users must have eReader software installed. You can download the eReader software on the eBook Reader Web site at <http://www.ereader.com/ereader/software/browse.htm>.

PDF

To view PDF files, users must have Adobe Reader installed. You can download Adobe Reader for free from the Adobe Web Site at http://www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2_allversions.html.

Customers may encounter issues with font embedding and Windows 7. Please refer to the following resources to address this issue:

<http://wiki.webworks.com/Permalinks/Solutions/Output/PDF/ProblemsInWindows7>
<http://wiki.webworks.com/Permalinks/Solutions/Output/PDF/IssuesWithTrueTypeFonts>

PDF -XSL-FO

To generate PDF - XSL-FO files, you must have the Java2 Platform SDK version 1.2.2 or later installed. You can download the Java2 Platform SDK for free from the Sun Microsystems Web site at <http://java.sun.com/javase/index.jsp>.

Simple HTML

To view simple HTML, users must have a browser that supports HTML 3.2 or later. HTML 3.2 was published in early 1997, and the major browsers, such as Internet Explorer, Firefox, and Safari support HTML 3.2. For more information about the HTML version a browser supports, see the documentation for the browser.

Sun JavaHelp 1.1.2 and 2.0

To generate Sun JavaHelp 1.1.2 or 2.0, you must have the Java2 Platform SDK version 1.2.2 or later installed on your computer. You can download the Java2 Platform SDK for free from the Sun Microsystems Web site at <http://java.sun.com/javase/index.jsp>. The Java 2 Platform is also known as the Java Platform, Standard Edition (Java SE).

To view Sun JavaHelp, users must have the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) installed on their computer. Typically, application developers configure their applications to install the JRE with the Sun JavaHelp content to ensure users can view the Sun JavaHelp while using the application. Sun JavaHelp components must be installed and viewed on the local computer.

WebWorks Help 5.0

To view WebWorks Help, users must have JavaScript enabled in the browser. If JavaScript is not enabled, then the help system does not display in its entirety. For more information about determining whether JavaScript is enabled in your browser, see your browser options. For more information about enabling JavaScript in Internet Explorer, refer to “Enabling JavaScript” on page 23.

WebWorks Help has been tested on the following platforms:

- Internet Explorer
- Mozilla Firefox
- Netscape
- Safari
- Google Chrome
- Opera

Please refer to the WebWorks wiki for an up-to-date list of supported browsers:
<http://wiki.webworks.com/Permalinks/BrowserSupport>

WebWorks Reverb

WebWorks Reverb can now be viewed directly from your computer's file system or from a running web server. This means that you can use this format to deliver online help as part of a non-networked help system. However, in order to provide Reverb's social-media capabilities (i.e. commenting, likes) to your end-users you must deploy the output to a system that is running a web server. Then your end-users must access the content via an **http** or **https** url. If you do not have a web server, you can configure IIS on Windows or any other available web server software. For more information on IIS, consult the following [resource](#).

When you are using ePublisher to generate WebWorks Reverb, ePublisher includes a viewer that you can use on the computer where you installed ePublisher to view the WebWorks Reverb output you generated using ePublisher.

WebWorks Reverb has been designed to perform gracefully on most any browser and browsing device. In cases where the screen resolution of the viewing device is not wide enough, the table of contents will not automatically display on the left-hand side of the screen. In this scenario, users will have to select the table of contents toolbar icon in order to display the table of contents, this is by design and allows your users to achieve maximum functionality no matter what device they may be using.

In rare cases where users have javascript disabled on their browser, the content will still be displayed, however the layout may be sub-optimal and all navigation icons will not be displayed.

WebWorks Reverb has been tested on the following platforms:

- Internet Explorer
- Mozilla Firefox
- Safari
- Google Chrome

Please refer to the WebWorks wiki for an up-to-date list of supported browsers:
<http://wiki.webworks.com/Permalinks/BrowserSupport>

Wiki - Confluence

To view Confluence Wiki output, you must deploy the output to a server computer where Confluence 2.10.2 or later is installed. You may find it helpful to set up a staging Confluence server computer if you generate Confluence output. A staging Confluence computer allows you to view your generated Wiki output before deploying your generated Wiki output to a production Confluence computer.

Before you deploy Confluence output, ensure the following APIs and plug-ins are installed on the Confluence Wiki:

- Confluence Remote API

This API is enabled by default when Confluence is installed. The Confluence Remote API works in conjunction with the Confluence XML RPC API.

- Confluence XML RPC API

This API should be enabled, and this API works in conjunction with the Confluence Remote API.

- Adaptivist Content Formatting Macros plug-in

The Adaptivist Content Formatting Macros plug-in is available at <http://confluence.atlassian.com/display/CONFEXT/Content+Formatting+Macros>. ePublisher uses this plug-in to control indents and any kind of complex table formatting such as row and column spans. This plug-in also provides support for .css classes.

- ***Ensure that the Confluence Compatibility Macros are disabled.*** The Confluence Compatibility Macros define tables. ***If the Confluence Compatibility Macros and the Adaptivist Content Formatting Macros are enabled at the same time***, table macro definition conflicts may result.
- The Confluence WYSIWYG editor does not preserve escaped characters if those character escapes are specified as HTML entities, such as `.`.

Note: Escape characters indicate that a character sequence is not formatting instructions for the Wiki. For example, on some Wikis, and asterisk (*) character followed by a space at the beginning of a line indicates a bullet. When the Wiki reads this markup, it converts the asterisk character and the space into a bullet. However, if you need to have an asterisk character followed by a space at the beginning of a line on your Wiki page, and not a bullet, you can use an escape character, such as `\'` to display the content correctly.

When ePublisher generates output for Wikis, it automatically and appropriately escapes characters in your source documents so your content displays correctly in the generated output. However, if you deploy content with escape characters to a Confluence Wiki server and users then edit the content using the Confluence WYSIWYG editor, the WYSIWYG editor removes any escape characters used on the page to display content. To avoid this issue, disable the Confluence WYSIWYG editor on the Wiki server where you deploy your Confluence Wiki output.

- When you deploy content to a Confluence Wiki, pages are deployed based on the table of contents hierarchy. You can see this hierarchy in the Confluence Browse view.

For more information about Confluence, including installing and configuring Confluence, see the Confluence web site at www.atlassian.com/software/confluence. For more information about deploying Confluence Wiki output using ePublisher, see “Deploying Output” on page 376.

Wiki - MediaWiki

To view MediaWiki output, you must deploy the output to a computer where MediaWiki 1.11 or later is installed. You may find it helpful to set up a staging MediaWiki server computer if you generate MediaWiki output. A staging MediaWiki computer allows you to view your generated Wiki output before deploying your generated Wiki output to a production MediaWiki computer.

Before you deploy MediaWiki output, review the following settings on the MediaWiki:

- The user account you specify for ePublisher to use when deploying output to a MediaWiki requires Write access to the Wiki and the ability to remotely push content to the Wiki.
- ePublisher uses the MediaWiki Write API when deploying output to MediaWiki. Using the MediaWiki Write API ensures that any surge protection limits configured on the Wiki do not block ePublisher from deploying output to the Wiki. Ensure that the MediaWiki Write API is enabled before deploying output to MediaWiki. The Write API is disabled by default on MediaWiki.
- If you try to use ePublisher to deploy large page files, such as 2 MB or 3 MB page files, to your MediaWiki server, MediaWiki will display the following error if you do not have enough PHP memory allocated in MediaWiki:

```
Fatal error: Allowed memory size of nnnnnnn bytes exhausted (tried to allocate nnnnnnnn bytes)
```

Ensure you have enough PHP memory allocated in MediaWiki if you plan to use ePublisher to deploy large page files to your MediaWiki server. You can raise the PHP memory limit in the `php.ini` and `LocalSettings.php` files. For more information, see http://www.mediawiki.org/wiki/Manual:Errors_and_Symptoms.

For more information about MediaWiki, including installing and configuring MediaWiki, see the MediaWiki Web site at www.mediawiki.org. For more information about deploying MediaWiki output using ePublisher, see “Deploying Output” on page 376.

Wiki - MoinMoin

To view MoinMoin Wiki output, you must deploy the output to a computer where MoinMoin 1.6.4 or later is installed. You may find it helpful to set up a staging MoinMoin server computer if you generate MoinMoin output. A staging MoinMoin computer allows you to view your generated Wiki output before deploying your generated Wiki output to a production MoinMoin computer.

Before you deploy MoinMoin Wiki output, review the following settings on the MoinMoin Wiki:

- The user account you specify for ePublisher to use when deploying output to a MoinMoin Wiki requires Write access to the Wiki and the ability to remotely push content to the Wiki. Ensure the user account ePublisher uses when deploying content to the Wiki has the appropriate Write permissions on the Wiki.
- Ensure `xmlrpc` actions are enabled on the MoinMoin Wiki.

Note: MoinMoin does not support the XML-RPC protocol when run as a CGI application.

- Based on the MIME type assigned to the files you include in your generated output, you may need to add content types to the `mimetypes_embed` setting in the `wikiconfig` file on the MoinMoin Wiki. For example, if you use Scalable Vector Graphics (`.svg`) files when generating MoinMoin Wiki output, ensure that you add `image/svg+xml` to the `mimetypes_embed` setting.
- You can configure surge protection limits for requests on a MoinMoin Wiki, including the type of Write requests ePublisher can make when deploying output to the Wiki. Ensure you understand how surge protection is configured on the MoinMoin Wiki before you use ePublisher to deploy content to a MoinMoin Wiki.

Surge protection limits are typically configured to help protect the performance of the Wiki and to ensure the Wiki is available and has appropriate content for its intended users. Surge protection settings protect the Wiki from malicious users, including spammers, who may want to try and push spam or other unwanted content onto Wikis. In MoinMoin, you configure surge protection limits in the `wikiconfig` file. Verify that ePublisher can deploy content to a MoinMoin Wiki using the surge protection limits configured for the MoinMoin Wiki.

For more information about MoinMoin, including installing and configuring MoinMoin, see the MoinMoin Web site at <http://moinmo.in/>. For more information about deploying MoinMoin Wiki output using ePublisher, see “Deploying Output” on page 376.

Downloading ePublisher Installation Kits

ePublisher installation kits are available for download as .zip files on a secure area on the WebWorks Web site. You can obtain ePublisher installation kits through one of the following methods:

- ***If you are evaluating ePublisher***, the WebWorks customer service team will send you an email that contains a link to the location where you can download the ePublisher installation kit.
- ***If you are a new ePublisher customer***, the WebWorks customer service team will send you an email that contains a link to the location where you can download the ePublisher installation kit when you purchase ePublisher.
- ***If you are an existing ePublisher customer with an active maintenance agreement***, the WebWorks customer service team will automatically send you an email that contains a link to the location where you can download the ePublisher installation kit each time a new version of ePublisher releases. If you have a My Cases login for the WebWorks technical support Web site, you can also obtain the ePublisher installation kit in the My Cases area when you log in to the WebWorks technical support site.
- ***If you are an existing ePublisher customer without an active maintenance agreement***, contact the WebWorks account management team for more information.

The link you receive to the download location for the ePublisher installation kit is typically active for only one to two weeks. ePublisher installation kit download locations are changed often for security reasons. If you need the latest link to an ePublisher download kit, you can request a link by submitting a support request on the WebWorks Web site at <http://www.webworks.com/Support/>. WebWorks technical support will verify that you purchased an ePublisher license for the requested component and then provide a link where you can download the requested installation kit.

To download an ePublisher installation kit

1. Click the download link in the email from WebWorks.
2. On the WebWorks download page, click the link for the ePublisher component you want to install.
3. Click **Save**.
4. Browse to a location on your local computer where you want to save the installation kit, and then click **Save**.
5. Click **Close** when the download completes.
6. Browse to the location on your local computer where you saved the .zip file for the ePublisher component.

7. Extract the contents of the .zip file to a folder on your local computer.

Note: Each installation kit contains a `setup.exe` file and an `.msi` file. Ensure you extract the `setup.exe` file and the `.msi` file for the ePublisher component into the same folder when you extract the contents of the .zip file. The `setup.exe` file registers the setup program as needed with the operating system and then runs the `.msi` file.

Downloading and Installing the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework

ePublisher components require the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework. To see if the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework is already installed on your computer, in Control Panel, open Add or Remove Programs and see if the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework is listed.

If you do not have the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework installed, you can download the Framework for free from the Microsoft .NET Framework Developer Center at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/netframework/downloads>.

After you download the latest version for the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework, install the framework on each computer where you will install ePublisher components. Follow the instructions provided in the Microsoft .NET 2.0 Framework installation kit to install the framework.

Enabling JavaScript

To use ePublisher, you must enable JavaScript in Microsoft Internet Explorer.

To enable JavaScript in Internet Explorer

1. Open Microsoft Internet Explorer.
2. On the **Tools** menu, click **Internet Options**.
3. On the Security tab, click **Custom Level**.
4. Under **Active Scripting**, click **Enable**.

Installing ePublisher

This section explains how to install ePublisher components. Read this section before you install ePublisher components.

Installation Order for ePublisher Components

Ensure you install ePublisher components in the correct order. Review the following installation options before you install ePublisher components:

- ***If you want to generate output using Stationery created by a Stationery designer,*** install only ePublisher Express on the computer.
- ***If you want to design Stationery and generate output,*** install ePublisher Express and ePublisher Designer on the computer.

Note: ePublisher Designer requires ePublisher Express. Ensure you install ePublisher Express on the computer before you install ePublisher Designer.

- ***If you want to schedule and automate output generation,*** install ePublisher Express and ePublisher AutoMap on the computer where you want to use ePublisher AutoMap.

ePublisher AutoMap requires ePublisher Express. Ensure you install ePublisher Express on the computer before you install ePublisher AutoMap. You can install ePublisher AutoMap using one of the following configurations:

- On its own separate computer where ePublisher Express is already installed
- On a Stationery design computer where ePublisher Express and ePublisher Designer are already installed
- On a writer computer where ePublisher Express is already installed

Installing ePublisher Components

This section provides instructions for installing ePublisher components, including ePublisher Express, ePublisher Designer, and ePublisher AutoMap.

Note: You must install ePublisher Express first. Then, you can install ePublisher Designer and ePublisher AutoMap. Both ePublisher Designer and ePublisher AutoMap require ePublisher Express.

If you are upgrading from a previous version of ePublisher, review the upgrade instructions. For more information, see “Upgrading from Previous Versions” on page 31.

To install ePublisher components

1. Log on as a user using a user account that is a member of the Administrators group on the local computer.
2. Close all instances of Microsoft Office applications running on the local computer, including instances of Microsoft Word and Microsoft Outlook. Close all instances of Adobe FrameMaker running on the computer.

3. Run the `setup.exe` file in the installation package for the ePublisher component you want to install.
4. Review the welcome message, and then click **Next**.
5. Review the license agreement. If you agree to the terms of the agreement, click **I Agree**, and then click **Next**.
6. Select the application shortcuts you want to create, and then click **Next**.
7. *If you are installing ePublisher Express*, specify whether you want to allow ePublisher Express users to modify target settings, condition settings, variable values, and cross-reference definitions, and then click **Next**.
 - *If you select this check box*, ePublisher Express users can modify target settings, condition settings, variable values, and cross-reference definitions used to generate output. This option gives users more control over their ePublisher output, but users can produce output that differs from the standards defined in Stationery.
 - *If you do not select this check box*, ePublisher Express users cannot modify target settings, condition settings, variable values, and cross-reference definitions. Projects use the target settings, condition settings, variable values, and cross-reference definitions defined in the Stationery.

You can enable permissions to modify target settings, conditions settings, variable values, and cross-definitions later if needed. For more information, see “Enabling Target Setting Permissions After Installing ePublisher Express” on page 27.

8. Specify the location of the installation directory, and then click **Next**. The default installation directory is `C:\Program Files\WebWorks`.
9. Click **Next** to confirm your selections and to begin installing the ePublisher component.
10. In the WebWorks Licensing Info window, complete the following steps:
 - a. Enter your Contract ID. If you previously installed ePublisher on the computer using a valid Contract ID, ePublisher will automatically detect the Contract ID and display your Contract ID information. For more information about contract IDs and obtaining a Contract ID, see “Working with Contract IDs” on page 28 “Obtaining Contract IDs” on page 29.
 - b. Enter your email address. If you have an email address that you use as your WebWorks support login, enter that email address.
 - c. Enter the name of your computer.
 - d. Click **Confirm**.

11. *If the installer displays the **HTML Help Workshop 1.3 Setup** window, you can install Microsoft HTML Help Workshop 1.3 as part of your ePublisher installation. Install Microsoft HTML Help Workshop if you plan to generate Microsoft HTML Help output.*
 - *If you want to install Microsoft HTML Help Workshop 1.3, click **Yes**, and then follow the instructions to install Microsoft HTML Help Workshop.*
 - *If you do not want to install Microsoft HTML Help Workshop 1.3, click **No**.*
12. Click **Close** when the installation completes. ePublisher also opens a new browser window and displays a page on the www.webworks.com web site when the installation completes.
13. Restart your computer to update and register all configuration files.
14. *If you installed ePublisher on Windows Vista and you plan to use ePublisher with Adobe FrameMaker, due to an issue with the FrameMaker Developers Kit (FDK), after you install ePublisher you must run ePublisher Express as an Administrator at least once.*

When you run ePublisher Express as an Administrator, you must open or scan an Adobe FrameMaker source document within ePublisher to register the FDK with Windows Vista as a trusted application.

Run as an Administrator and register the FDK by completing the following steps:

- a. *If you specified that you wanted ePublisher to create a desktop shortcut when you installed ePublisher, on your desktop, right-click the ePublisher shortcut.*
- b. *If you did not specify that you wanted ePublisher to create a desktop shortcut when you installed ePublisher, browse to the following location, and then right-click the appropriate .exe file*
 - Program Files\WebWorks\ePublisher\2013.3\ePublisher Express\WebWorks.ePublisherExpress.exe
 - Program Files\WebWorks\ePublisher\2013.3\ePublisher Designer\WebWorks.ePublisherDesigner.exe
- c. Click **Run as administrator**.
- d. Click **Allow** to confirm that you trust the application. The ePublisher component you selected opens.
- e. Open an existing project that contains an Adobe FrameMaker source document or create a new project that contains an Adobe FrameMaker source document.
- f. In Document Manager, select an Adobe FrameMaker source document.
- g. On the **Project** menu, click **Scan Selected** to register the FDK with Windows Vista.

Understanding Installed Sample Projects and Stationery

ePublisher Express and ePublisher Designer install sample projects and Stationery. You can use these sample projects and Stationery to see some examples of how you can use ePublisher to generate output. For more information about using these sample projects and Stationery to generate output, see “Exploring ePublisher Using Sample Source Documents, Projects, and Stationery” on page 60.

Enabling Target Setting Permissions After Installing ePublisher Express

You can customize target settings in a project only if you have target setting modification permissions. If you are using ePublisher Designer, you have target setting modification permissions. If you are using ePublisher Express, you may or may not have target setting modification permissions. When you install ePublisher Express, you must select the **Allow users to modify Target Settings and Properties** check box in order to have target setting modification permissions, including permissions to modify the target settings for the targets available in your project. If you do not select this check box during installation, you will not be able to customize target settings in projects. This check box is not selected by default as part of an ePublisher Express installation.

*If you did not select the **Allow users to modify Target Settings and Properties** check box when you installed ePublisher Express*, only the **Merge Settings** and **Deploy** menu options display on the ePublisher Express **Target** menu.

*If you selected the **Allow users to modify Target Settings and Properties** check box when you installed ePublisher Express*, the **Conditions**, **Variables**, **Cross Reference Rules**, **Merge Settings**, **Target Settings**, and **Deploy** menu options all display on the ePublisher Express **Target** menu.

If you need to enable target setting permissions once ePublisher Express has been installed, you can enable target setting permissions in ePublisher Express by modifying an ePublisher Express configuration file. Ensure you consult with your Stationery designer to verify that it is appropriate for you to enable target setting permissions in ePublisher Express before you enable target setting permissions.

To enable target setting permissions after installing ePublisher Express

1. Close the ePublisher Express user interface.
2. Browse to the location of the `WebWorks.ePublisherExpress.exe.config` file. By default, ePublisher installs this file in the following location when you install ePublisher Express:

```
Program Files\WebWorks\ePublisher
Express\WebWorks.ePublisherExpress.exe.config
```

3. Open the `WebWorks.ePublisherExpress.exe.config` file in Notepad.

4. Change the value of the `AllowModifications` key to `true`. The `AllowModifications` key entry should be similar to the entry below:

```
<add key="AllowModifications" value="true" />
```
5. On the **File** menu, click **Save**, and then close Notepad.
6. Open ePublisher Express and verify on the Target menu that the Conditions, Variables, Cross Reference Rules, and Target Settings menu options display.

For more information about installing ePublisher Express with target setting permissions, see “Installing ePublisher Components” on page 24.

Working with Contract IDs

ePublisher no longer requires you to manually enter license keys. ePublisher now uses Contract IDs to enable product functionality, which simplifies the ePublisher licensing process.

A Contract ID is a unique identifier that identifies the number of users and type of functionality enabled for your ePublisher installation. WebWorks generates an appropriate Contract ID for your ePublisher installation when you purchase ePublisher or request an evaluation copy of ePublisher. A Contract ID enables functionality based on the items and time frame specified in the purchase contract between your company and WebWorks.

If you have a valid contract ID for one version of the ePublisher product, when a new version of ePublisher releases, you can continue to use your same Contract ID when you upgrade to the new version of the product. You can also continue to use your same Contract ID if you have to uninstall and then re-install a version of ePublisher.

ePublisher licensing is flexible, and the WebWorks team can work with you ensure that you have the licensing that is right for you. Contact WebWorks Sales at sales@webworks.com or WebWorks Customer Service at customerservice@webworks.com to discuss any special licensing needs you may have.

Viewing Licensing and Contract ID Information

You can view licensing information in the License Information window in ePublisher. ePublisher uses adapter license keys, or activation codes, to enable ePublisher functionality. Adapter licensing information is specified in your Contract ID. ePublisher uses an Internet connection to connect to the ePublisher licensing server and periodically retrieve and update adapter activation codes as needed based on your Contract ID.

Note: If you need to install ePublisher in an environment without Internet connectivity, WebWorks can provide Contract IDs that support this environment. For more information, see “Managing Licensing in Environments without Internet Connectivity” on page 30.

ePublisher licenses, or activation codes, do not display in the ePublisher user interface, but you can view the adapters for which you are licensed and your Contract ID number in the ePublisher user interface.

To view ePublisher licensing and Contract ID information

1. On the **Help** menu, click **License Keys**. ePublisher displays the input formats for which the component is licensed in the License Information window.
2. *If you want to view your Contract ID number*, click **Info**.

Obtaining Contract IDs

ePublisher now uses Contract IDs instead of license keys to enable ePublisher functionality.

If you are evaluating ePublisher, the WebWorks customer service team will send you an email that contains a Contract ID you can use when you install an evaluation copy of ePublisher. If you have not received an evaluation Contract ID or are having problems with your evaluation license, send an email to customerservice@webworks.com.

If you are a new ePublisher customer, the WebWorks customer service team will send you an email that contains your Contract ID when you purchase ePublisher. If you have not received a Contract ID or are having problems with your licensing, send an email to customerservice@webworks.com.

If you are an existing ePublisher customer with an active maintenance agreement, the WebWorks customer service team will automatically send you an email that contains a link to the location where you can download the ePublisher installation kit. ePublisher will automatically detect and use your existing Contract ID each time you install a new version of the ePublisher product. If you have not received a Contract ID or are having problems with licensing, send an email to customerservice@webworks.com or submit a support request.

If you are an existing ePublisher customer without an active maintenance agreement, contact the WebWorks account management team for more information about obtaining your Contract ID by sending an email to sales@webworks.com.

For more information about Contract IDs, see “Working with Contract IDs” on page 28 and “Entering Contract IDs” on page 30.

Entering Contract IDs

ePublisher now uses Contract IDs instead of license keys to enable ePublisher functionality. You must enter your Contract ID, email address, and computer name before you can use ePublisher components. The Contract ID enables the ePublisher product components and ePublisher input formats for which you are licensed. For more information about Contract IDs, see “Working with Contract IDs” on page 28.

To enter a Contract ID

1. On the **Help** menu, click **License Keys**. ePublisher displays the input formats for which the component is licensed in the License Information window.
2. Click **Update**.
3. In the **Contract** field, enter your Contract ID.
4. In the **Email** field, enter your email address. If you have an email address that you use as your WebWorks support login, enter that email address.
5. In the **Computer** field, enter the name of the computer where you are installing ePublisher.
6. Click **Confirm**.

Managing Licensing in Environments without Internet Connectivity

ePublisher uses an Internet connection to connect to the ePublisher licensing server and retrieve or update adapter activation codes as needed based on your Contract ID. If you need to install ePublisher in a restricted environment where ePublisher computers do not have Internet access, contact WebWorks Sales at sales@webworks.com or WebWorks Customer Service at customerservice@webworks.com to request a non-network Contract ID. The ePublisher licensing model is flexible, and WebWorks can work with you to provide non-network Contract IDs or other licensing solutions appropriate for your environment.

Updating Licensing

ePublisher automatically contacts the ePublisher licensing server as needed to obtain updated activation codes. ePublisher communicates with the ePublisher licensing server using an Internet connection. ePublisher obtains updated activation codes as appropriate based on the licensing specified in your Contract ID.

Note: If your ePublisher is installed in an environment without Internet connectivity, WebWorks can provide Contract IDs that support this environment. For more information, see “Managing Licensing in Environments without Internet Connectivity” on page 30

Typically, you will not need to request updated activation codes, as ePublisher obtains updated codes for you automatically. However, you can manually request updated activation codes in the ePublisher interface. For example, you may want to manually request updated activation codes if you know that the computer where you installed ePublisher will not have Internet access for a long period of time. When you request updated activation codes in the ePublisher interface, ePublisher immediately establishes an Internet connection to the ePublisher licensing server and automatically obtains updated activation codes for the ePublisher adapters for which you are licensed.

To update ePublisher licensing

1. On the **Help** menu, click **License Keys**. ePublisher displays the input formats for which the component is licensed in the License Information window.
2. Click **Update**. ePublisher retrieves updated activation codes from the ePublisher licensing server.

Deactivating Licensing

You can deactivate ePublisher licensing in the ePublisher user interface. Deactivating licensing for the current ePublisher installation allows you to install ePublisher on a different computer without affecting the number of available seats allowed by your contract.

Note: The terms of the ePublisher end-user license agreement (EULA) allow you to install ePublisher Express or ePublisher Designer on one office computer and on one home or travelling computer for each assigned ePublisher user seat. ePublisher AutoMap licensing terms can vary based on whether ePublisher AutoMap was purchased on a per writer or per server basis, or in conjunction with a Content Management System (CMS).

To deactivate ePublisher licensing:

1. On the **Help** menu, click **License Keys**.
2. Click **Unregister**.

Upgrading from Previous Versions

In most cases, upgrading from a previous version to a new version of ePublisher can be accomplished in just a few steps. This section explains how to prepare for an upgrade, how to upgrade a typical ePublisher installation, and how to upgrade an ePublisher implementation with advanced customizations.

Preparing to Upgrade

As you prepare to upgrade your ePublisher installation, ensure you perform the following steps:

- Save your Stationery, Stationery design projects, and any projects you currently use to generate output to a secure location. **Stationery** defines the appearance and functionality of all the output formats you need. **Stationery design projects** are the ePublisher Designer projects used to create Stationery. For more information about Stationery and Stationery design projects, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.
- ***If you implemented overrides when designing Stationery***, ensure you save the files in the `Formats` folder, any override files currently in use, and a copy of the original files from which the overrides were created to the secure location. Examples of overrides include the following items:
 - Modifications to the `Page.asp` file
 - Custom `.css` files
 - Modifications to image files
 - Any advanced overrides such as modifications to `.xsl` or `.fti` files or files in the `Formats` folder.

When the Stationery designer creates and saves Stationery, ePublisher creates the following folders:

- `StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat`
- `StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat.base`

where *StationeryName* is the name the Stationery designer specified for the Stationery, and *OutputFormat* is the type of output format the Stationery Designer specified for a target in the Stationery.

The `StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat` folder contains any customizations or overrides the Stationery designer specified when designing the Stationery. ePublisher Express synchronizes with the files in the *OutputFormat* folder and uses the information about customizations and overrides contained in files in the *OutputFormat* folder to generate output.

Note: The Stationery may have one or more *OutputFormat* folders, based on the settings the Stationery designer specified.

The `StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat.base` folder contains copies of all the files located in the `\Program Files\WebWorks\ePublisher\release_number\Formats\OutputFormat` folder. These files define the default output format and transforms and are installed by default when you install ePublisher.

Stationery designers can do a compare, or **diff**, between the files located in these folders to quickly see any customizations or overrides specified for the Stationery. Stationery designers can use this information to help them reapply customizations and overrides as needed when designing a newer version of the Stationery in ePublisher Designer.

For more information about overrides, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Upgrading Typical ePublisher Implementations

After you save your existing Stationery design projects, Stationery, any projects you currently use to generate output, and any copies of override files to a secure location, perform the following steps:

- On the Stationery designer computer, uninstall all existing versions of ePublisher components, such as ePublisher Express, ePublisher Designer, and ePublisher AutoMap. The **Stationery design computer** is the computer the Stationery designer uses to create and update Stationery. ePublisher Express and ePublisher Designer are installed on the Stationery design computer. Based on your configuration, ePublisher AutoMap may also be installed on the Stationery design computer.
 - Install the new version of ePublisher Express and ePublisher Designer on the Stationery designer computer. Also install the new version of ePublisher AutoMap if you run ePublisher AutoMap on the Stationery designer computer.
 - Open your existing Stationery design projects using the new version of ePublisher Designer.
 - Generate output and verify that your output generates as expected. Make any adjustments as needed.
 - *If you have implemented typical overrides in a Stationery design project*, such as overrides to `Page.asp` files, custom `.css` files, or `image` files, you can continue to use your overrides to these files, and the new version of ePublisher will recognize and use these existing modifications when generating output.
 - *If you have implemented advanced overrides*, such as overrides to `.xsl` or `.fti` files, or overrides to files in the `Formats` folder, update these files in your new ePublisher installation to include your advanced overrides. For more information, see “Upgrading Implementations with Advanced Customizations” on page 35.
- Note:** When ePublisher Designer detects overrides, by default it will not update to the latest version of the format. This means that no modifications will be necessary in order to continue using your Stationery. However, in this default mode, you will not get any of the format improvements built into the latest release. If you want these improvements, then you will have to configure the **Project Settings** to use the latest version of ePublisher’s formats.
- Create new Stationery for each Stationery design project.
 - Deploy the updated Stationery to an appropriate location.
 - On each writer computer, uninstall ePublisher Express and then reinstall the new version of ePublisher Express.

- The next time writers generate output, they open their existing projects using the new version of ePublisher Express. Writers can choose to synchronize their projects immediately to obtain the latest Stationery and then generate output, or writers can continue using their existing Stationery until they are ready to move to the latest version of the Stationery.

Upgrading Implementations with Advanced Customizations

If you have implemented advanced overrides in the Stationery design, such as overrides to `.xsl` or `.fti` files, or overrides to files in the `Formats` folder, ensure you save a copy of the following items to a secure location before uninstalling a previous version of ePublisher and installing a new version:

- Overrides currently used in the Stationery design project
- A copy of the original files from which the overrides were created

If you want to continue to use your advanced customizations with the new version of ePublisher, first uninstall your previous ePublisher version and then install a new ePublisher version. Then identify and include your overrides in the new versions of the ePublisher files as appropriate by performing a three-way merge of the following items:

- A copy of the existing override file used in the Stationery design project, located in the `StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat` folder, where `StationeryName` is the name the Stationery designer specified for the Stationery, and `OutputFormat` is the type of output format the Stationery Designer specified for a target in the Stationery.
- A copy of the original file from which the override was created, available in the `StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat.base` folder, where `StationeryName` is the name the Stationery designer specified for the Stationery, and `OutputFormat` is the type of output format the Stationery Designer specified for a target in the Stationery.
- A copy of the new file from the new version of ePublisher

Performing a three-way merge allows you to identify the code you changed when you created the override, and also allows you to quickly and easily create the override again in the new ePublisher files. You may find tools such as Araxis Merge Pro, available at <http://www.araxis.com/merge>, or KDiff3, available at <http://kdiff3.sourceforge.net>, helpful as you compare and merge override files.

After you perform your three-way merge and update the files you want to override in the new version of ePublisher with the overrides you specified in the previous version, test your overrides by generating output using the new version of ePublisher Designer and the Stationery design project to confirm your output generates appropriately. After you verify the output generated correctly using your advanced customizations, you can create new Stationery using the Stationery design project and then deploy the updated Stationery that includes your advanced customizations to writers to use to generate output.

Upgrading Advanced Customizations of WebWorks Reverb Skin

The WebWorks Reverb output format is highly customizable and chances are you may have made advanced customizations to this format. If you are upgrading from a prior release, then you will want to understand what files are most likely to be customized and how this is affected when you change the Skin **Target Setting**.

If you have or plan to customize any of the WebWorks Reverb skins, then most likely you will have to modify one or more of the following files.

Table 8: Commonly Customized Reverb Files

Filename	The display area or items affected by this file
<code>webworks.css</code>	Content panel styling only. Includes the styling of the MiniTOC, RelatedTopics, Social Buttons.
<code>skin.css</code>	Styling of TOC, Index, Toolbar, and Breadcrumbs. All icons used in the <code>skin.png</code> sprite file are managed here. Styling of content that appears above the Toolbar, such as the company information.
<code>search.css</code>	Styling of the search results page.
<code>skin.png</code> (derived from <code>skin.Fireworks.png</code>)	PNG file with alpha channel that stores all of the Reverb icons.
<code>connect.asp</code>	Used to manage the button placement in the toolbar. Also manages the TOC/Index/Search panel title for the <i>Corporate</i> skin.
<code>connect.css</code>	Manages basic structure of the entry-point file generated from the <code>connect.asp</code> template file.

When working with alternate skins, you need to be aware of which files are most likely affected as a result of changing the skin type. If you have Advanced Customizations in any of these files, then you need to re-examine the *diffs* of these files after you switch the skin type. Most likely you will see significant changes. Here are some basic steps you can follow to make sure you translate those changes to the new skin properly.

Basic steps for setting an alternate skin type when Advanced customizations are present

1. Check your **Advanced Customizations** for files listed in “Commonly Customized Reverb Files” on page 36.
2. Make sure any of these commonly customized files are implemented as **Target Overrides** as opposed to **Format Overrides**. Setting an alternate skin type will create an implicit target override that will have priority over any format overrides of the same name.
3. Before changing the skin type you will need to record any existing file differences. On the **Advanced** menu click **Manage Target Customizations**. Now use the procedure discussed in “Managing Format/Target Overrides” on page 429 to record these file differences. These file differences will be used later after the skin type has been changed.
4. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**.
5. In the **WebWorks Reverb** category, select the right column of the **Skin** entry to display the file picker button.
6. Click the file picker button to bring up an **Open** file dialog which will display a list of skin plugin files. Each skin plugin file is identifiable by a `.weplugin` extension.
7. Browse to the plugin file that you wish to use and double-click it to set the skin to that value.
8. At this point, you need to consider either removing your existing customizations and then re-implementing them using the information from your previously recorded file differences. Or managing the differences directly by comparing the differences using the procedure discussed in “Managing Format/Target Overrides” on page 429. Either method will work.

Uninstalling ePublisher

If you are installing an ePublisher component that is of version 2009.3 or higher and your currently installed component is version 2009.2 or higher, then your component will automatically be uninstalled for you. Otherwise, before installing a new version of an ePublisher component, you must uninstall any previous versions of the component. Uninstalling an ePublisher component removes the installation folder and registry entries for the component from the computer.

If ePublisher installed the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word on the computer, ePublisher removes the WebWorks Transit menu and WebWorks Transit registry entries when you uninstall the last ePublisher component on the computer.

To uninstall an ePublisher component

1. Close all ePublisher user interfaces.
2. Close all instances of Microsoft Office applications running on the local computer, including instances of Microsoft Word and Microsoft Outlook. Close all instances of Adobe FrameMaker running on the computer.
3. Open Control Panel.
4. Open Add or Remove Programs.
5. Select the ePublisher component you want to uninstall.
6. Click **Remove**.
7. Click **Yes** to confirm you want to remove the ePublisher component from your computer. ePublisher removes the selected ePublisher component.

Troubleshooting Installation, License Keys, and Uninstallation

This section helps you troubleshoot issues related to the following ePublisher issues:

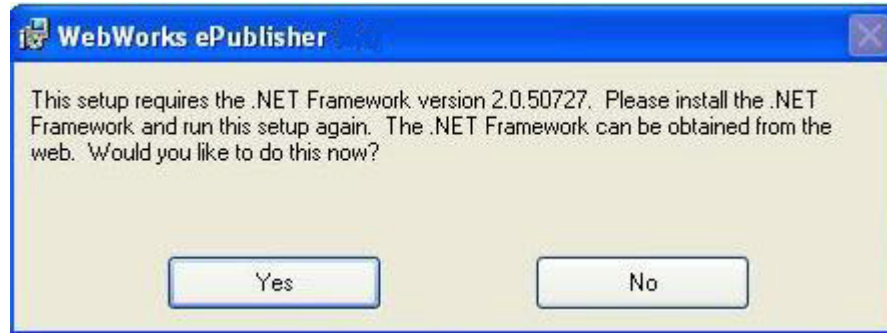
- Installing ePublisher. For more information, see “Problems Installing ePublisher” on page 39.
- Obtaining, adding, and removing Contract IDs and working with licensing. For more information, see “Problems with Contract IDs and Licensing” on page 41.
- Uninstalling ePublisher. For more information, see “Problems Uninstalling ePublisher” on page 41.

Problems Installing ePublisher

This section helps you troubleshoot issues related to installing ePublisher.

Error: Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 Not Installed

If you are installing an ePublisher component and you do not have the Microsoft .NET Framework installed, ePublisher displays the following error message.

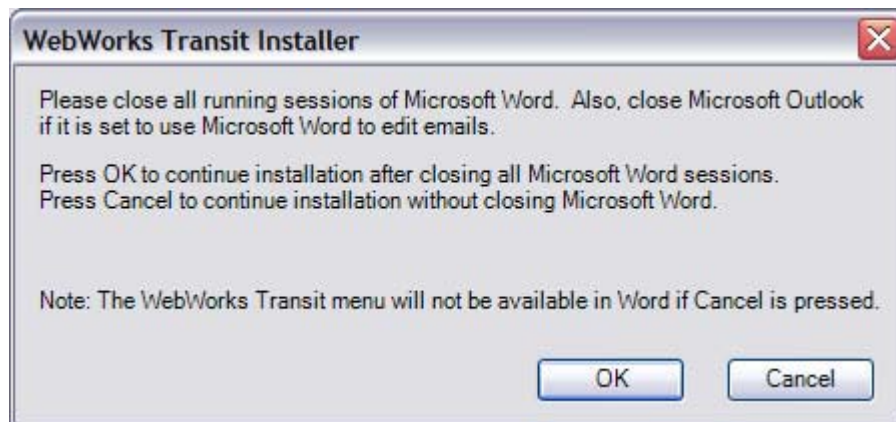


To resolve this issue

1. Click **Yes**. ePublisher redirects you to the Microsoft .NET Framework Web site.
2. Download and install the Microsoft .NET Framework Redistributable Package. You do not need to download and install the Microsoft .NET Framework Software Development Kit.

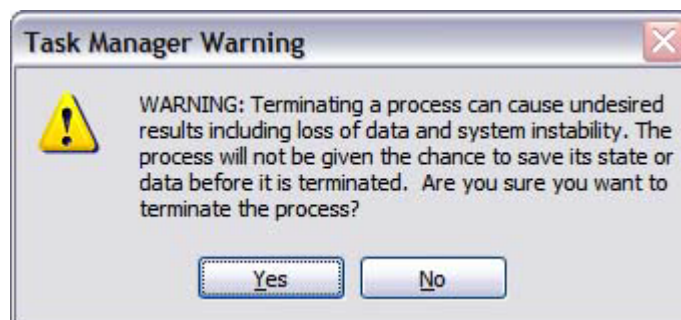
Error: Please Close all Running Sessions of Microsoft Word

If you have any Microsoft Office processes running when installing ePublisher, including instances of Microsoft Word and Microsoft Outlook, ePublisher displays the following error message.



To resolve this issue

1. Close any running instances of Microsoft Word.
2. Close Microsoft Outlook.
3. Open Task Manager.
4. Click on the **Processes** tab.
5. Search for `WINWORD.EXE`. You can click on the **Image Name** column to sort the processes alphabetically.
6. *If there is a **WINWORD.EXE** process running*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Select `WINWORD.EXE`.
 - b. Click **End Process** to close all running Word processes. Task Manager displays the following warning.



- c. Click **Yes**.
- d. Close Task Manager, and then proceed with your ePublisher installation.

7. *If there are no WINWORD.EXE processes running*, proceed with your ePublisher installation.

Problems with Contract IDs and Licensing

This section helps you troubleshoot issues related to obtaining, adding, and removing Contract IDs. For more information about Contract IDs, see “Working with Contract IDs” on page 28.

No Contract ID Received

After you purchase ePublisher components, your WebWorks customer service team will e-mail your Contract ID that enables licensing for the products you purchased. If you have not received a Contract ID, send an email to sales@webworks.com. For more information about Contract IDs, see “Working with Contract IDs” on page 28.

Error: No Valid License Key Found

You must enter a Contract ID before you can generate output. If you have not entered your Contract ID information, ePublisher displays an error stating that no valid license key was found to enable support for your content authoring tool.

If you have entered a Contract ID but still receive this error, verify you entered your Contract ID information correctly. For more information about Contract IDs, see “Working with Contract IDs” on page 28.

Other Contract ID and Licensing Problems

If you have received your Contract ID and entered your Contract ID into ePublisher but you are having problems with licensing, send an email to customerservice@webworks.com. For more information about Contract IDs, see “Working with Contract IDs” on page 28.

Note: ePublisher licensing is flexible, and the WebWorks team can work with you ensure that you have the licensing that is right for you.

Problems Uninstalling ePublisher

This section helps you troubleshoot issues related to uninstalling ePublisher.

Error: You Must Remove the Previous Version of ePublisher

If you try to install a new version of an ePublisher component before uninstalling the previous version of an ePublisher component, ePublisher displays an error message telling you need to remove the previous version of the ePublisher component before you can install the new version of the component. ePublisher should no longer display this error once you uninstall the previous version of the component.

If after you uninstall an ePublisher component, you still receive an error when you try to install a new version of the component, confirm that the component is no longer listed in the Add or Remove Programs list in Control Panel. If the component is no longer listed but you still receive the error, there may still be some registry keys from the previous installation on the computer that are preventing you from installing a new version of the ePublisher component.

To resolve this issue

1. Log on to the WebWorks technical support site at http://www.webworks.com/Technical_Assistance/My_Cases/.
Note: You must have an active maintenance agreement in order to log on to the WebWorks technical support site.
2. On the **Find Solution** tab, in the **Search for** field, type `Problems installing or upgrading ePublisher component`, and then click **Find Solution**.
3. Open the Knowledge Base article.
4. Click the **Remove WebWorks registry file** link.
5. Download the .zip file.
6. Unzip the file and then run the .reg file.
7. Follow the instructions to remove any problematic keys. No other changes will be made to your computer.

Problems Completely Uninstalling ePublisher

If you have a problem uninstalling an ePublisher component, first ensure that no registry keys from the previous version of the component remain on your computer. For more information, see “Error: You Must Remove the Previous Version of ePublisher” on page 42. If after removing all registry key entries from the previous version you still are unable to completely uninstall ePublisher, download and install the Windows Installer Cleanup Utility. The Windows Installer Cleanup Utility allows you to completely remove ePublisher Express from your system.

To completely remove ePublisher using the Windows Installer Cleanup Utility

1. Download and install the Windows Installer Cleanup Utility. The Windows Installer Cleanup Utility is available on the Microsoft Web site at <http://support.microsoft.com/?scid=kb;en-us;290301>.
2. Open the Windows Installer Cleanup Utility.
3. Find and select the ePublisher component from the list of installed products.
4. Click **Remove**.
5. A windows displays and alerts you that ePublisher component will be deleted from the Windows Installer database. Click **OK** to remove the ePublisher component.



6. Browse to Program Files\WebWorks on your local computer.
7. Verify that the ePublisher component is no longer in the folder. If the folder still exists, delete it.

Other Errors Uninstalling ePublisher

If you have already tried to completely uninstall the ePublisher component using the Windows Installer Cleanup Utility but you are still receiving errors, submit a support request on the WebWorks Web site at http://www.webworks.com/Support/My_Cases.

Exploring ePublisher

3

This section helps you understand the ePublisher workflow, from the tasks that the Stationery designer performs, such as preparing source document templates and creating Stationery, through the tasks that writers perform, such as preparing their source documents for output generation, generating output, and validating their generated output.

This section also provides an overview of each ePublisher user interface and, through the use of sample Exploring ePublisher source documents, projects, and Stationery, helps you understand how you can quickly and easily produce online content that meets required styles and standards

Understanding the ePublisher Workflow

ePublisher allows your organization to quickly and easily produce online content that meets your organization's styles and standards. With ePublisher, you use the following workflow to quickly and easily generate online content:

- Stationery designers create new or modify existing source document templates and then use ePublisher Designer to create Stationery for writers to use to generate output. For more information, see “Stationery Designers and ePublisher Designer” on page 46.
- Writers use ePublisher Express and the Stationery created by a Stationery designer to generate and validate online content. For more information, see “Writers and ePublisher Express” on page 47.
- ePublisher AutoMap can automatically generate and deploy online content using the Stationery created by a Stationery designer and source documents created by writers. For more information, see “Automating Output Generation with ePublisher AutoMap” on page 48.

Stationery Designers and ePublisher Designer

If you are a Stationery designer, your first step when you work with ePublisher will be to identify which input formats will be used to author source documents, which types of output need to be generated, and which online features should be included in generated output. For more information, see “Supported Input Formats” on page 3, “Supported Output Formats” on page 4, and “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

After you identify your input and output formats and the features you want to include in your online content, your next step is to either create source document templates or prepare your existing source document templates for output generation. Stationery designers use source document templates to configure settings and create Stationery for writers to use when generating output. Writers use the source document templates to create content and prepare source documents for output generation. If writers already use source document templates, Stationery designers can simply prepare the existing source document templates for output generation. If writers are not currently using source document templates, the Stationery designer creates a source document template for each content authoring tool content used by the authors in the organization. Writers then use the styles and standards defined in the template to prepare their source files for output generation.

For example, if all writers use Adobe FrameMaker and Adobe FrameMaker templates when authoring content, the Stationery designer can take the existing Adobe FrameMaker templates, modify the templates as needed to support online content, and then use the existing templates to create Stationery. If writers use both Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word but are not yet consistently using templates, the Stationery designer creates a new standard set of both Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word templates for writers to use when authoring content. For more information about preparing source document templates for output generation, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

After the Stationery designer prepares source document templates for the content authoring tools writers use, the Stationery designer uses ePublisher Designer to perform the following tasks:

- Create a Stationery design project using the source document templates.
- Configure settings and options in the Stationery design project that define the look, feel, and behavior for each output target.

For example, the Stationery designer can specify if ePublisher should use the existing styles and formatting in the source documents when generating output to ensure the source documents and online content share the same look and feel. The Stationery designer can also specify that online content have a completely different look and feel than the source documents based on online output design goals and business needs.

- Create Stationery using the settings defined in the Stationery design project. The Stationery defines the style and behavior of generated output, and writers use the settings in the Stationery when they generate output from their source documents.

After the Stationery designer creates the Stationery, the Stationery designer places the ePublisher Stationery and source document template files on a shared network folder for writers to use as they author their content, prepare their source documents for output generation, and generate output.

Writers and ePublisher Express

With ePublisher, writers use their preferred content authoring tool and the source document templates provided by the Stationery designer to create content and prepare their source documents for output generation. Writers can use Microsoft Word, structured or unstructured Adobe FrameMaker, and DITA-XML content authoring tools to author content. Writers format, or tag, their source documents by applying styles and formats, and then ePublisher uses this information to generate the appropriate output based on the settings the Stationery designer specified in the Stationery. Writers do not need to worry about output design. Instead, writers can focus on creating the content users need.

When writers are ready to generate online content, writers use ePublisher Express to perform the following tasks:

- Create an ePublisher Express project based on Stationery created by a Stationery designer.
- Add the source documents they want to use to generate output to the ePublisher Express project.
- Generate output. The output writers generate adheres to the styles and standards defined by the Stationery designer in the Stationery. Writers can generate output on demand. ePublisher can also automatically generate output based on a schedule if ePublisher AutoMap is implemented.
- Deploy generated output. Writers can deploy their generation to a Web site or to a central location from which a product build can obtain the files. ePublisher can automatically deploy output if ePublisher AutoMap is implemented.
- Check the generated output into a version control system or copy the generated output to a central archive location.

Although writers typically use the Stationery provided by the Stationery designer without modification, writers can use ePublisher Express to perform some customizations of output target settings if they have target setting modification permissions. For example, writers can customize company information such as company name, phone number, and Web site information in their generated output if they have target setting modification permissions. If writers need to customize any target or project settings, they should first ensure they have appropriate target setting modification permissions. After they make any target setting customizations, they regenerate their output and verify their target setting customizations before deploying their final output. For more information about target setting permissions and modifying target settings, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.

Most writers prefer to use ePublisher Express to perform an initial output generation early in their project cycle. This allows writers to quickly and easily verify that they are formatting their source documents correctly and also confirm that their generated output has the appearance and features they want. After an initial verification of the generated output early in the project cycle, writers continue to add content to their source documents, then regenerate output on a periodic basis, such as once a week, as the project progresses.

If ePublisher AutoMap is implemented, ePublisher AutoMap can be configured to automatically generate output for writers on a regular schedule. For example, ePublisher AutoMap can be configured to automatically generate output for a project every night. When writers arrive at work the next day, writers can quickly and easily verify that the latest content they added to their source documents is formatted correctly and displays appropriately in their generated output. Periodic output generation using the latest version of source documents and Stationery provides the following benefits:

- Allows writers to quickly and easily confirm that they are formatting their source documents correctly and feel confident that their generated output always conforms to the standards and styles defined in their project Stationery by the Stationery designer
- Reduces the amount of time writers spend doing a quality assurance review for their generated output at the end of a project cycle
- Helps eliminate post-generation editing and processing, which save organizations time and money
- Ensures that the end of the project cycle is smooth and hassle-free

ePublisher allows writers to quickly and easily produce high-quality output according to specifications each time they generate output.

Automating Output Generation with ePublisher AutoMap

If you implement ePublisher AutoMap, you can configure ePublisher AutoMap to automate your output generation using Stationery created by a Stationery designer and source documents created by writers. For more information about ePublisher AutoMap, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Exploring the ePublisher User Interfaces

The WebWorks ePublisher Platform provides the following user interfaces:

- ePublisher Express user interface, which writers use when generating output
- ePublisher Designer user interface, which Stationery designers use when creating and updating Stationery
- ePublisher AutoMap user interface, used to automate output generation and integrate the output generation process with source control systems and product build systems

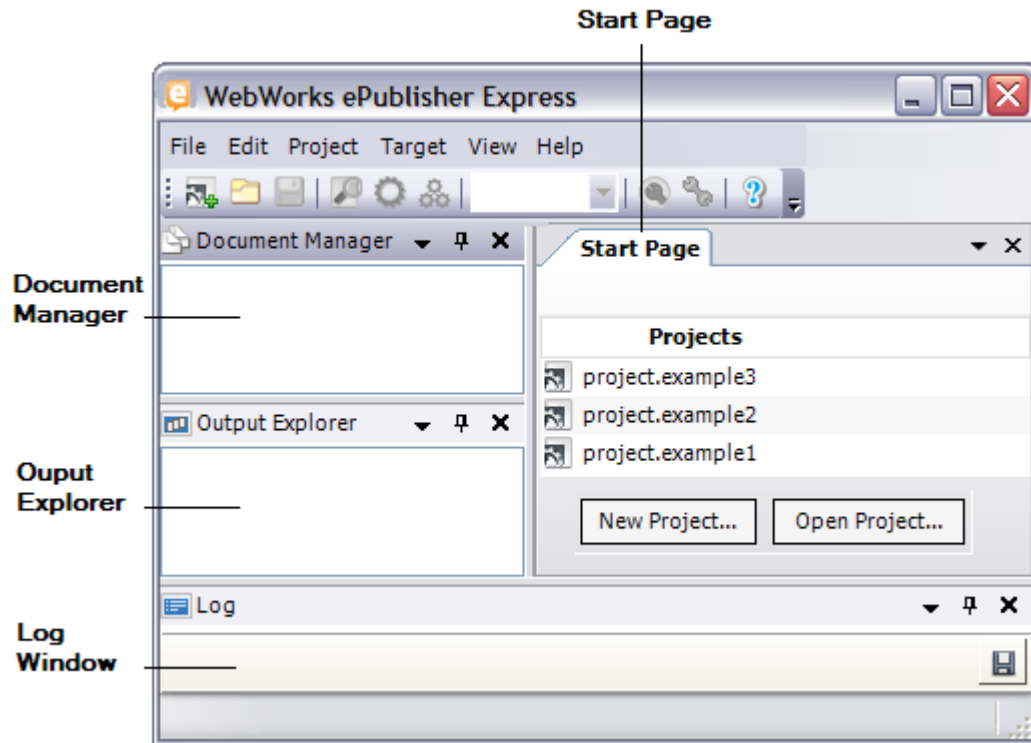
This section provides an overview of each of these ePublisher user interfaces.

Exploring the ePublisher Express User Interface

The ePublisher Express user interface includes the following windows:

- Start page. For more information, see “Understanding the Start Page” on page 51.
- Document Manager. For more information, see “Understanding Document Manager” on page 52.
- Output Explorer. For more information, see “Understanding Output Explorer” on page 55.
- Log Window. For more information, see “Understanding the Log Window” on page 57.

The following figure shows the ePublisher Express user interface.

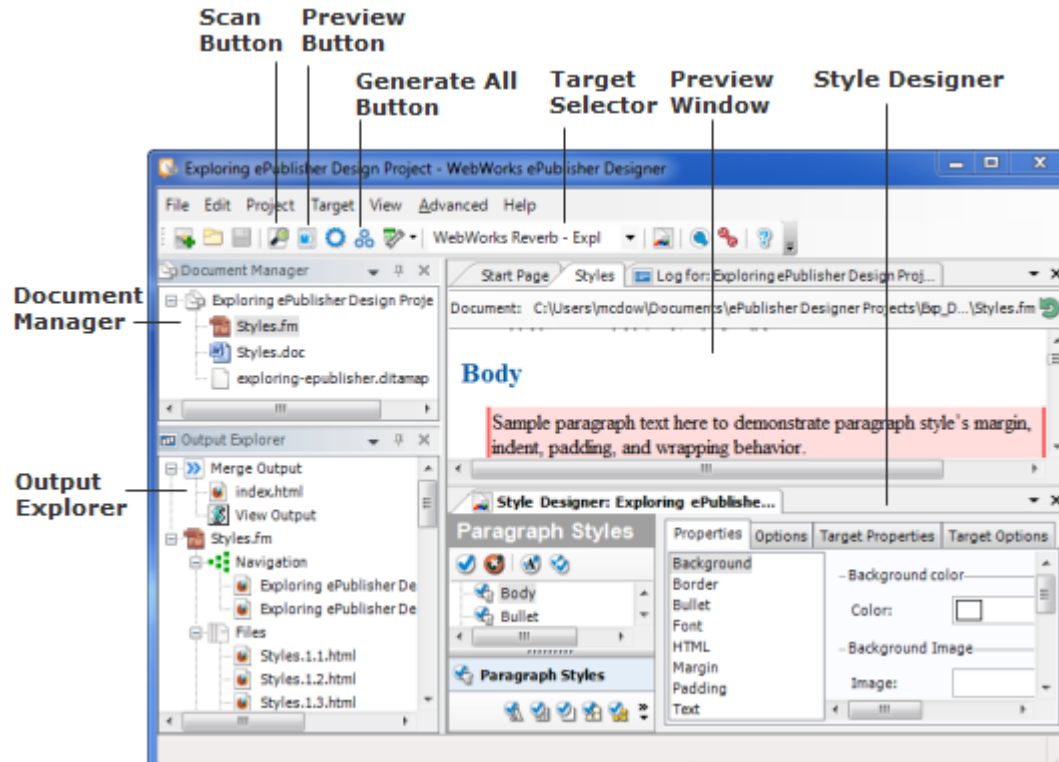


Exploring the ePublisher Designer User Interface

The ePublisher Designer user interface includes the following windows:

- Start page. For more information, see “Understanding the Start Page” on page 51.
- Document Manager. For more information, see “Understanding Document Manager” on page 52.
- Output Explorer. For more information, see “Understanding Output Explorer” on page 55.
- Log Window. For more information, see “Understanding the Log Window” on page 57.
- Style Designer. For more information, see “Understanding Style Designer” on page 57.
- Preview window. For more information, see “Understanding the Preview Window” on page 58.

The following figure shows the ePubublisher Designer user interface.



Understanding the Start Page

The Start page is available in both ePubublisher Express and ePubublisher Designer. The Start page lists the most recently opened ePubublisher projects. You click on a project name on the Start page to open the associated project file. You can also specify the number of projects you want to display on the Start page. For more information about specifying the number of projects you want to display on the Start page, see "Specifying General ePubublisher Preferences" on page 89.

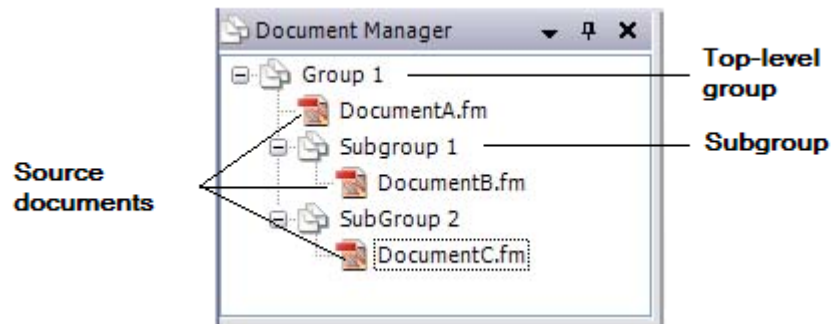
The following figure shows the Start page.



Understanding Document Manager

Document Manager is available in both ePublisher Express and ePublisher Designer. Document Manager allows you to organize the source documents in your project. Within Document Manager, you can add, remove, and rearrange the groups and source documents in your project. For more information about working with source documents in Document Manager, see “Working with Source Documents” on page 333.

The following figure shows Document Manager.

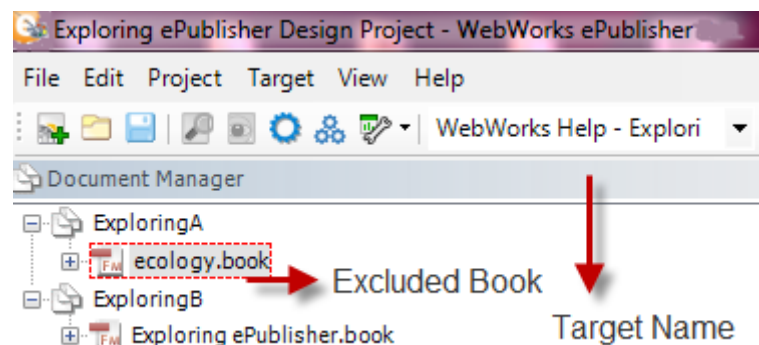


Including or Excluding Files

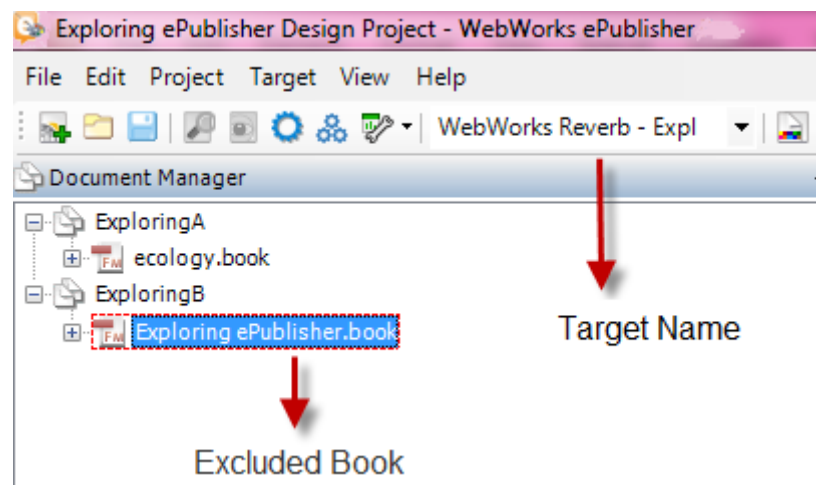
ePublisher allows you to include/exclude documents from processing on a target by target basis. This capability is available to all ePublisher users, regardless of their source authoring format. Users working with Adobe FrameMaker 9 and later book files will see that ePublisher scans default include/exclude values from their source documents.

To include or exclude a document from processing, right-click on any file or book. The context menu will appear with the Include/Exclude option. Clicking this item will reveal three choices: **Include**, **Exclude** and **Use Document Value**. Clicking Exclude will create a red dotted line around the file that will indicate that this source file will not be created in the output file. Clicking include will show as normal and if it is not changed in the FM source, will be included. The Use Document Value will take whatever is set in FrameMaker and if already set to Exclude in the source will show the dotted red lines around the source documents.

Note: Include/exclude settings are configured on a per Target. For example in this project's WebWorks Help target, `ecology.book` (along with all child files) is excluded:



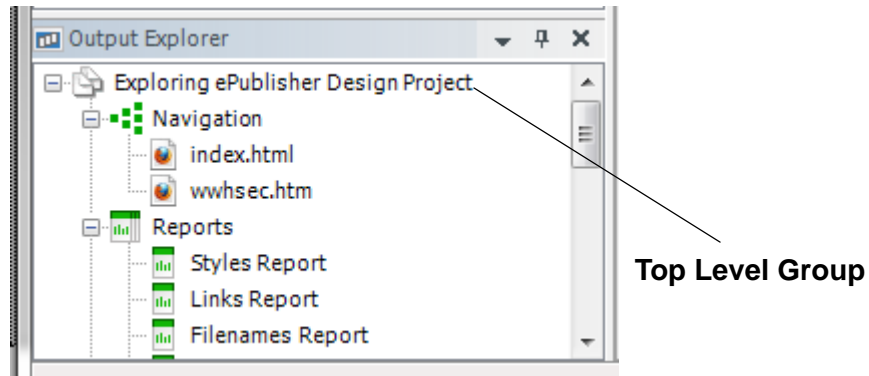
In the same project's WebWorks Reverb target, `ecology.book` book is included for processing while `Exploring ePublisher.book` (and child files) is excluded.



Understanding Output Explorer

Output Explorer is available in both ePublisher Express and ePublisher Designer. Output Explorer displays all of the files generated by ePublisher.

The following figure shows Output Explorer.



The output files displayed in the Output Explorer depend on the item you select in Document Manager. Output Explorer displays items as follows:

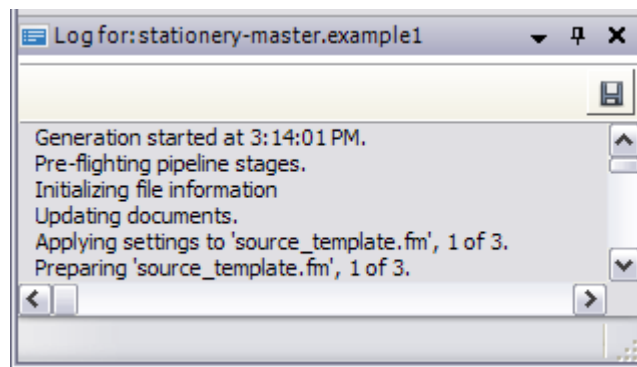
- ***If you have a source document selected in Document Manager***, ePublisher displays the source document group in Output Explorer. The source document group displayed in Output Explorer contains the Files group, which lists all of the generated topic files, the Images group, which lists all of the generated images for your output, and the Reports group, which lists Styles, Links, Accessibility, Filenames, and Topics reports.
- ***If you have a top-level group selected in Document Manager***, ePublisher displays the top-level group in Output Explorer. The top-level group displayed in Output Explorer contains the Navigation group, which lists the entry-point file for the generated output based on the active target selected in the project, and the Reports group, which lists Styles, Links, Accessibility, Filenames, and Topics reports.
- ***If you have a subgroup selected in Document Manager***, ePublisher displays the subgroup in Output Explorer. The subgroup contains the entry-point file for the generated output.

If you have more than one top-level group in Document Manager, in addition to displaying the top-level group you select in Document Manager in Output Explorer, ePublisher also displays a Merge Output group in Output Explorer. The Merge Output group displays the merged entry-point file created from each top-level group entry point file. You can use the merged entry-point file ePublisher automatically creates when you have more than one top-level group in Document Manager to create merged help systems.

For more information about merged help systems, see “Merging Help Systems (Multivolume Help)” on page 373.

Understanding the Log Window

The Log Window is available in both ePublisher Express and ePublisher Designer. The Log Window displays the log ePublisher creates when generating output. When ePublisher creates a log during output generation, you can see the status of the output generation process and any errors generated. You can also quickly and easily see which pipelines ePublisher processed, which settings ePublisher applied, and which files ePublisher parsed. For more information about viewing or working with logs, see the “Working with Output Log Files” on page 364. The following figure shows the Log Window.

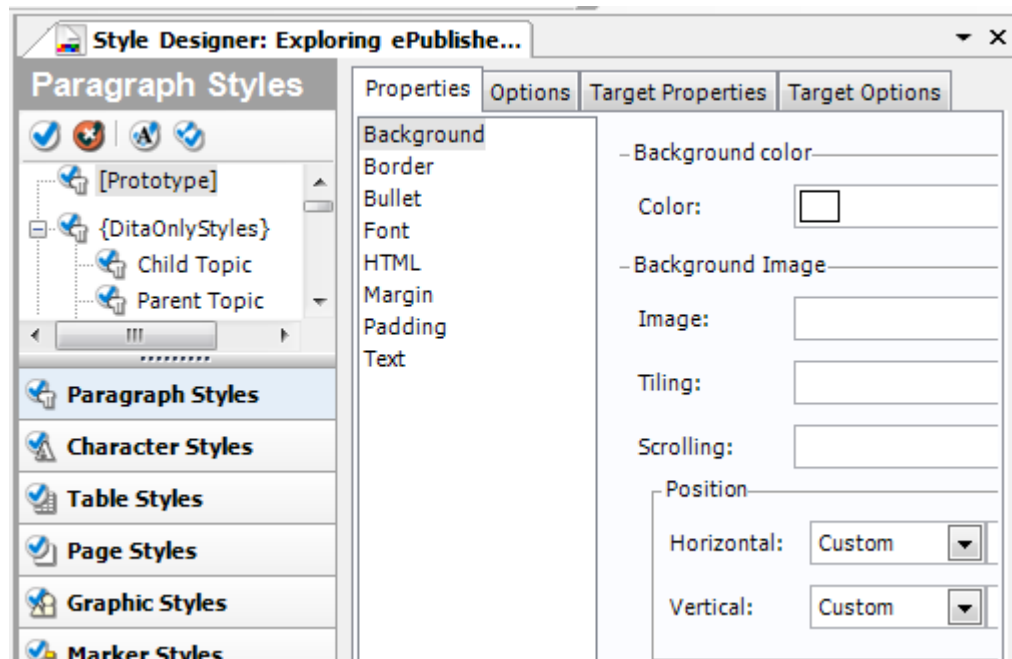


Understanding Style Designer

Style Designer is available in only ePublisher Designer. ePublisher intelligently discovers the styles in the source documents and presents a list of these styles in Style Designer. Stationery designers then define how output should be generated by specifying properties and options for each style. Stationery designers use Style Designer to define how paragraphs, characters, tables, and images display in generated output, including the color or font of a paragraph style, the style of a table border, the layout of a page, and the file format of converted images. Stationery designers can also specify other aspects of generated output, such as page layout and when topic pages are created.

ePublisher uses the styles in source documents along with the settings the Stationery designer defines in the Stationery to generate output. Using styles in source documents and Stationery settings allows precise control over the appearance and behavior of generated output.

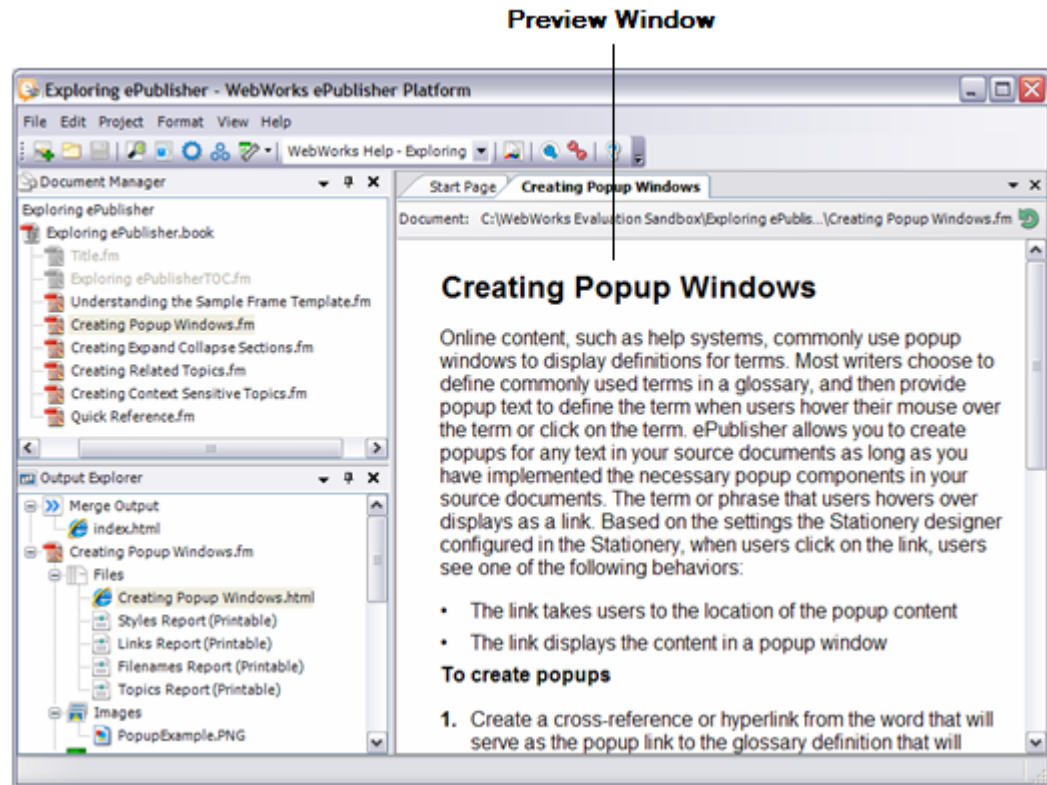
The following figure shows Style Designer.



Understanding the Preview Window

The Preview window is available in only ePublisher Designer. When designing Stationery, Stationery designers can use the Preview window to quickly see how modifications made to styles and project settings affect the appearance of generated output. You can generate a preview of output from a source file in ePublisher Designer when you select a source document in Document Manager. However, some online content features, such as popup windows, links, and conditions, are not displayed or active in the Preview window.

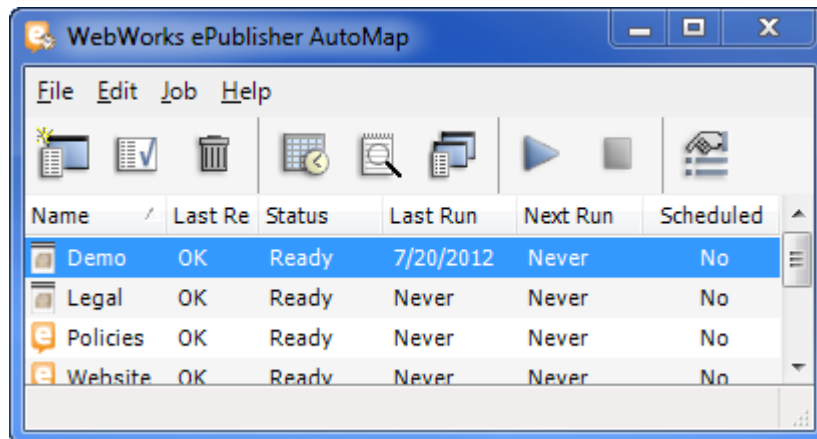
The following figure shows the Preview window.



For more information about using the preview window in ePublisher Designer when designing Stationery, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Exploring the ePublisher AutoMap User Interface

The ePublisher AutoMap user interface allows you to create, edit, and schedule ePublisher AutoMap jobs. The following figure shows the ePublisher AutoMap user interface.



For more information about using ePublisher AutoMap, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Exploring ePublisher Using Sample Source Documents, Projects, and Stationery

When you request an evaluation of ePublisher, you will receive information about how you can download an evaluation version of ePublisher Express, along with an evaluation Contract ID. You can request an evaluation of ePublisher by completing the form available on the WebWorks Web site at: http://www.webworks.com/Tour/Try_ePublisher/ or by calling Quadralay. For more information about contacting Quadralay, see “Contacting Quadralay” on page xv. After you submit your request you will receive an email with instructions on how to download your ePublisher Express evaluation copy and use the evaluation Contract ID.

Once you install ePublisher Express, you can use the sample Exploring ePublisher Express project, source documents and Stationery to help you explore and understand ePublisher capabilities. ePublisher installs the sample Exploring ePublisher project and source documents in the My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\Exp_ePub folder on the same computer. In addition, ePublisher also installs sample Stationery in the My Documents\ePublisher Stationery\Exp_Stationery folder. The Exploring ePublisher Express project, source documents and Stationery allow you to produce output in WebWorks Help, WebWorks Reverb, eBook - ePUB 2.0, PDF, Microsoft HTML Help, and Dynamic HTML using Stationery configured by a Stationery designer.

After you explore ePublisher capabilities using sample Exploring ePublisher Express project, source documents, and Stationery, you can learn more about the ePublisher workflow and Stationery design process by reviewing the *ePublisher Design Guide*. After you review the *ePublisher Design Guide*, if you would like to use ePublisher Designer to create your own Stationery as part of your ePublisher evaluation process, contact a WebWorks sales representative for more information. You can contact a WebWorks sales representative by completing the form available on the WebWorks Web site at <http://www.webworks.com/Company/Contact/> or by calling Quadralay. For more information about contacting Quadralay, see “Contacting Quadralay” on page xv.

Checklist: Exploring ePublisher and Producing Output

Use the following checklist to help you use ePublisher Express and the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery to explore ePublisher and produce output.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Install ePublisher Express. When you install ePublisher Express, ensure you select the check box that allows you to modify target settings, condition settings, variable values, and cross-reference definitions. For more information, see “Installing ePublisher” on page 23.
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. Add the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents to the sample ePublisher Express project. For more information, see “Adding Sample Source Documents to the Exploring ePublisher Project” on page 65.
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. Review the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents to get an understanding of how the source documents are formatted to support online features in generated output. For more information, see “Reviewing Sample Exploring ePublisher Source Documents” on page 67.
<input type="checkbox"/>	4. Use the sample Exploring ePublisher Express project and the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery to generate output. For more information, see “Generating Output Using the Exploring ePublisher Project” on page 68.
<input type="checkbox"/>	5. Review your generated output. For more information, see “Reviewing Exploring ePublisher Generated Output” on page 69.
<input type="checkbox"/>	6. Customize your Exploring ePublisher output. For more information, see “Customizing Exploring ePublisher Output” on page 74.
<input type="checkbox"/>	7. Implement online features such as popup windows, expand/collapse sections, related topics, and context-sensitive help topics using the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery. For more information, see “Implementing Online Features Using Sample Source Documents and Stationery” on page 80.

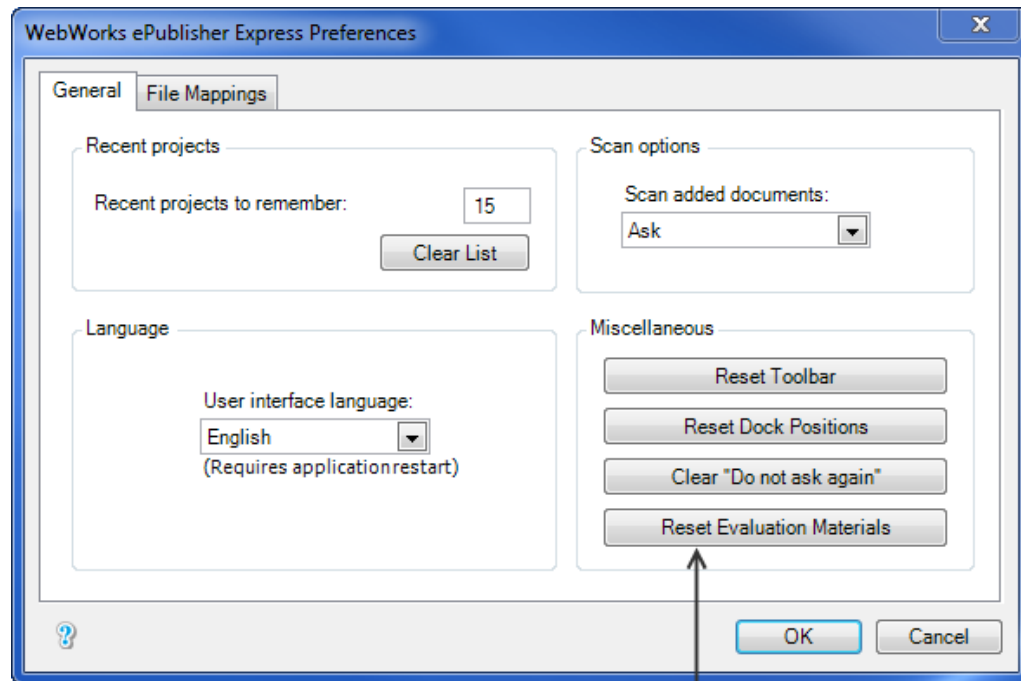
Producing Output Using Sample Source Documents and Stationery

This section explains how you can use sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery to learn more about how ePublisher works and how you can use ePublisher to quickly and easily generate and deliver online content that conforms to the online content styles and standards specified for your organization.

Resetting Evaluation Materials

The sample source documents are considered by ePublisher to be your work, so ePublisher's installation mechanism will never overwrite previously existing versions of these files. If you are upgrading from a prior release of ePublisher, then you may want to reset the evaluation materials so that they are the latest version.

1. Select the **Edit -> Preferences Menu**
2. Select the **Reset Evaluation Materials** button



Select to ensure latest evaluation materials

Understanding the Sample Source Documents and Stationery

When writers work with ePublisher in a real-world environment, writers use their source documents and source document templates and Stationery provided by a Stationery designer to generate output.

However, this section assumes that you are using the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery provided for you when you install ePublisher to generate output. Using the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery allows you to see how quickly and easily writers can generate output using ePublisher Express and Stationery designed by a Stationery designer. Using the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery also means that you do not have to create your own sample source document templates and Stationery in order to generate output.

When you explore ePublisher using the provided sample source documents and Stationery, you use sample source documents and Stationery created by a Stationery designer to generate output. These sample source documents were created using Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word template files the Stationery designer created for use with the Exploring ePublisher Stationery. The Stationery designer used ePublisher Designer to create the Exploring ePublisher Stationery you received by performing the following tasks:

1. Created Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word templates that specified the paragraph and character formats, styles, conditions, and marker types for writers to use when authoring content in source documents. For more information about creating Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word templates, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.
2. Created a Stationery design project. For more information about creating a Stationery design project, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

3. Specified WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher, Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher, and Dynamic HTML - Exploring ePublisher as target output formats. For more information about specifying output formats and targets, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.
4. Used Style Designer to perform the following tasks:
 - Defined page breaks to create a new page for each Chapter Title, Heading1, Heading2, and Heading3 style.
 - Defined the table of contents structure, or levels, for the generated output.
 - Disabled autonumbering for chapter titles.
 - Specified that cross-references display as headings with page numbers in source documents, and display as hyperlinks without page numbers in generated output.
 - Defined popup window styles by completing the following tasks:
 - Note:** Dynamic HTML does not support popup windows.
 - Defined the GlossTerm and GlossDef paragraph styles so that any content with this style applied displays in a popup window.
 - Assigned a page style for popup windows.
 - Defined the ExpandCollapse style so that any content with this style applied displays as a link, and when users click the link, the content below the link displays until the point where the writer inserts a DropDownEnd marker.
 - Defined the RelatedTopics style so that any content with this style displays as a related topic link in generated output when users click a related topics button in the generated output.
 - Defined a TopicAlias marker so that any topic that contains this marker has a unique ID that an application can use to display a context-sensitive help topic when users click on a Help button from within the application.
 - Enabled the display of company information in the bottom right of each generated output page. This allows writers to enter the appropriate company information as needed in their generated output.
 - Specified that the generated output display using the same fonts specified in the source documents. By default, ePublisher generates output using the same fonts and paragraph and character styles and formats used in the source documents. However, Stationery designers can also configure the Stationery to use a completely different look in the generated output.

- Specified that browse sequence buttons display in the generated output. By default, ePublisher creates previous and next browse sequence buttons that automatically set the browse sequence to the same page as the order of topics in the table of contents. Users can use these buttons to click through online content in the order of the table of contents.
- Configured the Stationery to ignore front matter in source documents such as title pages and table of contents pages.
- Configured a passthrough condition to use when embedding code that references multimedia files in source documents.

For more information about using Style Designer to perform these tasks, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

5. Saved the Stationery and performed a test output generation using the sample template files to confirm that the Stationery generates output correctly. For more information, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.
6. Deployed the Stationery for other writers to use to generate output. For more information, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Adding Sample Source Documents to the Exploring ePublisher Project

Add the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents to the sample Exploring ePublisher Express project. The sample Exploring ePublisher Express project uses the sample Exploring ePublisher Stationery configured by the Stationery designer. After you add the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents to the sample Exploring ePublisher project, you will generate output using the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery. Generating output will help you understand how writers can use ePublisher Express and Stationery created by a Stationery designer to quickly and easily generate output from their source documents.

To add sample source documents to the Exploring ePublisher project

1. Open ePublisher Express.
2. On the **File** menu, click **Open**.
3. Browse to the `My Documents\ ePublisher Express Projects\Exp_ePub` folder.
4. Select the `Exploring ePublisher Project.wrp` file, and then click **Open**.
5. *If ePublisher displays a message asking you if you would like to synchronize the project with the Stationery*, click **OK**. ePublisher synchronizes the project with the Stationery.

6. *If you use Adobe FrameMaker to create your source documents*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In Document Manager, click **Exploring ePublisher Project**.
 - b. On the **Project** menu, click **Add Document**.
 - c. Browse to the My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\Exp_ePub\Source-Docs\Adobe FrameMaker folder, select the Exploring ePublisher.book file, and then click **Open**. ePublisher displays the source documents you added to the project in Document Manager.
7. *If you use Microsoft Word to create your source documents*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In Document Manager, click **Exploring ePublisher Project**.
 - b. On the Project menu, click **Add Document**.
 - c. Browse to the My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\Exp_ePub\Source-Docs\Microsoft Word folder, select the Exploring ePublisher.doc file, and then click **Open**. ePublisher displays the source documents you added to the project in Document Manager.
8. On the **File** menu, click **Save**.

After you add source documents to the Exploring ePublisher project, complete the following actions:

- Review the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents. For more information, see “Reviewing Sample Exploring ePublisher Source Documents” on page 67.
- Generate output. For more information, see “Generating Output Using the Exploring ePublisher Project” on page 68.
- Review the generated output. For more information, see “Reviewing Exploring ePublisher Generated Output” on page 69.
- Customize the output. For more information, see “Customizing Exploring ePublisher Output” on page 74.
- Implement online features such as popup windows, expand/collapse sections, related topics, and context-sensitive help topics. For more information, see “Implementing Online Features Using Sample Source Documents and Stationery” on page 80.

Reviewing Sample Exploring ePublisher Source Documents

Review the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents you included in the Exploring ePublisher project. You will use the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents to generate output using the Exploring ePublisher Stationery. Reviewing the sample source documents before you generate output will help you understand how writers prepare their source documents when they want to implement features such as popup windows, expand/collapse sections, related topics, and context-sensitive help topics in their generated output.

To review the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents

1. *If you added the Adobe FrameMaker Exploring ePublisher.book source document*, in Document Manager, double-click the `Exploring ePublisher.book` file. ePublisher opens the `Exploring ePublisher.book` file.
2. *If you added the Microsoft Word Exploring ePublisher.doc source document*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Double-click the `Exploring ePublisher.doc` file. ePublisher opens the `Exploring ePublisher.doc` file.
 - b. On the **Tools** menu, click **Options**.
 - c. On the **View** tab, in the **Formatting marks** area, select the **Hidden text** check box, and then click **OK**.

When writers format Microsoft Word source documents for output generation, Microsoft Word inserts some of the items writers use as hidden text. Displaying the hidden text in the Microsoft Word source documents helps you quickly and easily see online content formatting elements added to the Microsoft Word source documents.

3. Review source document contents to become familiar with the content and the styles and formatting used in the source documents. After you review the source documents, generate output.

Generating Output Using the Exploring ePublisher Project

After you have added the Exploring ePublisher source documents to your ePublisher Express project and reviewed the source documents, generate output for the following output formats using your Exploring ePublisher project:

- WebWorks Help
- WebWorks Reverb
- Microsoft HTML Help
- Dynamic HTML
- PDF
- eBook - ePUB 2.0

ePublisher provides support for a large variety of output formats, such as simple and Dynamic HTML, Sun JavaHelp, Oracle Help, Eclipse Help, PDFs, Wikis, Microsoft Reader, Palm Reader, and more. You can produce output for all of these different formats using a single set of source documents in just a few clicks.

The sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery provide examples of how online features such as popup windows, expand/collapse sections, related topics, and context-sensitive help topics display in generated output. After you generate and review the Exploring ePublisher generated output, you can customize target settings in ePublisher to further customize the look and feel of the generated output. For more information, see “Customizing Exploring ePublisher Output” on page 74.

To generate output using the Exploring ePublisher project

1. On the **Project** menu, click **Scan All Documents**.
2. Generate WebWorks Help by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**. ePublisher displays the Log Window and generates output.
 - c. *If you want to quickly review the generated output*, click **Yes**. You will also review the generated output in more detail in a following task. For more information, see “Reviewing Sample Exploring ePublisher Source Documents” on page 67.

3. Generate Microsoft HTML Help by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, select the **Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - c. *If you want to quickly review the generated output*, click **Yes**. You will also review the generated output in more detail in a following task. For more information, see “Reviewing Sample Exploring ePublisher Source Documents” on page 67.
4. Generate Dynamic HTML by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, select the **Dynamic HTML - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - c. *If you want to quickly review the generated output*, click **Yes**. You will also review the generated output in more detail in a following task. For more information, see “Reviewing Sample Exploring ePublisher Source Documents” on page 67.

Reviewing Exploring ePublisher Generated Output

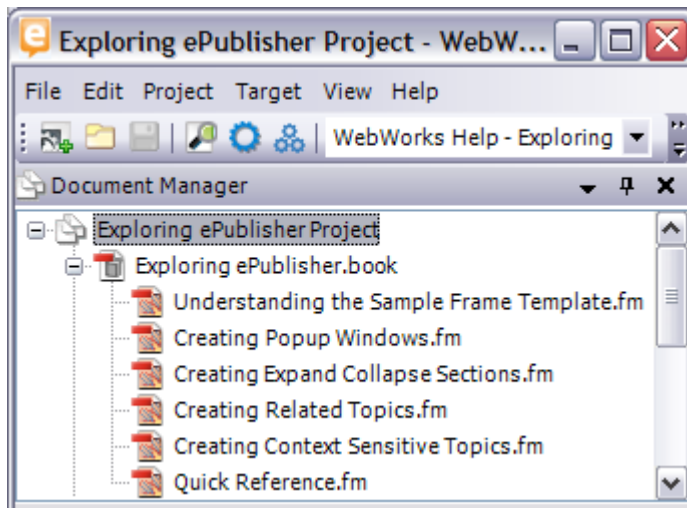
The sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery provide examples of how the following online features display in generated output:

- Popup windows
- Expand/collapse sections
- Related topics
- Context-sensitive help topics

Review the output you generated using the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery to learn more about these items. After you review the Exploring ePublisher generated output, you can customize target settings in ePublisher to further customize the look and feel of the generated output. For more information, see “Customizing Exploring ePublisher Output” on page 74.

To review the Exploring ePublisher generated output

1. In Document Manager, select the Exploring ePublisher Project top-level group. The following figure shows the Exploring ePublisher Project top-level group selected in Document Manager.



2. *If you want to review generated output for WebWorks Help*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click `index.html` entry-point file to open the WebWorks Help system.

Note: By default, WebWorks Help displays a default WebWorks logo on the first page, also known as the splash page, of a WebWorks Help system. You can quickly and easily replace the default WebWorks logo used on the splash page with your own company logo, or you can choose not to use a splash page, and show the first help topic instead. For more information about customizing the splash page in WebWorks Help, see “Customizing Exploring ePublisher Output” on page 74.

3. *If you want to review generated output for Microsoft HTML Help*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, select the **Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - c. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click the `Exploring ePublisher.chm` entry-point file to open the Microsoft HTML Help system.

4. *If you want to review generated output for Dynamic HTML*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, select the **Dynamic HTML - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - c. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click the `toc.html` entry-point file to open the Dynamic HTML.
5. On the **Contents** tab, note that ePublisher created a new topic page for each section of the document with a Chapter Title, Heading1, Heading2, or Heading3 format or style applied.
6. Click one of the following topics:
 - *If you generated output using the FrameMaker source document*, click the **Sample Source Documents and Stationery (FrameMaker)** topic.
 - *If you generated output using the Word source document*, click the **Sample Source Documents and Stationery (Word)** topic.
7. Note that although a chapter number displays in front of this heading in the source document, a chapter number does not display in front of this heading in the generated output. The Stationery designer configured the Stationery not to display chapter numbers in generated output because chapter numbers are out of context in online content.
8. Click one of the following topics:
 - *If you generated output using the FrameMaker source document*, click the **Sample Source Documents and Stationery (FrameMaker) > Adding Functional Elements to Online Content (FrameMaker)** topic.
 - *If you generated output using the Word source document*, click the **Sample Source Documents and Stationery (Word) > Adding Functional Elements to Online Content (Word)** topic.
9. Note that although the cross-references display with page numbers in the source document, the Stationery designer configured the Stationery to display cross-references as hyperlinks without page numbers in the generated output. Cross-references with page numbers are appropriate in printed content, while cross-references displayed as hyperlinks without page numbers are appropriate in online content.

10. Note that each page of the generated output includes previous and next browse sequence buttons that automatically set the browse sequence to the same page as the order of topics in the table of contents. Users can use these buttons to click through online content in the order of the table of contents. The browse sequence buttons are enabled in ePublisher by default. Stationery designers can choose whether they want to display or hide the browse buttons when they define the Stationery. Stationery designers can also change the appearance of the browse sequence buttons in generated output.
11. Note that the generated output includes breadcrumbs. Breadcrumbs may be used to provide information to users about where they are in the content and to offer users a way to quickly return to previously viewed pages without using the Back button, using other navigation bars, or typing in a keyword search. Stationery designers can choose whether they want to display or hide breadcrumbs when they design Stationery. Stationery designers can also change the appearance and location of the breadcrumbs in generated output.
12. View how popup windows display in generated output by completing the following steps:

Note: Dynamic HTML does not support popup windows.

- a. *If you generated output using the FrameMaker source document*, on the **Contents** tab, click the **Popup Windows (FrameMaker) > Creating Popup Windows (FrameMaker)** topic.
- b. *If you generated output using the Word source document*, on the **Contents** tab, click the **Popup Windows (Word) > Creating Popup Windows (Word)** topic.
- c. *If you are viewing WebWorks Help output*, hover over a link to display the popup window.
- d. *If you are viewing Microsoft HTML Help output*, click the link to display the popup window.

13. View how expand/collapse sections display in generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. *If you generated output using the FrameMaker source document*, on the **Contents** tab, click the **Expand/Collapse Sections (FrameMaker) > Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (FrameMaker)** topic.
 - b. *If you generated output using the Word source document*, on the **Contents** tab, click the **Expand/Collapse Sections (Word) > Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Word)**.
 - a. Click on the arrow following the procedure introductory text to expand and display the steps in the procedure.
 - b. Click on the arrow following the procedure introductory text again to collapse and hide the steps in the procedure.
14. View how related topics links display in generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. *If you generated output using the FrameMaker source document*, on the **Contents** tab, click the **Related Topics Links (FrameMaker) > Creating Related Topics Links (FrameMaker)** topic.
 - b. *If you generated output using the Word source document*, on the **Contents** tab, click the **Related Topics Links (Word) > Creating Related Topics Links (Word)**.
 - c. *If you are viewing related topics in WebWorks Help or Microsoft HTML Help*, click the **Related Topics** button at the bottom of the page. Related topic links display in a related topics window, and you can click a related topics link in the related topics window to display the related topic.
 - d. *If you are viewing related topics in Dynamic HTML*, click a related topics link at the bottom of the page to display the related topic.
15. See how a context-sensitive help topic ID specified in a TopicAlias marker in a source document gets added to a help system mapping file by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, select the **Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - c. In the `Exploring ePublisher` folder, open the `Exploring ePublisher.h` mapping file in Notepad.
 - d. Verify that the `IDH_CreatingContextSensitiveTopicsFrame` or `IDH_CreatingContextSensitiveTopicsWord` topic ID is listed in the `Exploring ePublisher.h` mapping file.

Customizing Exploring ePublisher Output

After you review the Exploring ePublisher output, customize the Exploring ePublisher WebWorks Help, Microsoft HTML Help, and Dynamic HTML output. This section provides only a few examples of some of the ways you can use ePublisher to customize your output. The flexible and powerful output generation capabilities ePublisher provides allow you to specify precisely how you want your output to display, ensuring you can always deliver your online content to your exact specifications every time. You can customize the Exploring ePublisher output by performing the following actions:

- Add your company information, such as company name, phone number, fax number, and email address to the generated output.
- Configure your WebWorks Help system to display the first topic in your WebWorks Help instead of the default WebWorks Help splash page.
- Change the theme of the WebWorks Help output.
- Hide the index in your generated output.

In order to customize the Exploring ePublisher output, you must have target setting modification permissions. If you did not select the target setting permissions option when you installed ePublisher Express, you will not see the **Target Settings** menu option displayed on the **Target** menu. If you cannot see the **Target Settings** menu option because you do not have target setting modification permissions, you can quickly configure ePublisher Express to allow you to configure target settings. For more information, see “Enabling Target Setting Permissions After Installing ePublisher Express” on page 27.

To customize Exploring ePublisher output

1. Add company information to your generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. *If you want to add company information to your WebWorks Help output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. *If you want to add company information to your Microsoft HTML Help output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - c. *If you want to add company information to your Dynamic HTML output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **Dynamic HTML - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - d. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**.
 - e. Under **Company Information**, in the **Company email address** field, type your company email address.

For example, type Email: *info@companyname.com*, where *info@company.com* is a valid email address for your company.
 - f. In the **Company fax number** field, type the fax number for your company.

For example, type Fax: *xxx.xxx.xxxx*, where *xxx.xxx.xxxx* is the fax number for your company.
 - g. In the **Company name** field, type your company name.
 - h. In the **Company phone number** field, type your company phone number.

For example, type Phone: *xxx.xxx.xxxx*, where *xxx.xxx.xxxx* is the phone number for your company.
 - i. In the **Company web page** field, type your company web page.

For example, type *http://www.companyname.com*, where *www.companyname.com* is the URL for your company Web site.
 - j. Click **OK**.

2. Show the first topic instead of the splash screen in your WebWorks Help output by completing the following steps:

- a. On the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
- b. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**.
- c. Under **WebWorks Help**, in the **Show first document instead of splash page** field, set the value to **Enabled**.
- d. Click **OK**.

Your Stationery designer can also configure your Stationery to use a custom splash page image. For more information about customizing the splash page image, see “Customizing Splash Page Images in WebWorks Help” on page 357.

3. Change the theme of your WebWorks Help system from Lobby Blue to Architect Green by completing the following steps:

- a. On the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
- b. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**.
- c. Under **WebWorks Help**, in the **Theme** field, set the value to **Architect Green**.
- d. Click **OK**.

4. Hide the index in your generated output.

By default, ePublisher creates an index using index markers inserted into source documents. If you have source documents that do not contain index entries, you can hide the index in your generated output. After you add index entries into your source documents, you can then specify that you want to display an index in your generated output in just a few clicks. The Exploring ePublisher source documents do not have index entries added, so you should hide the index in the Exploring ePublisher generated output since the index in the generated output will not contain useful information to users. Hide the index in your generated output by completing the following steps:

- a. *If you want to hide the index in your WebWorks Help output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - a. *If you want to hide the index in your Microsoft HTML Help output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - a. *If you want to hide the index in your Dynamic HTML output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **Dynamic HTML - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**.
 - c. Under **Index**, set the **Generate index** setting value to **Disabled**.
 - d. Click **OK**.
5. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.

6. Verify your output displays the company information you specified by completing the following steps:
 - a. *If you added company information to your WebWorks Help output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. *If you added company information to your Microsoft HTML Help output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - c. *If you added company information to your Dynamic HTML output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **Dynamic HTML - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - d. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - e. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, perform one of the following actions:
 - *If you added company information to your WebWorks Help output*, double-click the `index.html` entry-point file to open the WebWorks Help system.
 - *If you added company information to your Microsoft HTML Help output*, double-click the `Exploring ePublisher.chm` entry-point file to open the Microsoft HTML Help system.
 - *If you added company information to your Dynamic HTML output*, double-click the `toc.html` entry-point file to open the Microsoft HTML Help system.
 - f. Verify that the company name, phone number, fax number, and email address you specified displays in the bottom right of each topic page in the generated output. Also note that the Stationery designer can specify a different look and feel for the area that contains this information as needed based on the preferred styles and standards for your organization.

7. Verify that the first topic in your WebWorks Help output displays instead of the default WebWorks splash screen and verify that the WebWorks Help system uses the Architect Green theme instead of the Lobby Blue theme by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - c. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click the `index.html` entry-point file to open the WebWorks Help generated output.
 - d. Verify that the first topic in the WebWorks Help system displays instead of the default WebWorks Help splash screen.
 - e. Verify that the color theme in the help system in the WebWorks Help system displays using the Architect Green theme instead of the default Lobby Blue theme.
8. Verify that an index no longer displays in your generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. *If you specified you wanted to hide the index in your WebWorks Help output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - b. *If you specified you wanted to hide the index in your Microsoft HTML Help output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - c. *If you specified you wanted to hide the index in your Dynamic HTML output*, on the **Project** menu, select the **Dynamic HTML - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - d. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - e. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, perform one of the following actions:
 - *If you specified you wanted to hide the index in your WebWorks Help output*, double-click the `index.html` entry-point file to open the WebWorks Help generated output.
 - *If you specified you wanted to hide the index in your Microsoft HTML Help output*, double-click the `Exploring ePublisher.chm` entry-point file to open the Microsoft HTML Help generated output.
 - *If you specified you wanted to hide the index in your Dynamic HTML output*, double-click the `toc.html` entry-point file to open the Dynamic HTML generated output.
 - f. Verify that the **Index** tab no longer displays in your generated output.

After you perform these simple customizations for your generated output, next explore how you can quickly and easily implement online features using the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery.

Implementing Online Features Using Sample Source Documents and Stationery

You can create online features such as popup windows, expand/collapse sections, and related topics links using the sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery.

Using Sample Adobe FrameMaker Source Documents and Stationery to Implement Online Features

If you use Adobe FrameMaker to author content, you can use the sample Exploring ePublisher Adobe FrameMaker source documents and the sample Exploring ePublisher Stationery to see how you can use ePublisher to quickly and easily implement the following online features:

- Popup windows
- Expand/collapse sections
- Related topics
- Context-sensitive help topics

The following procedure provides an example of how to implement online features in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for implementing online features in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To implement online features using the sample Exploring ePublisher Adobe FrameMaker source documents and Stationery

1. Create a popup window by completing the following steps:
 - a. In Document Manager, open the `Quick Reference.fm` file.
 - b. In the Exploring ePublisher Sample Content section at the end of the `Quick Reference.fm` file, apply the GlossTerm paragraph format to the Popup window glossary term and apply the GlossDef paragraph format to the popup window glossary definition.
 - c. Insert your cursor after the period in the last sentence of the content you want to display in the popup window.
 - d. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - e. In the **Marker Type** field, select **PopupEnd** from the drop-down list.
 - f. Click **New Marker**. Do not specify any text in the **Marker Text** field when you insert the marker.
 - g. In Document Manager, open the `Creating Popup Windows.fm` file.
 - h. In the Creating Your First Popup Window (FrameMaker) section in the `Creating Popup Windows.fm` file, highlight the term *popup window* in the following sentence:

A popup window can be used to display glossary terms and definitions.
 - i. On the **Special** menu, click **Cross Reference**.
 - j. In the **Document** field, select **Quick Reference.fm**.
 - k. In the **Paragraph Tags** field, click **GlossTerm**.
 - l. In the **Paragraphs** field, click **Popup windows**.
 - m. In the **Format** field, select **Glossary Term**.
 - n. Click **OK**.
 - o. Save your FrameMaker source document.
 - p. In ePublisher Express, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - q. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - r. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - s. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click the `index.html` file to open your generated WebWorks Help output.
 - t. On the **Contents** tab, click **Popup Windows (FrameMaker) > Creating**

Your First Popup Window (FrameMaker).

- u.** Hover over the link and verify that a popup window with the popup window glossary definition you specified displays correctly.
- 2.** Create an expand/collapse section by completing the following steps:
 - a.** In Document Manager, open the `Creating Expand Collapse Sections.fm` file.
 - b.** In the **Creating Your First Expand/Collapse Section (FrameMaker)** section, apply the **ExpandCollapse** paragraph format to the following text:

To create your first expand/collapse section
 - c.** Insert your cursor after the period in the last sentence of the procedure.
 - d.** On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - e.** In the **Marker Type** field, select **DropDownEnd** from the drop-down list.
 - f.** Click **New Marker**. Do not specify any text in the **Marker Text** field when you insert the marker.
 - g.** Save the Adobe FrameMaker source document.
 - h.** In ePublisher Express, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - i.** On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - j.** In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - k.** In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click the `index.html` file to open your generated WebWorks Help output.
 - l.** On the **Contents** tab, click **Expand/Collapse Sections (FrameMaker) > Creating Your First Expand/Collapse Section (FrameMaker)**.
 - m.** Click on the arrow following the procedure introductory text to expand and display the steps in the procedure.
 - n.** Click on the arrow following the procedure introductory text again to collapse and hide the steps in the procedure.

3. Create related topics links for a topic by completing the following steps:
 - a. In Document Manager, open the `Creating Related Topics.fm` file.
 - b. In the Creating Your First Related Topics Links (FrameMaker) section, apply the RelatedTopic paragraph format to the following list of cross-references at the end of the topic:
 - Creating Your First Popup Window (FrameMaker)
 - Creating Your First Expand/Collapse Section (FrameMaker)
 - c. Save the Adobe FrameMaker source document.
 - d. In ePublisher Express, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - e. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - f. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - g. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click the `index.html` file to open your generated WebWorks Help output.
 - h. On the **Contents** tab, click **Related Topics Links (FrameMaker) > Creating Your First Related Topics Links (FrameMaker)**.
 - i. Click on the Related Topics button at the bottom of the page and verify that the list of related topics displays in the generated output.

4. Create a context-sensitive help topic by completing the following steps:
 - a. In Document Manager, open the `Creating Context Sensitive Topics.fm` file.
 - b. In the Creating Your First Context-Sensitive Help Topics (FrameMaker) section, insert your cursor in front of the first paragraph in the topic.
 - c. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - d. In the **Marker Type** field, select **TopicAlias** from the drop-down list.
 - e. In the **Marker Text** field, specify the following topic ID for the topic:
`IDH_CreatingYourFirstContextSensitiveHelpTopicFrame`
 - f. Click **New Marker**.
 - g. Save the Adobe FrameMaker source document.
 - h. On the **Project** menu, select the **Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - i. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - j. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - k. In the `Exploring ePublisher` folder, open the `Exploring ePublisher.h` mapping file in Notepad.
 - l. Verify that the
`IDH_CreatingYourFirstContextSensitiveHelpTopicFrame` topic ID is listed in the `Exploring ePublisher.h` mapping file.

Using Sample Microsoft Word Source Documents and Stationery to Implement Online Features

If you use Microsoft Word to author content, you can use the sample Exploring ePublisher Microsoft Word source document and the sample Exploring ePublisher Stationery to see how you can use ePublisher to quickly and easily implement the following online features:

- Popup windows
- Expand/collapse sections
- Related topics
- Context-sensitive help topics

The following procedure provides an example of how to implement online features in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for implementing online features in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To implement online features using the sample Exploring ePublisher Microsoft Word source documents and Stationery

1. Create a popup window by completing the following steps:
 - a. In Document Manager, open the `Exploring ePublisher.doc` file.
 - b. In the Exploring ePublisher Sample Content (Word) section at the end of the `Exploring ePublisher.doc` file, apply the GlossTerm paragraph format to the Popup window glossary term and apply the GlossDef paragraph format to the popup window glossary definition.
 - c. Insert your cursor in front of the Popup window term.
 - d. On the **Insert** menu, click **Bookmark**.
 - e. In the **Bookmark name** field, type `PopupWindow`, and then click **Add**.
 - f. Insert your cursor at the end of the last sentence of the popup window definition.
 - g. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - h. In the **Marker** field, select **PopupEnd**, and then click **OK**.
 - i. In the Creating Your First Popup Window (Word) section in the `Exploring ePublisher.doc` file, highlight the term *popup window* in the following sentence:

A popup window can be used to display glossary terms and definitions.
 - j. On the **Insert** menu, click **Hyperlink**.
 - k. In the **Select a place in this document** field, under Bookmarks, select **PopupWindow**, and then click **OK**.
 - l. Save your Word source document.
 - m. In ePublisher Express, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - n. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - o. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - p. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click the `index.html` file to open your generated WebWorks Help output.
 - q. On the **Contents** tab, click **Popup Windows (Word) > Creating Your First Popup Window (Word)**.
 - r. Hover over the popup window text in the following sentence and verify that a popup window with the popup window glossary definition you specified displays correctly.

2. Create an expand/collapse section by completing the following steps:
 - a. In the Creating Your First Expand/Collapse Section (Word) section in the `Exploring ePublisher.doc` source document, apply the ExpandCollapse paragraph format to the following text:

To create your first expand/collapse section
 - b. Insert your cursor after the period in the last sentence of the procedure.
 - c. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - d. In the **Marker** field, select **DropDownEnd** from the list, and then click **OK**.
 - e. Save the Microsoft Word source document.
 - f. In ePublisher Express, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - g. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - h. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - i. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click the `index.html` file to open your generated WebWorks Help output.
 - j. On the **Contents** tab, click **Expand/Collapse Sections (Word) > Creating Your First Expand/Collapse Section (Word)**.
 - k. Click on the arrow following the procedure introductory text to expand and display the steps in the procedure.
 - l. Click on the arrow following the procedure introductory text again to collapse and hide the steps in the procedure.

3. Create related topics links for a topic by completing the following steps:
 - a. In the Creating Your First Related Topics Links (Word) section in the `Exploring ePublisher.doc` source document, apply the RelatedTopic paragraph format to the following list of cross-references at the end of the topic:
 - Creating Your First Popup Window (Word)
 - Creating Your First Expand/Collapse Section (Word)
 - b. Save the Microsoft Word source document.
 - c. In ePublisher Express, on the **Project** menu, select the **WebWorks Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - d. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - e. In Document Manager, select the **Exploring ePublisher** top-level group.
 - f. In Output Explorer, under **Navigation**, double-click the `index.html` file to open your generated WebWorks Help output.
 - g. On the **Contents** tab, click **Related Topics Links (Word) > Creating Your First Related Topics Links (Word)**.
 - h. Click on the Related Topics button at the bottom of the page and verify that the list of related topics displays in the generated output.

4. Create a context-sensitive help topic by completing the following steps:
 - a. In the Creating Your First Context-Sensitive Help Topics section in the Exploring ePublisher.doc source document, insert your cursor in front of the first paragraph in the topic.
 - b. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Insert TopicAlias Marker**.
 - c. In the **Topic Alias** field, specify the following topic ID for the topic:
`IDH_CreatingYourFirstContextSensitiveHelpTopicWord`
 - d. Click **OK**.
 - e. Save the Microsoft Word source document.
 - f. On the **Project** menu, select the **Microsoft HTML Help - Exploring ePublisher** target next to **Active Target**.
 - g. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.
 - h. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - i. In the Exploring ePublisher folder, open the Exploring ePublisher.h mapping file in Notepad.
 - j. Verify that the `IDH_CreatingYourFirstContextSensitiveHelpTopicWord` topic ID is listed in the Exploring ePublisher.h mapping file.

Exploring Additional ePublisher Capabilities

The sample Exploring ePublisher source documents and Stationery provide only a small sample of some of the many capabilities ePublisher provides.

You can view additional multimedia recordings on the WebWorks Web site that illustrate a wide range of other ePublisher capabilities, such as producing Eclipse Help, Wiki markup, PDFs, and Dynamic HTML Web site output, how you can use ePublisher to precisely customize the look and feel of your generated output to meet corporate and branding requirements, and more.

See the full list of Exploring ePublisher videos at:
www.webworks.com/Resources/Video_Library.

Customizing Your ePublisher Workspace

By default, the ePublisher user interface comes preset with certain toolbar icons and window settings. ePublisher gives you extensive control over the appearance of the user interface by allowing you to customize the display of windows and toolbars.

When you open ePublisher for the first time, Document Manager and Output Explorer are docked and the Log Window is undocked. When a window is undocked, it displays as a tab in the sidebar, and it will auto-hide unless you hover over the tab in the sidebar. When you hover over an undocked window, the window displays.

You can customize the display of windows in the user interface to suit your needs. In ePublisher, you can move Document Manager, Output Explorer, and the Log Window to different locations within the user interface or make them into floating windows. When you dock a window, it becomes stationary within the user interface and is always visible.

You can rearrange docked windows by moving the window to a new location within the user interface. For example, you can move the Output Explorer into a new window pane next to the Start page. However, the Start page cannot be moved. The Start page serves as the central point from which all the windows are arranged. To move a docked window within the user interface, click on the title bar of the window and then drag the window to a new location. To undock a window, click on the pin icon in the upper right corner of the window.

In addition to rearranging docked windows, you can add, remove, customize, or create buttons on tool bars. You can also create your own custom toolbars. By customizing your toolbars and buttons, you can create a workspace that fits your preferences and work style.

Whenever you make changes to the user interface by moving windows, changing window dock settings, or customizing toolbars, the changes take effect for each subsequent project you create or open. For example, if you dock Document Manager, Output Explorer, and the Log Window and add customized buttons to the toolbar, these settings will become the default settings for each project you open.

Specifying General ePublisher Preferences

You use the **General** tab of the Preferences window to specify ePublisher preferences, such as the number of recent projects to display on the Start page, whether to automatically scan source documents when you add them to Document Manager, and where to store user-created formats. You can also reset the user interface toolbar and window dock positions.

To specify general ePublisher preferences

1. On the **Edit** menu, click **Preferences**.
2. Specify preferences for each setting. For more information about settings and options, click **Help**.

Preparing Adobe FrameMaker Source Documents

If you want to implement online content features in your generated output, you need to prepare your Adobe FrameMaker source documents for output generation. This section explains how to prepare your Adobe FrameMaker source documents. This section assumes that you use Adobe FrameMaker templates prepared by a Stationery designer. Using Adobe FrameMaker templates ensures that content in your source documents is formatted consistently and can be used effectively by ePublisher to generate output. For more information about preparing Adobe FrameMaker templates, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Checklist: Preparing FrameMaker Source Documents

Use the following checklist to help you prepare your Adobe FrameMaker source documents.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task	For more information, see...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Review the online features you can implement and verify which online features your Stationery supports.	"Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker" on page 93
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. Obtain your latest templates and apply the templates to your source documents.	"Obtaining and Applying the Latest Adobe FrameMaker Template" on page 99
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. Review any tables in your source documents and prepare your tables for output generation as needed.	"Working with Tables in FrameMaker" on page 105
<input type="checkbox"/>	4. Review any images in your source documents and prepare your images for output generation as needed.	"Working with Images in FrameMaker" on page 107
<input type="checkbox"/>	5. If you want to include an index , prepare your source files for index generation.	"Creating Index Entries in FrameMaker" on page 121

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task	For more information, see...
<input type="checkbox"/>	6. If you want to use variables , insert variables in your source documents.	"Using Variables in FrameMaker" on page 123
<input type="checkbox"/>	7. If you want to use conditions , apply conditions to content in your source documents.	"Using Conditions in FrameMaker" on page 127
<input type="checkbox"/>	8. If you want to specify file names for output files , insert Filename markers in your source documents.	"Specifying Output File Names in FrameMaker" on page 133
<input type="checkbox"/>	9. If you want to create context-sensitive help , insert TopicAlias markers in your source documents.	"Creating Context-Sensitive Help in FrameMaker" on page 134
<input type="checkbox"/>	10. If you want to create popup windows , insert hyperlinks and then insert Popup markers or apply Popup paragraph formats to content in your source documents.	"Creating Popup Windows in FrameMaker" on page 139
<input type="checkbox"/>	11. If you want to create expand/collapse sections , apply the Expand/Collapse paragraph formats and insert DropDownEnd markers in your source documents.	"Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in FrameMaker" on page 146
<input type="checkbox"/>	12. If you want to create related topics , apply the Related Topics paragraph format to content in your source documents.	"Creating Related Topics in FrameMaker" on page 148
<input type="checkbox"/>	13. If you want to specify categories or labels for Wiki pages , insert WikiCategory markers in your source documents.	"Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in FrameMaker" on page 151
<input type="checkbox"/>	14. If you want to create See Also links , insert SeeAlso markers in your source documents.	"Creating See Also Links in FrameMaker" on page 152
<input type="checkbox"/>	15. If you want to create meta tag keywords for pages , insert Keywords markers in your source documents.	"Creating Meta Tag Keywords in FrameMaker" on page 156
<input type="checkbox"/>	16. If you want to use multiple page designs , insert PageStyle markers in your source documents.	"Assigning Custom Page Styles in FrameMaker" on page 158
<input type="checkbox"/>	17. If you want to create What's This Help , also known as field-level help, insert WhatIsThisID markers in your source documents.	"Creating What's This (Field-Level) Help in FrameMaker" on page 160

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task	For more information, see...
<input type="checkbox"/>	18. If you want to open certain topics in a custom window , insert WindowType markers in your source documents.	"Opening Topics in Custom Windows in FrameMaker" on page 162
<input type="checkbox"/>	19. If you want to customize the table of contents icons for specific topics , insert TOCIcon markers in your source documents.	"Customizing Table of Contents Icons in FrameMaker" on page 163
<input type="checkbox"/>	20. If you want to specify context plug-ins for Eclipse help systems , insert Context Plugin markers in your source documents.	"Specifying Context Plug-ins in FrameMaker" on page 167
<input type="checkbox"/>	21. If you want to create accessible online content , insert the appropriate markers and apply the appropriate paragraph formats and character formats to images, tables, abbreviations, acronyms, and citations in your source documents.	"Creating Accessible Online Content in FrameMaker" on page 169

Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker

Implement online features in your output by preparing your Adobe FrameMaker source documents with custom marker types, paragraph formats, and character formats defined by the Stationery designer for your Stationery. These markers and styles define the presentation and behavior of your online content. For example, markers can define the name of the file generated for a topic. Formats can define how content displays online.

Understanding Custom Marker Types in FrameMaker

ePublisher projects use the custom marker types to implement online features when generating output. Before you begin using custom marker types, talk to the Stationery designer and verify which online features your Stationery supports. Your Stationery only recognizes the custom marker types defined by the Stationery designer in your Stationery. If you try to implement online features using custom marker types not supported in your Stationery, ePublisher does not recognize these items when generating output. ePublisher correctly converts all standard Adobe FrameMaker marker types. In addition, ePublisher also supports several custom marker types you can use to implement online features in your generated output.

When the Stationery designer creates the Stationery, the Stationery designer can use the default name for a custom marker type or the Stationery designer can use a different name for the customer marker type. The following table lists the default names of custom marker types used to implement online features. Always verify with the Stationery designer the names of the custom marker types you should use when implementing online features before you use these items in your source documents.

Marker Type	Description
AbbreviationTitle marker type	Specifies abbreviation alternate text for browsers to display for abbreviations such as SS# when a user hovers over the abbreviation in output. Screen readers also can read the abbreviation alternate text. Used in combination with the Abbreviation character format. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in FrameMaker” on page 187.
AcronymTitle marker type	Specifies acronym alternate text for browsers to display for acronyms such as HTML when a user hovers over the acronym in output. Screen readers can also read the acronym alternate text. Used in combination with the Acronym character format. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Acronyms in FrameMaker” on page 189.
Citation marker type	Specifies the source of a quote using a fully qualified Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) when a user hovers over the quote in output. Screen readers can also read the URI for the quote. Used in combination with the Citation character format. For more information, see “Providing Citations for Quotes in FrameMaker” on page 190.
Context Plugin marker type	Specifies context plug-ins for Eclipse help systems. Other Eclipse plug-ins can use the context plug-in IDs to call the Eclipse help system. For more information, see “Specifying Context Plug-ins in FrameMaker” on page 167.
DropDownEnd marker type	Marks the end of an expand/collapse section. Used in conjunction with an Expand/Collapse paragraph format. For more information, see “Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in FrameMaker” on page 146.
Filename marker type	Specifies the name of an output file for a page or an image. For more information, see “Specifying Output File Names in FrameMaker” on page 133.
GraphicScale marker type	Specifies a percentage to use to resize an image, such as 50 or 75 percent, in generated output. For more information, see “Assigning Image Scales in FrameMaker” on page 116.
GraphicStyle marker type	Specifies the name of a image style defined in a project to apply to an image. This marker type is an internal marker type that is not displayed in Stationery Designer. You cannot create a marker type with a different name and assign it this functionality. For more information, see “Assigning Image Styles in FrameMaker” on page 119.
Hypertext marker type	Specifies a link using the <code>newlink</code> and <code>gotolink</code> commands in Adobe FrameMaker. This marker type is a default Adobe FrameMaker marker type ePublisher automatically maps.

Marker Type	Description
ImageAltText marker type	Specifies alternate text for an image. This text is added to the <code>alt</code> attribute of the <code>img</code> tag in the output. Screen readers use this text when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Images in FrameMaker” on page 173.
ImageAreaAltText marker type	Specifies alternate text for clickable regions in an image map. This text is added to the <code>alt</code> attribute of the <code>img</code> tag in the output. Screen readers use this text when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Image Maps in FrameMaker” on page 175.
ImageLongDescByRef marker type	Specifies the path to the file that contains the long description for an image. This text is added to the <code>longdesc</code> attribute of the <code>img</code> tag in the output. Screen readers read this description when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Using Text in External Files to Assign Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker” on page 181.
ImageLongDescNotReq marker type	Specifies that a long description is not required for an image, which bypasses this accessibility check for the image when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Excluding Images from Accessibility Report Checks in FrameMaker” on page 183.
ImageLongDescText marker type	Specifies the long description for an image. This text is added to the <code>longdesc</code> attribute of the <code>img</code> tag in the output. Screen readers read this description when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker” on page 176.
Keywords marker type	Specifies the keywords to include in the <code>meta</code> tag for the topic. The <code>meta</code> tag improves searchability on the Web. For more information, see “Creating Meta Tag Keywords in FrameMaker” on page 156.
PageStyle marker type	Specifies the name of a page style defined in the project to apply to a topic. This marker type is an internal marker type that is not displayed in Stationery Designer. You cannot create a marker type with a different name and assign it this functionality. For more information, see “Assigning Custom Page Styles in FrameMaker” on page 158.
<u>PassThrough</u>	Specifies that ePublisher place the contents of the marker directly into the generated output without processing the content in any way. For example, you could use a <u>PassThrough</u> marker if you wanted to embed HTML code within your generated output.
Popup marker type	Specifies the start of the content to include in a popup window. The content is displayed in a popup window when you hover over the link. When you click the link in some output formats, the topic where the popup text is stored, such as the glossary, is displayed. For more information, see “Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker” on page 144.
PopupEnd marker type	Marks the end of the content to include in a popup window. For more information, see “Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker” on page 144.

Marker Type	Description
PopupOnly marker type	Specifies the start of the content to include in only a popup window. Browsers display the content in a popup window when you hover over or click the link. For more information, see “Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker” on page 144.
RubiComposite marker type	No longer supported.
SeeAlsoKeyword marker type	Specifies an internal identifier for a topic. SeeAlsoLink markers in other topics can list this identifier to create a link to this topic. Used in conjunction with a See Also paragraph format or character format. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in FrameMaker” on page 152.
SeeAlsoLink marker type	Identifies an internal identifier from another topic to include in the list of See Also links in this topic. Used in conjunction with a See Also paragraph format or character format. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in FrameMaker” on page 152.
SeeAlsoLinkDisplayType marker type	Specifies whether to display the target topics on a popup menu or in a window. By default, the links are displayed in the Topics Found window. To display a popup menu, set the value to <code>menu</code> . This marker type is supported only in HTML Help. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in FrameMaker” on page 152.
SeeAlsoLinkWindow-Type marker type	Specifies the name of the window defined in the <code>.hhp</code> file, such as <code>TriPane</code> or <code>Main</code> , that the topic opens in when the user clicks the link. This marker type is supported only in HTML Help. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in FrameMaker” on page 152.
TableStyle marker type	Specifies the name of a table style defined in the project to apply to a table in versions of Microsoft Word that did not support table styles. This marker type is an internal marker type that is not displayed in Stationery Designer. This marker type is supported only for Microsoft Word documents. You cannot create a marker type with a different name and assign it this functionality. For more information, see “Applying Table Styles in Word” on page 209.
TableSummary marker type	Specifies an alternate text summary for a table, which is used when you create accessible content. This text is added to the <code>summary</code> attribute of the <code>table</code> tag in the output. Screen readers read this description when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text (Summaries) to Tables in FrameMaker” on page 185.
TableSummaryNotReq marker type	Specifies that a summary is not required for a table, which bypasses this accessibility check for that table. For more information, see “Excluding Tables from Accessibility Report Checks in FrameMaker” on page 186.
TOCIconHTMLHelp marker type	Identifies the image to use as the table of contents icon for a topic in the HTML Help output format. For more information, see “Customizing Table of Contents Icons in FrameMaker” on page 163.
TOCIconJavaHelp marker type	Identifies the image to use as the table of contents icon for a topic in the Sun JavaHelp output format. For more information, see “Customizing Table of Contents Icons in FrameMaker” on page 163.

Marker Type	Description
TOCIconOracleHelp marker type	Identifies the image to use as the table of contents icon for a topic in the Oracle Help output format. For more information, see “Customizing Table of Contents Icons in FrameMaker” on page 163.
TOCIconWWHelp marker type	Identifies the image to use as the table of contents icon for a topic in the WebWorks Help output format. For more information, see “Customizing Table of Contents Icons in FrameMaker” on page 163.
TopicAlias marker type	Specifies an internal identifier for a topic that can be used to create a context-sensitive link to that topic. For more information, see “Creating Context-Sensitive Help in FrameMaker” on page 134.
TopicDescription marker type	Specifies a topic description for a context-sensitive help topic in Eclipse help systems. For more information, see “Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in FrameMaker” on page 137.
WhatIsThisID marker type	Identifies a What's This help internal identifier for creating context-sensitive What's This field-level help for Microsoft HTML Help. For more information, see “Creating What's This (Field-Level) Help in FrameMaker” on page 160.
WikiCategory marker type	Specifies the Wiki category or label you want to assign to a topic when generating Wiki output. For more information, see “Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in FrameMaker” on page 151.
WindowType marker type	Specifies the name of the window defined in the Help project that the topic should be displayed in. In Microsoft HTML Help, the window names are defined in the .hhp file. This marker type is supported in Microsoft HTML Help and Oracle Help. For more information, see “Opening Topics in Custom Windows in FrameMaker” on page 162.

Understanding Paragraph and Character Formats in FrameMaker

ePublisher projects use the paragraph formats and character formats defined by the Stationery designer to implement online features when generating output. Before you begin using paragraph formats and character formats to implement online features, talk to the Stationery designer and verify which online features your Stationery supports. Your Stationery only recognizes the paragraph formats and character formats defined by the Stationery designer in your Stationery. If you try to implement online features using paragraph formats and character formats not supported in your Stationery, ePublisher does not recognize these items when generating output.

When the Stationery designer creates the Stationery, the Stationery designer specifies the names of paragraph format and character formats used to implement an online feature. Consult with the Stationery designer to obtain the names of the paragraph formats and character formats defined by the Stationery designer to support each online feature you want to implement.

The following table lists the default names of paragraph formats and character formats used to implement online features. Always verify with the Stationery designer the names of the paragraph formats and character formats you should use when implementing online features before you use these items in your source documents.

Format	Description
AbbreviationTitle character format	Specifies abbreviation alternate text for browsers to display for abbreviations such as SS# when a user hovers over the abbreviation in output. Screen readers also can read the abbreviation alternate text. Used in combination with the AbbreviationTitle marker type. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in FrameMaker” on page 187.
AcronymTitle character format	Specifies acronym alternate text for browsers to display for acronyms such as HTML when a user hovers over the acronym in output. Screen readers can also read the acronym alternate text. Used in combination with the AcronymTitle marker type. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Acronyms in FrameMaker” on page 189.
Citation character format	Specifies the source of a quote using a fully qualified Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) when a user hovers over the quote in output. Screen readers can also read the URI for the quote. Used in combination with the Citation marker type. For more information, see “Providing Citations for Quotes in FrameMaker” on page 190.
Expand/Collapse paragraph format	Specifies the content you want to include in an expand/collapse section. Used in conjunction with a DropDownEnd marker type. For more information, see “Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in FrameMaker” on page 146.
Popup paragraph format	Specifies the popup content to display in both a popup window and in a standard help topic. Applied to the first paragraph of popup content. For more information, see “Using Paragraph Formats to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker” on page 145.
Popup Append paragraph format	Specifies the popup content to display in a popup window and in a standard help topic. Applied to additional popup paragraphs when you have more than one paragraph of popup content. For more information, see “Using Paragraph Formats to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker” on page 145.
Popup Only paragraph format	Specifies the popup content to display in only a popup window. Applied to the first paragraph of popup content. For more information, see “Using Paragraph Formats to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker” on page 145.

Format	Description
Popup Only Append paragraph format	Specifies the popup content to display in only a popup window. Applied to additional popup paragraphs when you have more than one paragraph of popup content. For more information, see “Using Paragraph Formats to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker” on page 145.
Related Topic paragraph format	Specifies related topics links. For more information, see “Creating Related Topics in FrameMaker” on page 148.
See Also character format	Specifies the text you want to include in a See Also button. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in FrameMaker” on page 152.
See Also paragraph format	Specifies the text you want to include in a See Also inline text link. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in FrameMaker” on page 152.

Obtaining and Applying the Latest Adobe FrameMaker Template

An efficient, effective, and consistent ePublisher online content generation process relies upon the use of templates. Templates define marker types and paragraph, character, and table formats. Templates may also contain standard conditions, variables, and cross-reference definitions that you can use when creating and working with source documents used to generate online content. Templates help control the look and feel of source documents and generated output across multiple writers, multiple projects, and multiple types of generated output.

The ePublisher content generation process assumes that you use marker types and paragraph, character and table formats defined in an Adobe FrameMaker template prepared by a Stationery designer as you create content and format your source documents. Using Adobe FrameMaker templates and the marker types and paragraph, character, and table formats and other layout formats and characteristics defined in templates ensures that you format content in your source documents consistently and also ensures ePublisher can use your source documents effectively to generate output.

If your source documents do not use templates or do not use the same marker types, formats, and standards defined in your Stationery by the Stationery designer, your generated output may not conform to the styles and standards defined by the Stationery designer for output. You may also not be able to implement some online features if you do not use the correct templates or the correct marker types and formats defined in the templates.

As a part of preparing your Adobe FrameMaker source documents for output generation, ensure your source documents use the correct Adobe FrameMaker templates from the Stationery designer and you have applied all paragraph, character, and table formats specified in the template correctly. For more information about obtaining and applying the correct Adobe FrameMaker templates for your project, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Importing Custom Marker Types in FrameMaker

Typically the Stationery designer defines custom marker types supported in your ePublisher Stationery in an Adobe FrameMaker template. You then import the custom marker types defined in an Adobe FrameMaker template into your Adobe FrameMaker source documents by importing document properties from the Adobe FrameMaker template. This procedure explains how to import custom marker types from an Adobe FrameMaker template. For more information about creating custom marker types, see “Creating Custom Marker Types in FrameMaker” on page 100.

The following procedure provides an example of how to import custom marker types into Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for importing custom marker types in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To import custom marker types from an Adobe FrameMaker template into your source documents

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, on the **File** menu, click **Import > Formats**.
2. In the **Import from Document** field, select the Adobe FrameMaker template that contains the custom marker types you want to import from the list.
3. In the **Import and Update** field, select only the **Document Properties** check box.
4. Click **Import**.
5. Click **OK** to confirm the operation.

Creating Custom Marker Types in FrameMaker

Typically you should not need to create a custom marker type in an Adobe FrameMaker source document. If you want to use a custom marker type to implement an online feature, use the custom marker type provided in the Adobe FrameMaker template you use for your source documents. If you do not see a custom marker type you want to use to implement an online feature in the Adobe FrameMaker template, verify with the Stationery designer that your Stationery supports the custom marker type before you insert and use the custom marker in a source document.

Occasionally your Stationery may support a custom marker type that is not defined in the Adobe FrameMaker template you use with your source documents. In this situation, first confirm with the Stationery designer that your Stationery supports the custom marker type. After confirming your project supports the custom marker type, you can create the custom marker type in your Adobe FrameMaker source document.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create custom marker types in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating custom marker types in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create a custom marker type in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, on the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
2. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Edit** from the drop-down list.
3. Type *CustomMarkerTypeName* to create a custom marker type, where *CustomMarkerTypeName* is the name of the custom marker type you want to create.

Note: The custom marker type name you type must match the name of the custom marker type supported in your ePublisher Stationery. If you specify a name for the custom marker type that is different than the name of the custom marker type supported in your ePublisher Stationery, ePublisher will not be able to recognize and use the custom marker type when generating output.

4. Click **Add**.
5. Click **OK** to confirm the operation.
6. Click **Done**. Adobe FrameMaker displays the custom marker type you created in the Marker window in the **Marker Type** field.

Creating a Passthrough Marker in FrameMaker

A passthrough marker is a marker that allows you to insert content that you do not want ePublisher to process when you generate output. For example, if you have embedded multimedia files in your source documents, such as Audio Video Interleave files (.avi) or Adobe Software Flash files (.swf), you can insert a passthrough marker with a value that is set to the HTML code that you do not want ePublisher to process.

The following example shows .avi code to which you could insert using a passthrough marker.

```
<embed src="sample.avi" width="400"
height="300" pluginspage="">
</embed>
```

To create a passthrough marker in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In Adobe FrameMaker, on the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
2. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Passthrough** from the drop-down list.

3. *If the Passthrough marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
4. In the **Marker Text** field, type the html code that you would like to not be processed by ePublisher such as the Flash embed code indicated in the previous topic.
5. Click **New Marker**.
6. Save your source document.
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the appropriate result for your embedded html code. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Cross-References and Links in FrameMaker

When you generate output, ePublisher automatically converts all cross-references in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents to links. Typically Stationery designers specify in Stationery how cross-references should display in generated output. For example, Stationery designers typically specify that cross-references that contain page numbers in source documents display without page numbers in generated output, as page numbers are out of context in online output. If you have target setting permissions, you can also customize the cross-reference formats you want to use when you generate output. For more information about customizing cross-reference settings, see “Customizing Cross-Reference Settings in Projects” on page 395.

Including cross-references in Adobe FrameMaker source documents is typically the easiest way to produce links in online content. However, in some cases you may not be able to achieve the effect you want by creating links using cross-references. In these cases, you can insert native Adobe FrameMaker Hypertext markers that use the `gotolink` and `message` URL hypertext commands in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents and use the Hypertext markers to create the links you want.

To create a link using a cross-reference or Hypertext markers in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. *If you want to create a link using a cross-reference*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, select the text for which you want to create a link.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Cross-Reference**.
 - c. In the **Document** field, select the document that contains the content to which you want to link.
 - d. In the **Paragraph Tags** field, select the paragraph tag used for the content to which you want to link.
 - e. In the **Paragraphs** field, select the paragraph to which you want to link.
 - f. In the **Format** field, select the appropriate format for the link. For example, if you are creating a link to a glossary term, select a glossary term cross-reference format.
 - g. Click **Replace**.

2. *If you want to create a link using hypertext markers*, complete the following steps:

- a. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, insert your cursor in front of the link target text.
- b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
- c. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Hypertext** from the list.
- d. In the **Marker Text** field, type `newlink linkname` or `newlink filename:linkname`, where *linkname* is the name of the named destination for the link, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document. To make maintenance easy, create short link names that use alphanumeric, lowercase characters.
- e. Click **New Marker**.
- f. Insert your cursor in front of the word or phrase for which you want to create a link.
- a. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
- b. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Hypertext** from the list.
- c. In the **Marker Text** field, type `gotolink linkname` or `gotolink filename:linkname`, where *linkname* is the name of the named destination you created for the link, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document.
- d. Click **New Marker**.
- e. Select the word or phrase for which you want to create a link. The selected area must contain the both text and the hypertext marker you created.
- f. Apply a link character format to the word or phrase. Applying a link character format to the word or phrase makes the link appear active, or clickable, in the generated output. If you do not know which character format to use for links, consult the Stationery designer.

3. *If you want to create a link to a PDF file*, complete the following steps:

- a. In the FrameMaker menu, go to **Special > Hypertext**
- b. From the Command dropdown menu, chose **Message Client**
- c. In the Syntax text box, type `message openfile relative_path` where *relative_path* is the relative directory where you have your PDF located and then you add `example.pdf` to this path

4. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.

Working with Tables in FrameMaker

This section explains how to prepare tables in source documents for output generation. Obtain your latest templates and apply the latest table formats from the template to tables in your source documents. If your tables do not have header rows, create a header row for each table. If your tables do not have footer rows, create a footer row for each table.

Applying Table Formats in FrameMaker

Table formats define the appearance of your tables, and ePublisher uses table formats to define the appearance of tables in generated output. When you work with tables in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents, ensure you apply the correct table formats to your tables. The Stationery designer defines the table formats you can use in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents in the Adobe FrameMaker templates you associate with your Adobe FrameMaker source documents. If you want to specify a different table format for sets of tables in your generated output, first ensure the different table format you want to apply is available in your Adobe FrameMaker source document. Then apply the different table format to tables in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents as appropriate.

For example, you may have a small set of tables that contain information about a specific component in a product. If you decide you want to modify the appearance of these tables in your generated output by specifying that the tables associated with this component display with a yellow background in your generated output, apply a table format available in your Adobe FrameMaker source document that the Stationery designer created to meet this requirement. When you generate output, the Stationery designed by the Stationery designer specifies that any tables created with a table format configured to display tables with a yellow background display in your output with a yellow background.

Creating Table Header Rows in FrameMaker

Most tables in Adobe FrameMaker source documents include header rows, because by default Adobe FrameMaker allows you to quickly and easily specify the number of header rows in a table when you create a table. However, if your tables do not have header rows, consider adding table header rows to tables in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents. Using table header rows allows you to more tightly control the appearance of tables when you generate output. For example, if you use header rows, you can specify one appearance for header rows in your generated output, and a difference appearance for body rows in your generated output.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create table header rows in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating table header rows in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create a table header row in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the table for which you want to create a table header row.
2. Insert your cursor in the top row of the table.
3. On the **Table** menu, click **Add Rows or Columns**.
4. Click **Add 1 Row**.
5. Select **To Heading** from the list.
6. Click **Add**. Adobe FrameMaker inserts a header row into the table.
7. Type the text for the header row into the table.
8. Delete any existing rows in the text that contain the text you typed into the new table header row as needed.

Creating Table Footer Rows in FrameMaker

Most tables in Adobe FrameMaker source documents include footer rows, because by default Adobe FrameMaker allows you to quickly and easily specify the number of footer rows in a table when you create a table. However, if your tables do not have footer rows, consider creating footer rows in your source documents in order to quickly and easily specify the appearance that you want for your table footer rows in your generated output. For example, if you use footer rows in conjunction with header rows, you can specify one appearance for footer rows in your generated output, and then different appearances for header rows and table body rows in your generated output.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create table footer rows in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating table footer rows in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create a table with a footer row in Adobe FrameMaker

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the table for which you want to create a table footer row.
2. Insert your cursor in the bottom row of the table.
3. On the **Table** menu, click **Add Rows or Columns**.
4. Click **Add 1 Row**.
5. Select **To Footing** from the list.
6. Click **Add**. Adobe FrameMaker inserts a footer row into the table.

Working with Images in FrameMaker

Many writers include images when producing documents using Adobe FrameMaker. Most writers typically insert images into Adobe FrameMaker source documents in one of the following ways:

- Copying images directly into in Adobe FrameMaker source documents, also known as embedding images
- Importing images by reference, which creates a link to the source image in the Adobe FrameMaker source documents

If you copy an image into an Adobe FrameMaker source document, Adobe FrameMaker copies, or embeds, the image in the Adobe FrameMaker source document, and the image becomes a part of the document.

If you import an image by reference in Adobe FrameMaker source documents, Adobe FrameMaker creates a link to the image and displays the image in the Adobe FrameMaker source document. The link becomes a part of the document, but the actual image file is not inserted into the document, although the actual image files is displayed in the document. If you update the image file referenced by the link, Adobe FrameMaker displays the updated image referenced by the link automatically.

There are benefits and drawbacks to copying images directly into Adobe FrameMaker source documents and importing images by reference.

For example, if you copy images into Adobe FrameMaker source documents, you do not have worry about breaking the reference, or link, between the Adobe FrameMaker source documents and the image files. If you import the image by reference into Adobe FrameMaker source documents, you must ensure that you keep the same file structure for the image files in order to not break the references, or links, between the Adobe FrameMaker source document and the image file.

However, importing images by reference in Adobe FrameMaker source documents, rather than copying images into the source documents, provides the following benefits:

- You can update image files without recopying the image into your Adobe FrameMaker source documents.
- If you have one image used in multiple places, you can update the image in one place, rather than recopying the image into multiple places.
- You can manage your documentation files and image files separately, which makes organizing images easier.
- Source documents with images imported by reference in Adobe FrameMaker are smaller than source documents with copied images.

When you work with Adobe FrameMaker source documents that you will use to generate output, ensure you follow the guidelines specified by the Stationery designer for the following items:

- Method used to insert images
- Correct DPI to use for inserted images
- Correct image file format to use for inserted images

For more information about image considerations, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Inserting Images in FrameMaker

Before you insert images into Adobe FrameMaker source documents you plan to use to generate output, review image considerations. For more information, see “Working with Images in FrameMaker” on page 107.

When you insert images into Adobe FrameMaker source documents, insert the image into an anchored frame. The anchored frame allows you to specify the image alignment and position. For more information about anchored frame options, see the Adobe FrameMaker documentation.

The following procedure provides an example of how to use an anchored frame to insert an image by reference in an unstructured Adobe FrameMaker source document using Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for inserting an image by reference in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To insert an image in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, insert your cursor on a blank line below the paragraph where you want to insert your image.

Note: Inserting an image on a blank line allows you to customize the paragraph tag applied to the line. Many Adobe FrameMaker templates have a special paragraph tag for you to use when you insert graphics. This paragraph tag specifies the space above and below the paragraph and the alignment of the inserted image.

2. Apply the appropriate paragraph format for images to the blank anchored frame line. For more information about the correct paragraph format to use for image anchored frame lines, consult with the Stationery designer.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Anchored Frame**.

4. Specify the position, alignment, and size of the anchored frame, and then click **New Frame**. Adobe FrameMaker inserts an empty anchored frame into the source document.

For more information about anchored frame options, see the Adobe FrameMaker documentation.

5. On the **File** menu, click **Import > File**.
6. Click **OK** to continue.
7. Browse to the location of the file you want to import and select the file.
8. Click **Import by Reference**, and then click **Import**.
9. Specify the size of the graphic.

Note: Most writers do not select the **Fit in Selected Rectangle** option. This option resizes the image to fit inside the selected anchor or graphic frame. When you select this option, Adobe FrameMaker sets the DPI to unknown, and the imported image is usually distorted.

- *If you want to use the DPI from the graphic*, do not change the setting in the **Custom dpi** field. The number in the **Custom dpi** field is the DPI of the imported graphic.
- *If you want to change the size of the graphic*, click the button for the dpi setting you want to specify.

Note: If you do not use the same DPI setting as the source image, the image in your output may be distorted.

10. Click **Set**. Adobe FrameMaker imports the image into the source document.
11. *If you have white space between the graphic and the anchored frame*, you can shrink-wrap the frame by completing the following steps:

Shrinking-wrapping an anchored frame removes the white space between the graphic and the anchored frame and changes the anchoring position of the frame to **At Insertion Point** and displays the frame 0 points above the baseline of the text. If the anchored frame is on the same line as the text, the 0 point baseline can cause the image to cover the text of the preceding lines. For this reason, many writers prefer to insert images on a separate line below the text. The image may also be distorted if you don't shrink wrap the image.

- a. Click the anchored frame or the image in the anchored frame.
- b. Press **ESC+M+P**. Adobe FrameMaker shrinks or expands the anchored frame to fit the contents of the anchored frame and positions the anchored frame according to the paragraph pagination settings.

After you insert an image, you can assign alternate text or a long description to the image. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in FrameMaker” on page 172 and “Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker” on page 176.

Creating Image Links in FrameMaker

You can create image links that allow users who click the image to link to content in another location. For example, if you include your company logo in a source document, you can define a link for the logo so that when users click the logo, they link to your company home page.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create an image link in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating an image link in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create an image link in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, insert the image for which you want to create an image link. For more information, see “Inserting Images in FrameMaker” on page 108.
2. *If you want to link to content in a different location in your source document*, create a named destination for the link by completing the following steps:

Note: You do not need to perform these steps if you want to link to content on a Web site.

- a. Locate the link target in your source document.
- b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
- c. In the **Marker Type** field, click **Hypertext**.
- d. In the **Marker Text** field, newlink *linkname* or newlink *filename:linkname*, where *linkname* is the name of the named destination for the link, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document.

Note: To make maintenance easy, create short link names that use alphanumeric, lowercase characters.

- e. Click **New Marker**.

3. In the anchored frame that contains the image for which you want to create a link, draw a text frame that covers the entire clickable region by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Tools** to display the graphic tools palette.
 - b. Click the **Text Frame** icon.
 - c. Drag the cursor across the image to draw a text frame over the image.
 - d. In the Create New Text Frame window, in the **Number** field, type 1, and then click **Set**.
 - e. Click outside of the image, and then insert your cursor in the text frame.
4. In the text frame, insert a Hypertext marker that specifies the destination of the link by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - b. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Hypertext** from the list.
 - c. *If you want link to content in a different location in your source document*, use the named destination link you created in step 2. In the **Marker Text** field, type `gotolink linkname` or `gotolink filename:linkname`, where *linkname* is the name of a link target you created previously, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document.
 - d. *If you want to link to a page on a Web site*, in the **Marker Field**, type `message URL web address`, where *web address* is the URL of the web page you want to open when users click the image.

Note: For more information about using the `gotolink` and `message URL` commands, see the Adobe FrameMaker documentation.
 - e. Click **New Marker**.
5. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
6. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
7. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image link using the link information you specified on the page by clicking on the image. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Clickable Regions for Image Maps in FrameMaker

An image map can be a single image separated with clickable regions or a composite image made up of multiple images grouped together, yet still separated with clickable regions. For example, you could create an image of the countries of Europe and then define an image map for the image that allows users to link to a topic about each country when they click on an area of the image. User can click France to see information about France, Italy to see information about Italy, and so on.

When you define an image map, you can also define alternate text for each clickable region. For example, you might define alternate text for the Italy region as “Click here for more information about Italy.” For more information about assigning alternate text to image maps, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in FrameMaker” on page 172.

Creating Image Maps for Single Images in FrameMaker

You create image maps for single images in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using text frames and hyperlinks. In Adobe FrameMaker, a hyperlink consists of a link and a link target, or named destination. A **named destination** is a unique identifier for a location in the document.

You can also create an image map for a composite image in an Adobe FrameMaker source document. For more information about creating composite images, see “Creating Image Maps for Composite Images in FrameMaker” on page 114.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create an image map for a single image in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating an image map for a single image in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create an image map for a single image in an Adobe FrameMaker source document:

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, insert the image you want to use for your image map into an anchored frame. For more information, see “Inserting Images in FrameMaker” on page 108.
2. *If you want to link to content in a different location in your source document*, create a named destination for the link for each area of the image map by completing the following steps:

Note: You do not need to perform these steps if you want to link to content on a Web site.

- a. Locate the link target in your source document.
- b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
- c. In the **Marker Type** field, click **Hypertext**.
- d. In the **Marker Text** field, `newlink linkname` or `newlink filename:linkname`, where *linkname* is the name of the named destination for the link, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document.

Note: To make maintenance easy, create short link names that use alphanumeric, lowercase characters.

- e. Click **New Marker**.
3. In the anchored frame that contains the image for which you want to create an image map, draw a text frame that covers each region of the image where you want users to be able to click by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Tools** to display the graphic tools palette.
 - b. Click the **Text Frame** icon.
 - c. Drag the cursor over the portion of the image for which you want to create a clickable area.
 - d. In the Create New Text Frame window, in the **Number** field, type 1, and then click **Set**.

4. In the text frame, insert a Hypertext marker that specifies the destination for the clickable region by completing the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor into the text frame.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **New Marker**.
 - c. *If you want to link to content in a different location in your source document*, use a named destination link you created in step 2. In the **Marker Text** field, type `gotolink linkname` or `gotolink filename:linkname`, where *linkname* is the name of a link target you created previously, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document.
 - d. *If you want to link to a page on a Web site*, in the **Marker Text** field, type `message URL web address`, where *web address* is the URL of the web page you want to open when users click the image.

Note: For more information about using these commands, see the Adobe FrameMaker documentation.
 - e. Click **New Marker**.
5. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
6. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
7. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image map using the link information you specified by clicking on the page that contains the image map and then clicking on each area of the image where you created a link. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Image Maps for Composite Images in FrameMaker

You can create composite images by inserting the composite images into an anchored frame and then inserting text frames that contain the link you want users to go to when they click an area of a composite image.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create image maps for composite images in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating image maps for composite images in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create an image map for a composite image in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, insert each image you want to use for your image map into an anchored frame. For more information, see “Inserting Images in FrameMaker” on page 108.
2. *If you want to link to content in a different location in your source document*, create a named destination for the link for each area of the image map by completing the following steps:

Note: You do not need to perform these steps if you want to link to content on a Web site.

- a. Locate the link target in your source document.
- b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
- c. In the **Marker Type** field, click **Hypertext**.
- d. In the **Marker Text** field, `newlink linkname` or `newlink filename:linkname`, where *linkname* is the name of the named destination for the link, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document.

Note: To make maintenance easy, create short link names that use alphanumeric, lowercase characters.

- e. Click **New Marker**.
3. In the anchored frame that contains the image for which you want to create an image map, draw a text frame that covers each region of the image where you want users to be able to click by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Tools** to display the graphic tools palette.
 - b. Click the **Text Frame** icon.
 - c. Drag the cursor over the portion of the image for which you want to create a clickable area.
 - d. In the Create New Text Frame window, in the **Number** field, type 1, and then click **Set**.

4. In each text frame, insert a Hypertext marker that specifies the destination for the clickable region by completing the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor into the text frame.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - c. *If you want to link to content in a different location in your source document*, use the named destination link you created in step 2. In the **Marker Text** field, type `gotolink linkname` or `gotolink filename:linkname`, where *linkname* is the name of a link target you created previously, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document.
 - d. *If you want to link to a page on a Web site*, in the **Marker Text** field, type `message URL web address`, where *web address* is the URL of the web page you want to open when users click the image.

Note: For more information about using these commands, see the Adobe FrameMaker documentation.
 - e. Click **New Marker**.
5. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
6. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
7. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image map using the link information you specified by clicking on the page that contains the image map and then clicking on each area of the image where you created a link. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Assigning Image Scales in FrameMaker

When ePublisher converts images inserted into your source documents, it can scale images to make them display larger or smaller in your generated output. By default, ePublisher uses the scaling factor applied to images as specified by the image format you apply to each image. For example, if you apply an image format to images and the Stationery designer defined the image format to scale images to 80% of their original size, all images that have this image format applied to them will be scaled to 80% in the generated output.

Typically, using the standard scaling factor specified in the image format is sufficient. Occasionally, however you may want to override the scaling factor for an individual image. For example, while most `.gif` images scale to 80%, you may have one large image that you want scaled to 60% in your generated output. You can manually override the standard scaling factor specified in your Stationery for a specific image by using the `GraphicScale` marker.

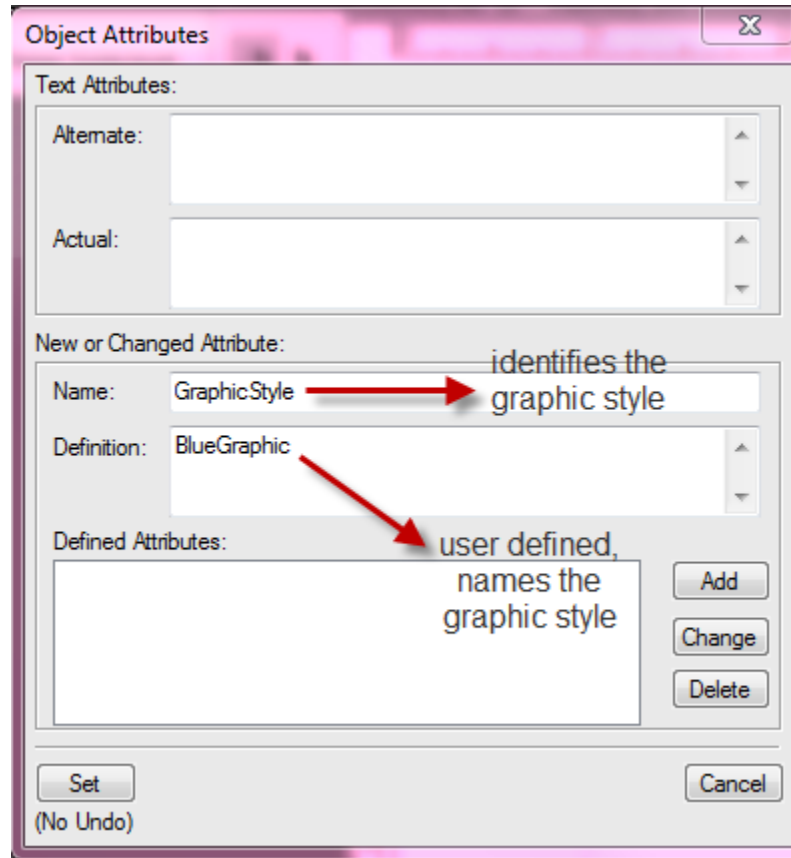
To assign a scale to a specific image, your Stationery and template must have the GraphicScale marker type configured. Your output format must also support scaling by image. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify image scaling for an image in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for specifying image scaling for an image in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify an image scale for an image in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the anchored frame for the image for which you want to specify image scaling.
2. Right-click on the image anchor. Make sure this is the entire anchor, not just the graphic itself

3. Click on **Object Properties** and then click **Object Attributes**. Identify the **GraphicScale** according to the box below. Assign the desired style name in the attribute value box.



4. Click **Add**, then **Set**, and then **Set**. Adobe FrameMaker may prompt you to approve the change as the operation cannot be undone
5. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
6. Scan this document in ePublisher so that the **GraphicScale** marker will show up under “Marker Styles”. This will configure the correct marker behavior for processing.
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image using the image scale you specified in the **GraphicScale** marker by clicking on the page that contains the image for which you specified image scaling. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Assigning Image Styles in FrameMaker

Typically you do not need to specify an image style for images when you generate output. By default, each image generated by ePublisher is associated with the default image style defined in the Stationery. However, if you want to change the image style of one image or a small set of images, you can specify the image style you want to use for an image in your source document using the GraphicStyle marker type.

For example, if you want to specify a yellow border around a set of screen shot images that illustrate a particular piece of product functionality, you can specify that each of the screen shots images in the set have a yellow border around them through the use of the GraphicStyle marker type.

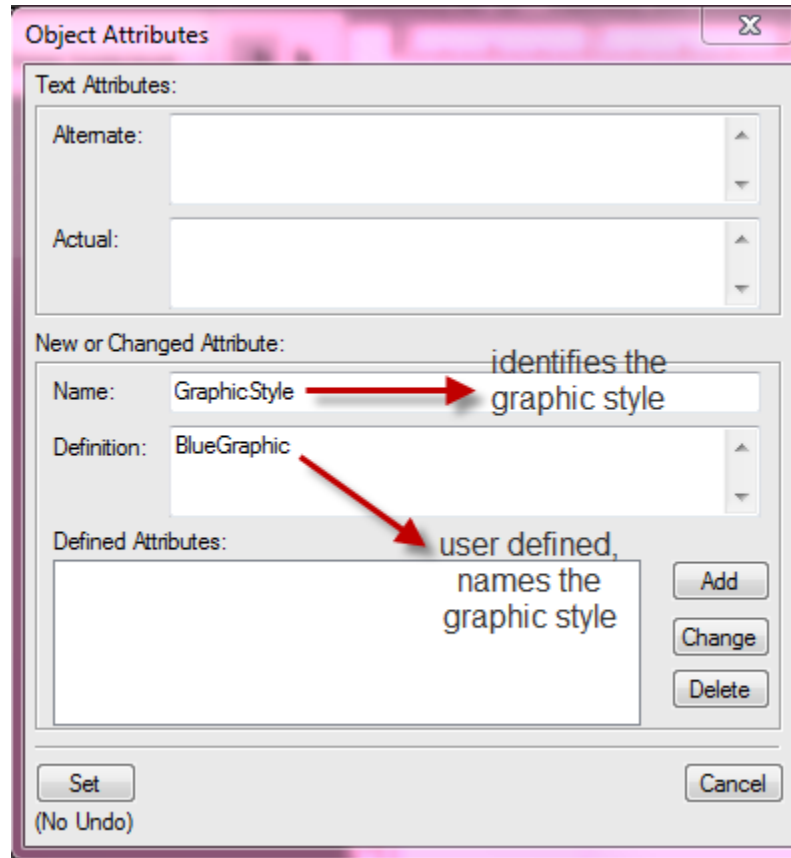
To assign a style to a specific image, your Stationery and FrameMaker template must have the GraphicStyle marker type configured. Your output format must also support specifying image styles. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify image styles for images in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for specifying image styles for images in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify an image style for an image in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the anchored frame for the image for which you want to specify an image style.
2. Right-click on the image anchor. Make sure this is the entire anchor, not just the graphic itself

3. Click on **Object Properties** and then click **Object Attributes**. Identify the **GraphicStyle** according to the box below. Assign the desired style name in the attribute value box.



4. Click **Add**, then **Set**, and then **Set**. Adobe FrameMaker may prompt you to approve the change as the operation cannot be undone
5. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
6. Scan this document in ePublisher so that the **GraphicStyle** marker will show up under “Graphic Styles”
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image using the image style you specified by clicking on the page that contains the image for which you specified an image style and verifying ePublisher applied the image style you specified in the generated output. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Index Entries in FrameMaker

An index lists the terms and topics discussed in a document and the page or pages on which they appear. An online index provides the user with a point-and-click resource for quickly navigating online content.

ePublisher uses the same native index entry features used in source documents to create a printed index to create an online index. If you include index entries in your source documents, ePublisher detects the index entries and uses the index entries to create an online index in your generated output.

Adobe FrameMaker inserts index entries as Index markers. To create index entries in an Adobe FrameMaker source document, insert Index markers into your Adobe FrameMaker source document. ePublisher then uses the Index markers to create an online index when you generate output.

Before you insert index entries, verify with the Stationery designer that your Stationery is configured to support online index generation. By default, ePublisher enables online index generate for output, but this functionality can be disabled in your Stationery by the Stationery designer. Also confirm that your output format supports online index creation. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

Talk with the Stationery designer and other writers about the standard location and method you should use when you insert Index markers into your Adobe FrameMaker source documents. For example, some writers prefer to insert index entries into topic headings, while other writers prefer to insert index entries on the first line of the paragraph that contains the indexed term or terms. Some writers prefer to create one Index marker for each term, while other writers prefer to create one Index marker and then type all index terms associated with a paragraph into one Index marker.

The following procedure provides an example of how to inset index entries in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for inserting index entries in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To insert an index entry in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, insert your cursor in the location where you want to create an index entry.
2. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
3. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Index** from the drop-down list.

4. In the **Marker Text** field, type the text you want to specify for the index entry.

Note: Following are some common ways writers can create index entries in Adobe FrameMaker. For more information about creating index entries, see the Adobe FrameMaker Help.

- *If you want to specify multiple index entries in the marker*, separate each index entry with a semicolon (;) character.

For example, type `index; table of contents; headings; footers`

- *If you want to create a subentry*, separate the primary and secondary entry with a colon (:).

For example, type `index:creating; index:generating;`

- *If you want to create See references*, insert the entry but use the `<$npage>` command to suppress the page number.

For example, type `document, See source document <$npage>`

- *If you want to create see references with the word See italicized*, use a character tag inside the Index marker and the `<Default Para Font>` tag to turn off the character tagging.

For example, type `document, <Emphasis>See <Default Para Font>source documents<$npage>`

- *If you want to create See also references*, use alternate text that specifies how Adobe FrameMaker sorts the see also reference.

For example, type `document, <Emphasis>See also<Default Para Font>source documents<$npage>[document:aa]`

The text in brackets at the end of the entry controls where Adobe FrameMaker displays the text in the entry. In this example, the `aa` text ensures Adobe FrameMaker displays the entry as the first subentry under `document`.

5. Click **New Marker**.
6. After you insert your index entries, save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the index correctly by clicking on the page or tab that displays the index and then clicking on the index entries. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Using Variables in FrameMaker

A variable serves as a placeholder for information that may change frequently. Using variables in source documents allows you to quickly and easily control the content in your generated output. When you change the value of a variable in an ePublisher project, it changes the value in only your generated output. The variable value does not change in your source document.

Once you insert variables into your source documents, whenever the value of a item defined by a variable needs to change, you can make the change in a single location, rather than searching and replacing for all instances of the item. For example, you can use variables in the following ways:

- If you have publication dates or release dates in your source documents that you need to update periodically, you can set up the date as a variable.
- If you work with products that have names or versions that frequently change, you can set up variables for product names and versions.
- If you need to produce documentation sets for a product with multiple brands, you can use variables to help you produce documentation for each different brand using the same set of source files.

Importing or Creating Variables in FrameMaker

When you work with Adobe FrameMaker source documents, typically you import variables into your Adobe FrameMaker source documents from an Adobe FrameMaker template. The Adobe FrameMaker template contains variables defined by the Stationery designer.

Typically you should not need to create variables in your Adobe FrameMaker source files if you use an Adobe FrameMaker template created by a Stationery designer. However, in some cases you may need to create a variable in an Adobe FrameMaker source document if you do not have an Adobe FrameMaker template that includes a variable you need for your project.

The following procedure provides an example of how to import or create variables in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for importing or creating variables in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To import variables or create a variable in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Open your Adobe FrameMaker source file.
2. *If you want to import variables into your Adobe FrameMaker source file from an Adobe FrameMaker template*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Open the Adobe FrameMaker template that contains the variables you want to import.
 - b. On the **File** menu, click **Import > Formats**.
 - c. In the **Import from Document** field, select the Adobe FrameMaker template that contains the variables you want to import from the list.
 - d. In the **Import and Update** field, select only the **Variable Definitions** check box.
 - e. Click **Import**.
 - f. Click **OK** to confirm the operation.
3. *If you want to create a variable in your Adobe FrameMaker source file*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Special** menu, click **Variables**.
 - b. Click **Create Variable**.
 - c. In the **Name** field, type a name for the variable. Variable names are case sensitive. For example, VariableName and variablename are different variables.
 - d. Insert your cursor in the **Definition** field.
 - e. In the **Character Formats** field, select a character format for the variable and then type a value for the variable. For more information about specifying character formats for variables, see the Adobe FrameMaker Help.
 - f. Click **Add**. Adobe FrameMaker adds the variable to the list of variables. The variable is the value that Adobe FrameMaker displays in your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
 - g. Click **Done**.
4. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source file.

Inserting Variables into FrameMaker

You can insert a variable into a source document after you import the variables into your source document. If you want to use a variable that is not defined in an Adobe FrameMaker template, you must create the variable in your source document before you can insert it. For more information about importing or creating variables, see “Importing or Creating Variables in FrameMaker” on page 123.

The following procedure provides an example of how to insert variables in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for inserting variables in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To insert a variable into an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Open the Adobe FrameMaker source document into which you want to insert a variable.
2. Place your cursor in the location where you want to insert the variable.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Variable**.
4. In the **Variable** field, select the variable you want to insert from the list, and then click **Insert**. Adobe FrameMaker inserts the variable.

Changing Variable Values in FrameMaker

You can change the value assigned to a variable in an Adobe FrameMaker source document.

The following procedure provides an example of how to change variable values in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for changing variable values in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To change a variable value in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Open the Adobe FrameMaker source document that contains the variable with a value you want to change.
2. On the **Special** menu, click **Variable**.
3. In the **Variable** field, select the variable with the value you want to change.
4. Click **Edit Definition**.
5. In the **Definition** field, edit the variable value.

6. Click **Done**. Adobe FrameMaker updates the variable value in each place in your source document where you inserted the variable.
7. Click **Done** again to close the window.

Deleting Variables in FrameMaker

Delete a variable in an Adobe FrameMaker source document when you no longer want to use the variable. Before you delete a variable, ensure you search for the variable and delete or replace all references to the variable. If your source document still contains a reference to a variable after you delete it, Adobe FrameMaker prompts you to convert references to the variable in your source document to editable text.

The following procedure provides an example of how to delete variables in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for deleting variables in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To delete a variable in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Open the Adobe FrameMaker source document that contains the variable you want to edit.
2. Search for and replace all references to the variable you want to delete in the source document by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Edit** menu, click **Find/Change**.
 - b. In the **Find** field, select **Variable of Name** from the list.
 - c. In the field next to the **Find** field, type the name of the variable you want to delete.
 - d. Click **Find**.
 - e. Delete each variable you find or replace the variable with a different variable as appropriate.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Variable**.
4. In the **Variable** field, select the variable you want to delete.
5. Click **Edit Definition**.
6. In the **User Variables** field, ensure the variable you want to delete is selected, and then click **Delete**.
7. Click **Done**.
8. Click **OK** to confirm the operation.

Using Conditions in FrameMaker

Conditions allow you to show or hide information in your source documents and in your online output. You apply conditions to the content in your source documents, and then you set the visibility for those conditions either in your source documents or in your ePublisher project.

For example, your source documents might contain some content that should be displayed in only the printed version and other content that should be displayed in only the online version. You can use the same set of source documents for both printed and online versions through the use of conditions. You can create one condition called **PrintOnly** specifically for printed content, and then you can create another condition called **OnlineOnly** specifically for online content. After you create the **PrintOnly** and **OnlineOnly** conditions, you can apply them to the appropriate content in your source documents.

After you apply conditions in your source documents, ePublisher can use the conditions defined in your source document to control the visibility of content when it generates output. You can also change the visibility specified for any condition in your ePublisher project. Changing the visibility specified for any condition in your ePublisher project does not change the visibility specified for the condition in your source documents.

Creating Conditions in FrameMaker

When you work with Adobe FrameMaker source documents, typically you import conditions into your Adobe FrameMaker source documents from an Adobe FrameMaker template. The Adobe FrameMaker template contains conditions defined by the Stationery designer.

Typically you should not need to create conditions in your Adobe FrameMaker source files if you use an Adobe FrameMaker template created by a Stationery designer. However, in some cases you may need to create a condition in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents if you do not have an Adobe FrameMaker template that includes a condition you need for a project. If you need to create a condition that is not available in your Adobe FrameMaker template, use native Adobe FrameMaker functionality to create the condition.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create conditions in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating conditions in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create a condition in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, on the **Special** menu, click **Conditional Text**.
2. Click **Edit Condition Tag**.

3. In the **Tag** field, type a name for the condition.

For example, if you want to create a condition for content that you want to display in only online content, type `OnlineOnly`. If you want to create a condition for content that you want to display in only printed content, type `PrintOnly`.

4. *If you want to specify a style for the condition*, in the **Style** field, select the style you want to use for the condition from the drop-down list. Specifying a style for the condition allows you to more easily see the content tagged with the condition in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents. If you do not want to use a style for the condition, select **As Is**.
5. *If you want to specify a color for the condition*, in the **Color** field, select a color for the condition from the drop-down list. Specifying a color for the condition allows you to more easily see the content tagged with the condition in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents. If you do not want to use a color for the condition, select **As Is**.
6. Click the **Set** to create the condition.

Applying Conditions in FrameMaker

After you have imported conditions from your Adobe FrameMaker template or created conditions in your Adobe FrameMaker source document, you can apply conditions to content in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents. For more information about creating conditions in Adobe FrameMaker source documents, see “Creating Conditions in FrameMaker” on page 127.

The following procedure provides an example of how to apply conditions in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for applying conditions in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To apply a condition to content in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe Framemaker source document, select the content to which you want to apply the condition.
2. On the **Special** menu, click **Conditional Text**.
3. In the **Not In** list, select the condition you want to apply to the content.
4. Click the left arrow to move the condition from the **Not In** list to the **In** list.
5. Click **Apply** button to apply the condition.

Removing Conditions in FrameMaker

If you no longer want to apply a condition to content in an Adobe FrameMaker source document, you can remove the applied condition from the content.

The following procedure provides an example of how to remove conditions from content in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for removing conditions from content in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To remove a condition from content in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, select the content with the condition you want to remove.
2. On the **Special** menu, click **Conditional Text**.
3. Click **Unconditional**.
4. Click **Apply**.

Modifying Conditions in FrameMaker

You can edit the name of a condition and change the color or style assigned to a condition in an Adobe FrameMaker source document.

The following procedure provides an example of modify conditions in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for modifying conditions in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To modify a condition in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, on the **Special** menu, click **Conditional Text**.
2. Select the condition you want to modify.
3. Click **Edit Condition Tag**.
4. *If you want to modify the name of the condition*, in the **Tag** field, type the new name for the condition.
5. *If you want to modify the style specified for the condition*, in the **Style** field, select the style you want to apply to the condition from the drop-down list. If you do not want to use a style, select **As Is**.

6. *If you want to modify the color specified for the condition*, in the **Color** field, select a color for the condition from the drop-down list. If you do not want to use a color, select **As Is**.
7. Click **Set** to modify the condition.

Showing and Hiding Conditions in FrameMaker

You can show and hide conditions you applied in your Adobe FrameMaker source document. You can also show all of the conditions you applied in your Adobe FrameMaker source document. Showing all of the conditions applied allows you to see where all of the conditional content is in your Adobe FrameMaker source document.

The following procedure provides an example of how to show and hide conditions in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for showing and hiding conditions in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To show and hide conditions in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, on the **Special** menu, click **Conditional Text**.
2. Click **Show/Hide**.
3. *If you want to show all conditions*, click **Show All**. Showing all conditions is helpful when you are working with a document and you want to be sure you can see all of the content in the document.
4. *If you want to show a specific condition*, select it, and then click the left arrow to move it to the **Show** list on the left.
5. *If you want to hide a specific condition*, select it, and then click the right arrow to move it to the **Hide** list on the right.
6. Click **Set**.

Using Passthrough Conditions in FrameMaker

A passthrough condition is a condition you apply to content that you do not want ePublisher to process when you generate output. For example, if you have embedded multimedia files in your source documents, such as Audio Video Interleave files (.avi) or Adobe Software Flash files (.swf), you can apply a passthrough condition to the code so that ePublisher does not process the code.

The following example shows `.avi` code to which you can apply a passthrough condition.

```
<embed src="sample.avi" width="400"
height="300" pluginspage=";>
</embed>
```

The following example shows `.swf` code to which you can apply a passthrough condition.

```
<embed src="sample.swf" width="400"
height="300" pluginspage="
http://www.macromedia.com/shockwave/download/index.cgi?P1_Prod_Versi
on=ShockwaveFlash";>
</embed>
```

If you have code in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents that you do not want ePublisher to process, create a passthrough condition and then apply the passthrough condition to the code.

Typically you use a passthrough condition defined in an Adobe FrameMaker template by a Stationery designer. You import this condition into your Adobe FrameMaker source document from an Adobe FrameMaker template. After you import the passthrough condition into your source document from the template, you apply the passthrough condition to the content as appropriate.

Typically you should not need to create a passthrough condition in your Adobe FrameMaker source file if you use an Adobe FrameMaker template created by a Stationery designer. However, in some cases you may need to create a passthrough condition in your Adobe FrameMaker source document if you do not have an Adobe FrameMaker template that includes a passthrough condition you need for a project. If you need to create a passthrough condition that is not available in your Adobe FrameMaker template, use native Adobe FrameMaker functionality to create the condition. For more information about creating a condition and applying a condition, see “Creating Conditions in FrameMaker” on page 127 and “Removing Conditions in FrameMaker” on page 129.

You can also use Passthrough markers and the Passthrough paragraph styles and character styles options to insert content directly into your output without being transformed and coded for your output.

Deleting Conditions in FrameMaker

Delete a condition in an Adobe FrameMaker source document when you no longer want to apply the condition to content in the source document.

The following procedure provides an example of how to delete conditions in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for deleting conditions in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To delete a condition in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, on the **Special** menu, click **Conditional Text**.
2. Select the condition you want to delete.
3. Click **Edit Condition Tag**.
4. Click **Delete**.

Conditional Output Using Expressions in FrameMaker

Adobe FrameMaker 8.0 introduced ways to use Boolean Expressions (using the terms AND, OR, or Not) in conditional text, for example WebHelp AND PDF. To do this, you first create the conditions, and then use the Build Expression button to create this.

The following procedure provides an example of how to use Expressions in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 9. Steps for deleting conditions in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To build an Expression in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, on the **Special** menu, click **Conditional Text -> Show/Hide Conditional Text**
2. Click button **Build Expression**
3. Click desired condition and the arrow button to add it to the Expression
4. Separate the conditions by clicking the buttons for “AND” “OR” or “NOT”
5. When finished select Set so that this Expression will be able to be selected in the **Expression** dropdown located in the **Show/Hide Conditional Text** window
6. Go to **Special -> Conditional Text -> Show/Hide Conditional Text** and select the Show as per Expression radio button
7. Select the desired text you want to apply the expression and hit **Apply**
8. Save your source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created an output file using the file name you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Specifying Output File Names in FrameMaker

By default, ePublisher automatically assigns file names to your generated output files for topics (pages) and for embedded image (graphic) output files.

Note: If you insert your images by reference in Adobe FrameMaker, ePublisher preserves the original file names. For more information, see “Working with Images in FrameMaker” on page 107.

You can customize this naming convention using one of the following methods:

- Inserting Filename markers into your source documents
- Specifying the topic (page) and image (graphic) naming patterns for ePublisher to use in the target settings for your output

This section explains how you can specify output file names in your FrameMaker source documents using Filename markers. For more information about using target settings to specify output file names using page and image naming patterns, see “Specifying Page, Image, and Table File Naming Patterns” on page 385.

To specify a file name for a page or image output file using Filename markers, your Stationery and FrameMaker template must have the Filename marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify page and embedded image output file names in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for specifying page and embedded image output file names in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify page and embedded image output file names in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. *If you want to insert a Filename marker for a page output file*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the page for the topic to which you want to assign a specific filename. For more information about creating pages using page breaks, see “Specifying Page Breaks Settings” on page 385.
 - b. Insert your cursor at the beginning of the first paragraph on the page.

2. *If you want to insert a Filename marker for an embedded image output file,* complete the following steps:
 - a. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the embedded image for which you want to assign the output graphic file.
 - b. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Tools** to display the graphic tools palette.
 - c. Click the **Text Frame** icon.
 - d. Drag the cursor across the image to draw a text frame over the image.
 - e. In the Create New Text Frame window, in the **Number** field, type 1, and then click **Set**.
 - f. Click outside of the image, and then insert your cursor in the text frame.
3. In Adobe FrameMaker, on the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Filename** from the drop-down list.
5. *If the Filename marker type is not on the list,* check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
6. In the **Marker Text** field, type the file name you want to assign to the output file. Do not include the output file extension when you type the Filename marker text.
7. Click **New Marker**.
8. Save your source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created an output file using the file name you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Context-Sensitive Help in FrameMaker

This section explains how you can use ePublisher to create links to context-sensitive help content in Adobe FrameMaker source documents.

Understanding Context-Sensitive Help in FrameMaker

Context-sensitive help links provide content based on the context of what the user is doing. In many cases, this help content is based on the window that is open and active. For example, the Help button on a window in a software product can open a specific Help topic that provides important information about the window:

- What the window allows you to do
- Brief concepts needed to understand the window
- Guidance for how to use the window
- Descriptions about each field on the window, valid values, and related fields
- Links to related topics, such as concepts and tasks related to the window

The Help topic can also be embedded in the window itself, such as an HTML pane that displays the content of the Help topic. Providing this content when and where the user needs it, without requiring the user to search through the help, keeps the user productive and focused. This type of help also makes the product more intuitive by providing answers when and where needed.

There are several methods for creating context-sensitive Help. In addition, output formats use different mechanisms to support context-sensitive Help. You can reference a topic in the following ways:

File name

Use a Filename marker to assign a file name to a topic. Each topic can have no more than one Filename marker by default. However, you can create a custom mapping mechanism using file names. Then, you can open the specific topic with that file name. However, if your file naming changes, you need to change the link to the topic. This file naming approach delivers context-sensitive help capabilities in output formats that do not provide a mapping mechanism.

Internal identifier (topic alias)

Use a TopicAlias marker to define an internal identifier for each topic. The benefit of using an internal identifier is that it allows file names to change without impacting the links from the product. The writer inserts this marker in a topic and specifies a unique value for that topic. Then, the mapping mechanism of your output format determines how that internal identifier is supported. Some output formats, such as HTML Help, use a mapping file that defines these topic aliases.

To simplify the coding of your source documents, the Stationery designer can also configure your Stationery to define both the file name and the topic alias for each topic file.

Before you begin to insert Filename markers or TopicAlias markers into your source documents, consult with your Stationery designer. Confirm that your Stationery supports context-sensitive help links, and discuss with your Stationery designer the type of marker you should use to define context-sensitive help link in your source documents.

For more information about configuring Filename and TopicAlias markers for use in context-sensitive help, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

If you generate Eclipse Help output, you also can choose the topic description you want to display for each context-sensitive link. When you use a TopicAlias marker to create context-sensitive links, Eclipse creates a `contexts.xml` file that lists all of the context IDs for the Eclipse Help system you created using TopicAlias markers. In the `contexts.xml` file, Eclipse also provides a description of the context-sensitive link. By default, the description Eclipse provides for the context-sensitive link is the text of the first paragraph of the topic. However, if you want to specify a different description for the context-sensitive link, you can do this by using the TopicDescription marker. For more information about using the TopicDescription marker, see “Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in FrameMaker” on page 137.

Planning for Context-Sensitive Help in FrameMaker

Creating context-sensitive help requires you to collaborate with application developers. Because topic IDs and map numbers must be embedded in both the software application and in your source documents, you and the application developers must agree in advance on the values to use.

Before you create context-sensitive help topics, first confirm with your application developers that the application supports context-sensitive help. Then work with your application developers to decide how to choose the topic ID for each context-sensitive help topic:

You choose the topic IDs

You can choose a set of topic IDs and embed them in your source documents using TopicAlias markers. When you generate output, ePublisher can generate a mapping file using those topic IDs and assign a unique number to each topic ID. You can provide the generated mapping file to your application developers, who can embed the topic IDs in the application code. You can then manually maintain this mapping file, or you can allow ePublisher to generate a new file each time you generate the help. Remember to give the updated help system and mapping file to your application developers each time.

Your developers choose the topic IDs

Your application developers can choose a set of topic IDs and embed them in the application code. Then, you can get a copy of the mapping file from your application developers, specify this mapping file in your project settings, and embed the topic IDs in your source documents using TopicAlias markers. In this case, ePublisher does not generate the mapping file.

Before you begin to implement context-sensitive help, meet with your application developers to select one of these methods for assigning the topic IDs to use for context-sensitive help links. Once you choose a set of topic IDs, embed them in your source documents using TopicAlias markers and do not change them.

Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in FrameMaker

You can use TopicAlias markers that contain topic IDs, or Filename markers that specify file names, to create context-sensitive help. If your output format supports the use of mapping files and topic IDs, typically you use TopicAlias markers to create context-sensitive help. If your output format does not support the use of mapping files and topic IDs, typically you use Filename markers to create context-sensitive help.

If you are generating Eclipse Help, you can also choose to specify a topic description for each context-sensitive help link your created using a TopicAlias marker by using a TopicDescription marker in conjunction with the TopicAlias marker. For more information about how TopicAlias markers and TopicDescription markers can work together when generating Eclipse Help, see “Understanding Context-Sensitive Help in FrameMaker” on page 135.

To specify a context-sensitive help link, your Stationery and template must have a TopicAlias or Filename marker type configured. If you are generating Eclipse Help and you want to be able to specify topic descriptions for your context-sensitive help links, your Stationery and template must also have a TopicDescription marker type configured. Consult with the Stationery designer to determine which marker type you should use to create context-sensitive help links and topic descriptions in your source documents. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create context-sensitive help links and topic descriptions in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating context-sensitive help links in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create a context-sensitive help link in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Open the Adobe FrameMaker source document that contains the context-sensitive topic you want to link to when users click a help button or help icon from within an application.
2. Insert your cursor at the beginning of the topic or paragraph in which you want to link.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. In the **Marker Type** field, select the marker type the Stationery designer configured your Stationery to support from the drop-down list. For example, select **TopicAlias** or **Filename**.
5. *If the TopicAlias or Filename marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
6. In the **Marker Text** field, type the topic ID or file name you want to use for the context-sensitive help link. Specify topic IDs or file names that met the following guidelines:
 - Must be unique
 - Must begin with an alphabetical character
 - May contain alphanumeric characters
 - May not contain special characters or spaces, with the exception of underscores (_)
7. Click **New Marker**.

8. *If you are generating Eclipse Help and you want to specify topic descriptions for each context-sensitive help link you are creating*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor in the topic after the TopicAlias marker you inserted for the Eclipse context-sensitive help topic.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - c. In the **Marker Type** field, select **TopicDescription** marker type from the drop-down list.
 - a. *If the TopicDescription marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
 - b. In the **Marker Text** field, type the topic description you want to use.
 - c. Click **New Marker**.
9. Save your source Adobe FrameMaker source document.
10. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
11. In Output Explorer, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that ePublisher inserted the topic ID into the map file when it generated output.
 - b. *If you generated Eclipse Help and specified topic descriptions for your context-sensitive help topics*, verify that the `contents.xml` file for your Eclipse Help system contains the topic descriptions you specified for context-sensitive help topics.
 - c. Test the generated output using the application and verify that the application links to the appropriate context-sensitive help topic. This testing ensures the context-sensitive help link you created displays correctly within the application.

Creating Popup Windows in FrameMaker

A popup window is a window that is smaller than standard windows and typically does not contain some of the standard window features such as tool bars or status bars. Popup windows display when users hover over or click on a link. The popup window closes automatically as soon as the users click somewhere else.

A typical use of popup windows is to display glossary terms. For example, in printed documentation, terms and definitions are typically grouped in a separate glossary document. However, in online content, you can display glossary definitions in popup windows. With glossary popup windows, users can choose whether or not they want to view the definition of a term.

You create popup windows by creating a link between the word or phrase in a topic and the content you want to display in the popup window. After you create the link, you then insert Popup markers or apply Popup paragraph styles to define the content you want to display in the popup window.

If the Stationery designer configured the Stationery to support popup windows using markers, you use the following Popup markers to create popup windows:

Popup

Specifies the start of the content to include in a popup window. The content displays in a popup window when users hover over or click on the link. In some output formats users can also view the content in a standard help topic window in addition to viewing the content in a popup window. For example, if you insert a Popup marker in front of a glossary definition, the glossary definition displays in both a popup window and in a glossary topic that contains the definition.

PopupEnd

Specifies the end of the content to display in the popup window.

PopupOnly

Specifies that the popup content displays only through a popup window. For example, if you insert a PopupOnly marker in front of a glossary definition, the glossary definition displays only in a popup window.

If the Stationery designer configured the Stationery to support popup windows using paragraph formats, you use the following paragraph formats to create popup windows:

Popup and Popup Append paragraph behaviors

Specifies that content displays both in popup windows and in standard help topics. You apply the Popup paragraph format to the first paragraph of content you want displayed in the popup window. If you have more than one paragraph of content you want to display, you apply the Popup Append format to the additional paragraphs.

For example, if you apply a glossary term and glossary definitions format for a glossary using the Popup and Popup Append format, the terms and definitions in your output display in both a popup window and in a glossary topic that contains the definitions.

Popup Only and Popup Only Append paragraph behaviors

Specifies that content displays only in popup windows. You apply the Popup Only paragraph format to the first paragraph of content you want displayed in the popup window. If you have more than one paragraph of content you want to display, you apply the Popup Only Append format to the additional paragraphs.

For example, if you apply a glossary term and glossary definition format for a glossary using the Popup Only and Popup Only Append paragraph format, the terms and definitions in your output display in only popup windows. The content is not displayed in an additional glossary topic that contains the definitions.

Checklist: Creating Popup Windows in FrameMaker

If you want to include popup windows in your generated output, prepare your Adobe FrameMaker source documents using the following checklist.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task	For more information, see...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Create a link between a link between a word or phrase and the content you want to display in a popup window.	"Creating Popup Window Links in FrameMaker" on page 141
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. If you want to implement popup windows using Popup markers , insert Popup markers into the appropriate locations in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents.	"Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker" on page 144
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. If you want to implement popup windows using paragraph formats , apply the appropriate Popup paragraph format to content in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents.	"Using Paragraph Formats to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker" on page 145

Creating Popup Window Links in FrameMaker

Your first step in creating a popup window is to create a link between a word or phrase in a topic and the popup content you want to display when users hover over or click the link. Use native Adobe FrameMaker functionality to create a link between the word or phrase in a topic and the content you want to display in a popup window. You can create a link in Adobe FrameMaker by using a cross-reference or by using hypertext markers.

Before you create popup window links, verify that your output format supports this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see "Features Available in Each Output Format" on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create a popup window link in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating links in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create a link between a word or phrase and popup content in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the text you want to create a link to and display in the popup window.
2. *If you want to create a link that includes the link target text*, create the link using a cross-reference by completing the following steps:
 - a. Select the text for which you want to create a link.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Cross-Reference**.
 - c. In the **Document** field, select the document that contains the content to which you want to link.
 - d. In the **Paragraph Tags** field, select the paragraph tag used for the content to which you want to link.
 - e. In the **Paragraphs** field, select the paragraph to which you want to link.
 - f. In the **Format** field, select the appropriate format for the link. For example, if you are creating a link to a glossary term, select a glossary term cross-reference format.
 - g. Click **Replace**.

3. ***If you want to create a link that does not include the link target text***, create the link using a hypertext marker by completing the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor in front of the link target text.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - c. In the **Marker Type** field, click **Hypertext**.
 - d. In the **Marker Text** field, type `newlink linkname` or `newlink filename:linkname`, where *linkname* is the name of the named destination for the link, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document. To make maintenance easy, create short link names that use alphanumeric, lowercase characters.
 - e. Click **New Marker**.
 - f. Insert your cursor in front of the word or phrase for which you want to create a link.
 - a. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - b. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Hypertext** from the list.
 - c. In the **Marker Text** field, type `gotolink linkname` or `gotolink filename:linkname`, where *linkname* is the name of the named destination you created for the link, and *filename* is the name of the file that contains the link, if the link is in a different Adobe FrameMaker source document.
 - d. Click **New Marker**.
 - e. Select the word or phrase for which you want to create a link. The selected area must contain the both text and the hypertext marker you created.
 - f. Apply a link character format to the word or phrase. If you do not know which character format to use for links, consult the Stationery designer.
4. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.

After you create a link between a word or phrase in a topic and the popup content you want to display in the popup window, define the content you want to display in the popup window using one of the following methods:

- Create popup windows using Popup markers. For more information, see “Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker” on page 144.
- Create popup windows using Popup paragraph formats. For more information, see “Using Paragraph Formats to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker” on page 145.

Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker

You can insert Popup markers into your Adobe FrameMaker source documents to create popup windows. To use Popup markers to create popup windows, your Stationery and FrameMaker template must have the following items configured:

- Popup marker type
- PopupEnd marker type
- PopupOnly marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to insert Popup markers in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for inserting Popup markers in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To use popup markers to create popup windows in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, create a link between a word or phrase in the topic and the content you want to display in the popup window. For more information, see “Creating Popup Window Links in FrameMaker” on page 141.
2. Insert your cursor in front of the text you want to display in the popup window.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. *If you want the popup content to display in both a popup window and in a standard help topic*, in the **Marker Type** field select **Popup** from the drop-down list.
5. *If you want the popup content to display only in a popup window*, in the **Marker Type** field select **PopupOnly** from the drop-down list.
6. *If the Popup or PopupOnly marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
7. In the **Marker Text** field, do not enter any text. You do not need to enter any text in this field when you insert a Popup or PopupOnly marker.
8. Click **New Marker**.

9. Specify where you want the popup content to end by completing the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor at the end of the content you want to display in the popup window.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - c. In the **Marker Type** field, select **PopupEnd** from the drop-down list.
 - d. *If the **PopupEnd** marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
 - e. In the **Marker Text** field, do not enter any text. You do not need to enter any text in this field when you insert a **PopupEnd** marker.
 - f. Click **New Marker**.
10. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
11. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
12. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the popup window and verify that ePublisher created the popup window and that the popup window displays the content you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Using Paragraph Formats to Create Popup Windows in FrameMaker

You can use Popup paragraph formats in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents to create popup windows. To use Popup paragraph formats to create popup windows, your Stationery and FrameMaker template must have the following items configured:

- Popup and Popup Append paragraph formats if you want your content to display both in popup windows and in standard help topics.
- Popup Only and Popup Only Append paragraph formats if you want your content to display only in popup windows.

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to use Popup paragraph formats to create popup windows in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for using Popup paragraph formats to create popup windows in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create popup windows using Popup paragraph formats in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, create a link between a word or phrase in the topic and the content you want to display in the popup window. For more information, see “Creating Popup Window Links in FrameMaker” on page 141.
2. Apply the appropriate Popup paragraph format to the popup content you want to display in the popup window.
3. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
4. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
5. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the popup window and verify that ePublisher created the popup window and that the popup window displays the content you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in FrameMaker

You can create sections of content that expand and collapse when you click a link or hot spot. This structure allows you to create items, such as tasks with numbered procedures, bulleted lists, or definitions, that are easy to scan. Users can then expand individual items to display additional information.

Hot spots for expand/collapse sections initially display in one of the following states:

- The content is initially collapsed and will expand beneath the hotspot when the user clicks the hotspot. Clicking the hotspot a second time causes the expanded content to return to its original collapsed state.
- The content is initially expanded and will collapse or disappear from beneath the hotspot when the user clicks the hotspot.

You use an Expand/Collapse paragraph format to start expand/collapse sections and a DropDownEnd marker to specify where the content in the expand/collapse section ends. The Stationery defines whether the sections should initially be expanded (shown) or collapsed (hidden) and the image used to show the state of the section.

To create expand/collapse sections, your Stationery and FrameMaker template must have the following items configured:

- An Expand/Collapse paragraph format
- A DropDownEnd marker

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create expand/collapse sections in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating expand/collapse sections in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create an expand/collapse section in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, identify a topic that contains text for which you want to create an expand/collapse section.
2. Apply an Expand/Collapse paragraph format to the text you want users to click to expand or collapse content.

For example, in the following sample procedure, you could apply the Expand/Collapse paragraph format to the *To open a project* text.

To open a project

- a. On the **File** menu, click **Open**.
 - b. Browse to the location of the project on your local computer.
 - c. Select the project, and then click **Open**.
3. Insert your cursor at the end of the content you want to display in the expand/collapse section.

For example, in the following sample procedure, you would insert your cursor after the period in the last sentence of the procedure, *Select the project, and then click Open*.

To open a project

- a. On the **File** menu, click **Open**.
 - b. Browse to the location of the project on your local computer.
 - c. Select the project, and then click **Open**.
4. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 5. In the **Marker Type** field, select **DropDownEnd** from the drop-down list.

6. *If the DropDownEnd marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
7. In the **Marker Text** field, do not enter any text. You do not need to enter any text in this field when you insert a DropDownEnd marker.
8. Click **New Marker**.
9. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
10. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
11. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the expand/collapse section and verify that ePublisher created the expand/collapse section and that the expand/collapse section displays the content you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Related Topics in FrameMaker

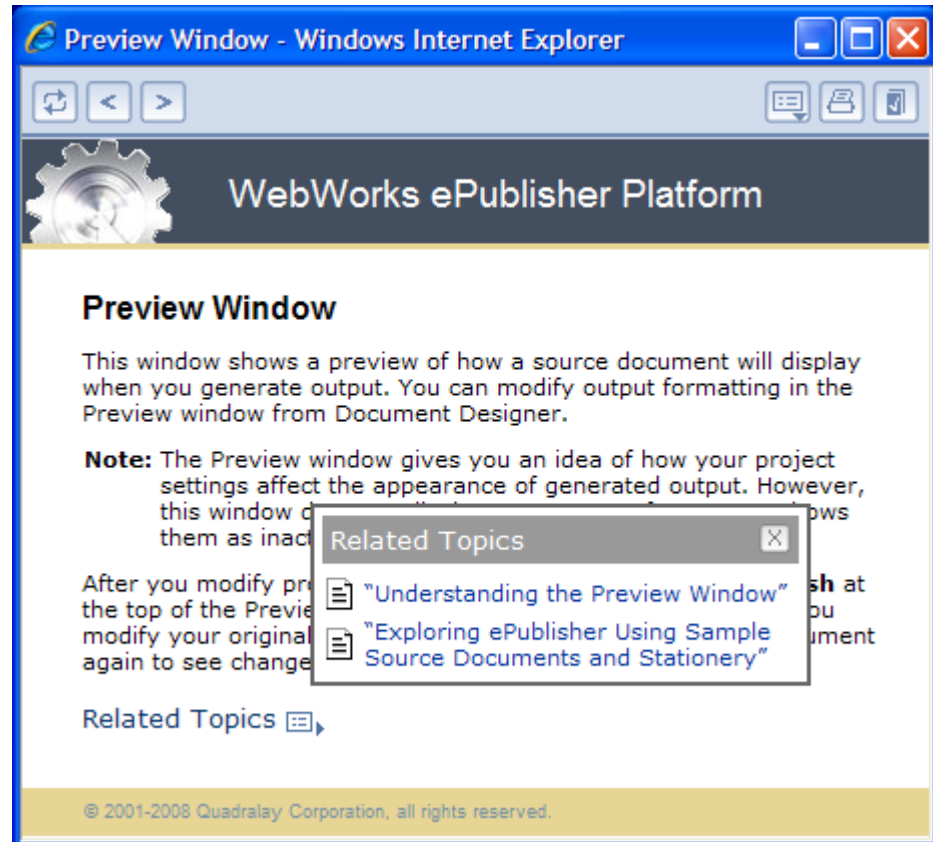
Related topics provide a list of other topics that may be of interest to the user viewing the current topic. For example, you could have a section called Creating Web Pages in your help. You may also have many other topics, such as HTML Tags and Cascading Style Sheets, that related to creating Web pages. Identifying these related topics for users can help them find the information they need and identify additional topics to consider. However, providing these types of links as cross-references within the content itself may not be the most efficient way to present the information. By utilizing related topics links, you combine the capabilities of cross-references with the efficiency of a related topics button.

Related topics and See Also links provide similar capabilities, but there are several important differences:

- Related topics can link to headings in a Help system that do not start a new page.
- Related topics links are static and defined in the source documents as links. You must have all the source documents to create the link and generate the output.
- If a related topics list contains a broken link in the source document, that link is broken in the generated output. In a See Also link list, the broken link is not included in the output.

The Stationery designer can configure related topics to display in the following ways:

- Included as a list in the topic itself.
- Displayed in a popup window when the user clicks a button, as show in the following figure.



Note: If a related topic link is broken in the source document, in most cases that link is broken in the generated output. WebWorks Help and WebWorks Reverb provide an additional feature by removing broken links from related topics lists that are displayed in a popup window when a user clicks the Related Topics button.

To create related topics links, your Stationery and FrameMaker template must have a Related Topics paragraph style configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create related topics links in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating related topics links in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create a related topics list in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Identify the topic in which you would like to insert a related topics list.
2. Identify the different topics you want to link to from this topic.
Note: Generally, you should only create one related topics list for each section of your source document that corresponds to a help topic. For example, if the Stationery designer specified in your Stationery that there will be a page break at each Heading 1 section, then you should only create one related topics list for each Heading 1 section within your source document.
3. Create a cross-reference to each topic you want to include in the related topics list by completing the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor in the location in your Adobe FrameMaker source document where you want to insert the link to the related topic.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Cross-Reference**.
 - c. In the **Document** field, select the source document that contains the topic to which you want to link.
 - d. In the **Source Type** field, click **Paragraphs**.
 - e. In the **Paragraph Tags** field click the paragraph tag used by the topic to which you want to link.
 - f. In the **Paragraphs** field, select the topic to which you want to link.
 - g. In the **Format** field, select the format you want to use for the cross-reference.
 - h. Click **Insert**.
4. Apply the Related Topic paragraph format to the cross-references in your related topics list.
5. *If you want to display the list of related topics in only your generated output*, apply an OnlineOnly condition to the list of related topics. For more information about applying conditions, refer to “Applying Conditions in FrameMaker” on page 128.
6. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the related topics list and verify that ePublisher created the related topics and that the related topics list displays the topics you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in FrameMaker

On Wikis, **categories**, which are referred to as **labels** in some Wiki formats, are used to organize Wiki content. Categories help group together pages that have similar subjects.

Note: MoinMoin and Media Wiki use the term *category* to describe page grouping functionality. Confluence uses the term *label* to describe page grouping functionality.

Pages are assigned to category groups through the use of category or label tags. When you assign a category or label tag to a Wiki page, the category to which the Wiki page belongs displays in a box at the bottom of the page.

Category and label tags on Wiki pages allow categorized pages to automatically be added to a list on a category page on the Wiki. The category page lists all of the Wiki pages tagged for a certain category. For example, if you tag each page on a Wiki that contains licensing information with a Licensing category tag, then a licensing category page on the Wiki can display a list of all of the pages tagged as containing licensing information.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify categories for Wiki pages in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for specifying categories in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify a Wiki category or label for a topic in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, find the first paragraph on the page for the page for which you want to specify a category or label.
2. Insert your cursor into the paragraph.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. In the **Marker Type** field, select **WikiCategory** from the drop-down list.
5. *If the WikiCategory marker type is not on the drop-down list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.

6. In the **Marker Text** field, type the category or list of categories you want to specify for the page. If you want to specify more than one category for a page, separate each category with a comma (.).

For example, if you want to specify one category for the page, type `category1`. If you want to specify multiple categories for the page, type `category1, category2, category3`, where `category` is the category you want to specify for the page.

Note: Each Wiki target handles white space in its own way. For example, MoinMoin removes white space in category names, so if you specify *Licensing Considerations* as a category in a WikiCategory marker, in MoinMoin output the category will display as *LicensingConsiderations*.

7. Click **New Marker**.
 8. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
 9. Generate output for your Wiki target. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
 10. Deploy the Wiki output files to a Wiki server. For more information, see “Deploying Output to Output Destinations” on page 380.
- Note:** You must deploy generated Wiki content to a Wiki server before you can view the Wiki content.
11. Verify that your Wiki pages display the categories or labels you specified at the bottom of the pages.

Creating See Also Links in FrameMaker

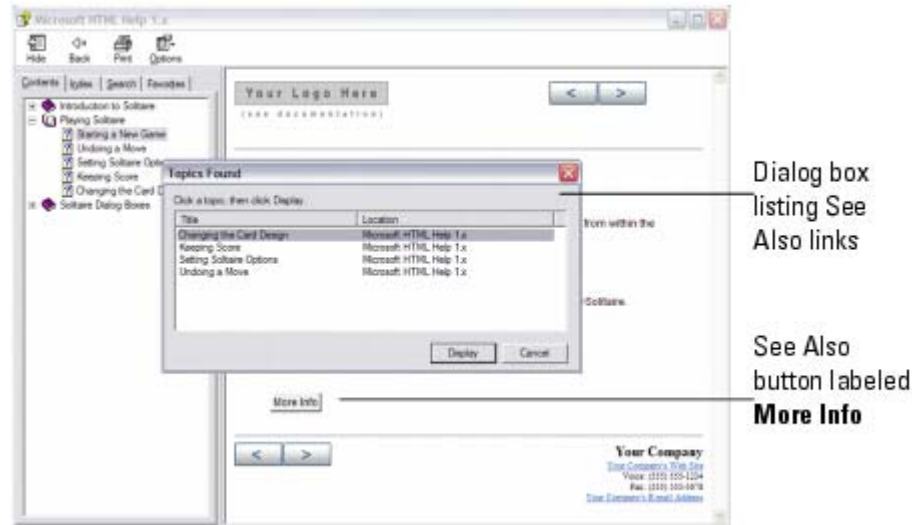
See Also links, also known as ALinks, or associative links, are links that may be of interest to the user viewing the current topic. These links use internal identifiers to specify the links and the link list is built dynamically based on the topics available when the user clicks to display the links. See Also links are important to use with larger help sets and merged help sets.

Related topics and See Also links provide similar capabilities, but there are several important differences:

- See Also links must link to formats that start a new topic, such as a heading.
- See Also links are dynamic and the lists of links are built at display time instead of during help generation.
- Since see Also link lists are dynamically built, they do not include links to topics that are not available when the user displays the links. If a related topics list contains a broken link in the source document, that link is broken in the generated output for most output formats.

See Also links are useful if you plan to merge help systems. For example, if you have a multiple help systems that you merge into one main help system at run time and if your topics in the merged help systems contain See Also keywords that are also used in the main help system, links to those topics are included in the See Also lists in the main project.

You can create See Also links as buttons or as inline text links in Microsoft HTML Help and WebWorks Help. The following example shows how the two different types of See Also links display in a Microsoft HTML Help system.



Create See Also links by applying the See Also paragraph format or character format to text in your Adobe FrameMaker source documents and inserting markers into your Adobe FrameMaker source documents. To create See Also links, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- See Also paragraph format if you want to create See Also links with buttons
- See Also paragraph format if you want to create see Also links as inline text links
- SeeAlsoKeyword marker type
- SeeAlsoLink marker type
- SeeAlsoLinkDisplay marker type if you generate Microsoft HTML Help and you want to display the target topics in a popup menu
- SeeAlsoLinkWindowType marker type if you generate Microsoft HTML Help and you want to display the target topics in a custom window

The following procedure provides an example of how to create See Also links in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating See Also links in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create a See Also link in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Identify each topic to which you want to link from a See Also link, and then complete the following steps for each topic:
 - a. Insert your cursor into the topic to which you want to link.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - c. In the **Marker Type** field, select **SeeAlsoKeyword** from the drop-down list.
2. *If the SeeAlsoKeyword marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
3. In the **Marker Text** field, type a text string that is a unique identifier for the topic.
 For example, if you have a unique topic called About WebWorks Help, type AboutWebWorks help in the **Marker Text** field.
4. Click **New Marker**.
5. Identify the topic where you want to insert a list of See Also links.
6. Enter the text you want to display for the See Also button or for the See Also inline text link on a separate line in the source document where you want the See Also button or inline text link to display.
 For example, if you want to create a button with the text See Also on the button, type See Also. If you want to create inline text with the text Additional Information for the link, type Additional Information.
7. *If you want to create a See Also button for your See Also links*, apply the See Also paragraph format to the text you want to display in the See Also button.
8. *If you want to create a See Also inline text link for your See Also links*, apply the See Also character format to the text you want to display for the See Also inline text link.
9. Apply an OnlineOnly condition to the See Also text. Applying an OnlineOnly condition to the See Also button or See Also inline text displays the See Also link in your generated output, but does not display the See Also button or link in your printed content.
10. Insert your cursor inside the text you specified for the See Also button or See Also inline text link.
11. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
12. In the **Marker Type** field, select **SeeAlsoLink** from the drop-down list.

13. *If the **SeeAlsoLink** marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
14. In the **Marker Text** field, type the text string that is a unique identifier for the topic to which you want to link. This text string is the text string you typed when you created the SeeAlsoKeyword marker for the topic.

For example, if you have a unique topic called About WebWorks Help, type `AboutWebWorks help` in the **Marker Text** field.

15. Click **New Marker**.
16. Continue to insert SeeAlsoLink markers for each topic you want display when users click the See Also button or inline text link.
17. *If you generate Microsoft HTML Help output and you want to display the target topics in a popup menu*, complete the following steps:

- a. Insert your cursor inside the text you specified for the See Also button or inline text link.
- b. In the **Marker Type** field, select **SeeAlsoLinkDisplayType** from the drop-down list.

Note: This marker type is supported only in Microsoft HTML Help.

- c. *If the **SeeAlsoLinkDisplayType** marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
- d. In the **Marker Text** field, type `menu`. By default, Microsoft HTML Help displays See Also links in the Topics Found window. To display See Also links in a popup menu, specify `menu` for the marker value.
- e. Click **New Marker**.

18. *If you generate Microsoft HTML Help output and you want to display the target topics in a custom window*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor inside the text you specified for the See Also button or inline text link.
 - b. In the **Marker Type** field select **SeeAlsoLinkWindowType** from the drop-down list.

Note: This marker type is supported only in Microsoft HTML Help.
 - c. *If the SeeAlsoWindowType marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93
 - d. In the **Marker Text** field, type `menu`. By default, Microsoft HTML Help displays See Also links in the Topics Found window. To display See Also links in a popup menu, specify `menu` for the marker value.
 - e. Click **New Marker**.
19. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
20. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
21. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the See Also links and verify that ePublisher created the See Also button or See Also inline text and that the See Also button or inline text displays the links you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Meta Tag Keywords in FrameMaker

Meta tags are lines of code placed between the `<head>` and `</head>` tags in HTML pages. Meta tags give web search engines information about the content of the web page and how search engines should treat the web page. Users viewing web pages do not see the meta tags, but meta tags can be used to influence the way web pages on a web site appear in web search engine results. Users also see the text you specify for meta tags right following the title of your page when your page comes up in search results.

In help systems, search ranking works like ranking in an Internet search engine. If you generate help system output, you can use meta tag keywords to specify terms for pages for help topics where you want to improve searchability. For example, assume that in your help system you have a topic called See Also links. However, you know that See Also links are also sometimes referred to as ALinks, and you think that some users of your help system may search for information about See Also links by typing ALinks into the **Search** field for your help system. In this example, you can insert ALinks as a meta tag keyword for each page that discusses See Also links, so users who search your system for information about ALinks can find the information they are looking for in your See Also link topics.

To assign meta tag keywords, your Stationery and template must have the **Keywords** marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create meta tag keywords in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating meta tag keywords in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create meta tag keywords for a page in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, find the first paragraph in the page for the page for which you want to create a meta tag keyword.
2. Insert your cursor into the paragraph.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Keywords** from the drop-down list.
5. *If the **Keywords** marker type is not on the drop-down list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
6. In the **Marker Text** field, type the comma-delimited list of keywords that you want search engines to use.

For example, type keyword1, keyword2, keyword3, where *keyword* is the keyword you want search engines to use.
7. Click **New Marker**.
8. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

10. In Output Explorer, verify that ePublisher inserted your meta tag keywords correctly by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Explorer**.
 - b. In the *TargetName\ProjectName* folder, open the page to which you assigned meta tag keywords in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target and *ProjectName* is the name of your project.
 - c. Verify that the text you specified for your meta tag displays in the `meta name` attribute between in the `<head>` and `</head>` tags section of your web page. For example, if you typed `keyword1, keyword2, keyword3`, for your meta tag keywords, your meta tags in for the page should be similar to the following entry:

```
<meta name="keywords" content="keyword1, keyword2, keyword3" />
```

Assigning Custom Page Styles in FrameMaker

By default, each page generated by ePublisher is associated with the default page style defined in the Stationery used by your ePublisher project. This means that typically you do not need to specify a page style for pages when you generate output. However, if you want to change the page style of one page or a smaller set of pages, you can specify the page style you want to use for a page in your Adobe FrameMaker source document using the `PageStyle` marker.

For example, you may want to use one page style in your help system for all concept and procedure topic pages, and another page style for all context-sensitive window description topic pages in your help system. In this example, you can use the default page style for all of your concept and procedure topic pages, and then you can use a second custom page style defined in your Stationery for all context-sensitive window description topic pages in your help system.

To assign custom page styles, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Custom page styles defined for your Stationery by the Stationery designer
- `PageStyle` marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

For more information about creating page styles, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

The following procedure provides an example of specifying custom page styles for pages in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for specifying custom page styles for pages in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify a custom page style for a page in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the page for the topic to which you want to assign a page style.
2. Insert your cursor in the location on the page where you want to insert the PageStyle marker.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. In the **Marker Type** field, select **PageStyle** from the drop-down list.
5. *If the PageStyle marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
6. In the **Marker Text** field, type the name of the custom page style the Stationery designer configured for your Stationery.

For example, if the Stationery designer configured an page style called BluePage in your Stationery, type BluePage.
7. Click **New Marker**.
8. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the page using the page style you specified by clicking on the page and verifying ePublisher applied the page style you specified in the generated output. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating What's This (Field-Level) Help in FrameMaker

If you generate Microsoft HTML Help output, you can implement What's This help for product dialog boxes and windows. What's This help is also known as field-level help. Only Microsoft HTML Help supports field-level help. In addition, not all products are designed to support field-level help for product dialog boxes and windows. Before you begin implementing field-level help, consult your product team to determine if field-level help part of the product design. If field-level help is part of the product design, you will also need to obtain the appropriate ID from your product team for each field-level help topic you need.

Users can view the field-level help you create using one of following methods:

- Users click on the question mark icon in the upper right corner of the dialog box or window.

When users click on the question mark icon, their cursor changes to a question mark. Users can then move the question mark cursor over the fields on the dialog box or window, and Windows displays the field-level help you created in a popup window when they hover over a specific field.

- Users right-click a field on a dialog box or window and then select the **What's This?** option from the single option menu Windows displays.

After users select this option, Windows displays the field-level help you specify in in a popup window.

Users close the popup window that provides the field-level help by pressing the `ESC` key on the keyboard. When users press the `ESC` key, their cursor returns to the regular cursor shape for the user.

To create What's This help, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- What Is This help paragraph style
- WhatIsThisHelpID

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create What's This help in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for creating What's This help in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To create What's This help in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Identify a topic that contains field-level help.
2. Apply the What Is This paragraph format to the text that contains the field-level help.
3. Insert your cursor into the field-level help text.
4. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
5. In the **Marker Type** field, select **WhatIsThisID** from the drop-down list.
6. *If the WhatIsThisID marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
7. In the **Marker Text** field, type the appropriate ID for the field-level description. Obtain appropriate IDs for each field-level description from your product team.
8. Click **New Marker**.
9. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
10. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
11. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the What's This help you specified by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. Open the *ProjectName* folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.
 - c. Open the *whatisthis.txt* file and verify that the field-level help you created is associated with the correct ID you received from your product development team.
 - d. Open the *whatisthis.h* file and verify that each new string you added is listed in the file.

Opening Topics in Custom Windows in FrameMaker

You can open topics in custom windows in Microsoft HTML Help and Oracle Help. By default, Microsoft HTML Help displays content in the standard Microsoft HTML Help tri-pane window. The Stationery designer can modify the size, position, and other characteristics of the tri-pane window in your Microsoft HTML Help project. The Stationery designer can also define custom windows for you to use in a Microsoft HTML Help project. If the Stationery designer defines custom windows in a Microsoft HTML Help project, you can specify which topics you want to display in the custom window using the WindowType marker.

By default, Oracle Help displays content in the standard Oracle Help viewer. The Stationery designer can modify the size, position, and other characteristics of Oracle Help windows. The Stationery designer can also define custom windows for you to use in an Oracle Help project. If the Stationery designer defines custom windows in an Oracle Help project, you can specify which topics you want to display in the custom window using the WindowType marker.

For example, if you want your context-sensitive help topics to display in a different type of window than other content, after you create a context-sensitive help topic you can use the WindowType marker to specify that you want the context-sensitive help topics to display in a custom window. After you assign a custom window to a topic using the WindowType marker, the help system displays the topic in your generated output in the custom window whenever users access the topic from the table of contents, index, a standard hyperlink, a related topics list, or a See Also link.

To open topics in custom windows, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Custom window styles defined for your Stationery by the Stationery designer
- PageStyle marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify topics open in custom Microsoft HTML Help or Oracle Help windows in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for specifying topics open in custom Microsoft HTML Help or Oracle Help windows in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify topics open in a custom window in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Obtain the names of custom windows configured in the Stationery you use for your ePublisher project from the Stationery designer.
2. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the topic that you want to open in a custom window.
3. Insert your cursor into the topic.
4. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
5. In the **Marker Type** field, select **WindowType** from the drop-down list.
6. *If the WindowType marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
7. In the **Marker Text** field, type the name of the custom window configured by the Stationery designer that you want to specify for the topic.
8. Click **New Marker**.
9. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
10. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
11. In Output Explorer, verify the topic displays in the custom window you specified for the topic. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Customizing Table of Contents Icons in FrameMaker

By default, the **Contents** tab in a Microsoft HTML Help, Oracle Help, and WebWorks Help uses book and page icons to identify entries. By default, the **Contents** tab in Sun JavaHelp uses folder and page icons to identify entries. You can also customize the table of contents icons.

For example, if you want to make new topics stand out by using a unique icon specific to new books, pages, or folders, you can insert a marker into a topic and specify the icon you want to display for the book, page, or folder in your help system table of contents.

To customize a table of contents icon, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- TOCIconHTMLHelp for Microsoft HTML Help
- TOCIconOracleHelp for Oracle Help
- TOCIconJavaHelp for Sun JavaHelp
- TOCIconWWHelp for WebWorks Help

You can customize the appearance of table of contents icons for topics in Microsoft HTML Help, Sun JavaHelp, Oracle Help, and WebWorks help.

The following procedure provides an example of how to customize table of contents icons for topics in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for customizing table of contents icons for topics in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify a custom table of contents icon in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. *If you want to specify a custom table of contents icon for Microsoft HTML Help*, identify the number of the image you want to use for the table of contents image for the topic in the .hhp file for your Microsoft HTML Help project by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. Open the `ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.
 - c. Open the `ProjectName.hhp` file where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.
 - d. On the **Contents** tab, select a table of contents entry, and then click the **Pencil** icon.
 - e. On the **Advanced** tab, in the **Image index** field, use the up and down arrows to identify the table of contents image you want to use for the topic.
 - f. Note the number of the image you want to use for the table of contents image for the topic.

For example, if you want to use a question mark icon with a red star for the table of contents icon for new topics, note that the number for this icon is 10.

- g. Close HTML Help Workshop.

2. ***If you want to specify a custom table of contents icon for Oracle Help or Sun JavaHelp***, create the graphic file for the custom table of contents icon in .gif format. The default graphics used as Sun JavaHelp or Oracle Help table of contents icons are 17 x 17 pixels. The custom graphics you create for Sun JavaHelp or Oracle Help table of contents icons should also be 17 x 17 pixels. You can assign any name to the graphic files.
3. ***If you want to specify a custom table of content icon for WebWorks help***, create graphics files containing the collapsed and expanded versions of the icons you want to use, then save the graphic files in .gif format. The default graphics used as WebWorks Help table of contents icons are 17 x 17 pixels. The custom graphics you create for WebWorks Help table of contents icons should also be 17 x 17 pixels. You can assign any name to the graphic files.
4. Copy the graphic files you want to use as icons in the table of contents into the following folder:

Note: If the folder does not exist, first create the folder using the specified folder structure and then copy the graphic files you want to use as icons into the folder. You do not need to perform this step when specifying custom table of contents icons for Microsoft HTML Help.

- ***If you are generating Oracle Help***, copy the graphic files you want to use into the following folder:

ProjectName\Formats\Oracle Help\Files\images folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

- ***If you are generating Sun JavaHelp 1.1.3***, copy the graphic files you want to use into the following folder:

ProjectName\Formats\Sun Java Help 1.1.3\Files\images folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

- ***If you are generating Sun JavaHelp 2.0***, copy the graphic files you want to use into the following folder:

ProjectName\Formats\Sun Java Help 2.0\Files\images folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

- ***If you are generating WebWorks Help***, in your *ProjectName*\Files folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project, create a wwhelp\images subfolder and copy the graphic files you want to use into this folder. Your project file structure should be similar to the following structure:

ProjectName\Files\wwhelp\images, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

5. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the topic where you want to use the custom table of contents icon.
6. Insert your cursor into the heading for the topic.

7. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
8. In the **Marker Type** field, select the appropriate TOCIcon marker type from the drop-down list.
9. *If the appropriate TOCIcon marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
10. In the **Marker Text** field, type the following text:
 - *If you are generating Microsoft HTML Help*, type the number of the icon that you want to use for the table of contents image.

For example, if you want to use a question mark icon with a red star for the table of contents icon for new topics, type 10.
 - *If you are generating Oracle Help or Sun JavaHelp*, type the following text:

`images/TOCIcon.gif`

where `TOCIcon.gif` is the name of the table of contents icon you want to display for the topic.
 - *If you are generating WebWorks Help*, type the following text:

`c="collapsed.gif" e="expanded.gif"`

where `collapsed.gif` is the name of the icon you want to use when the table of contents entry is collapsed, and `expanded.gif` is the name of the icon you want to use when the table of contents entry is expanded. If the table of contents entry is for a page instead of a book, the entry will never be expanded, so you can omit the `e="expanded.gif"` portion of the entry for pages.

For example, you might create a special icon to highlight books that are new for a particular release of your WebWorks Help system. If you named these icons `newbookopen.gif` and `newbookclosed.gif`, you would type the following text into the **Value** field:

`c="newbookclosed.gif" e="newbookopen.gif"`
11. Click **New Marker**.
12. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
13. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

14. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the table of contents using the table of contents icon you specified for the topic. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Specifying Context Plug-ins in FrameMaker

You can specify Eclipse Help context plug-ins by using Context Plugin markers in your source documents. ePublisher places the context plug-ins you specify in your source documents in the `plugin.xml` file generated for each source document group you have in Document Manager. You can then have developers use the context plug-ins defined in `plugin.xml` files to call your Eclipse Help system as appropriate from Eclipse plug-ins.

For example, assume you have the following three top-level groups in Document Manager for your Eclipse Help system target:

- Component A group - contains the source documents for ComponentA Feature1 and ComponentA Feature2
- Component B group - contains the source documents for ComponentB Feature1 and ComponentB Feature 2
- Component C group - contains the source documents for ComponentC Feature1 and ComponentC Feature 2

You insert the following Context Plugin markers into the source documents for each group:

- ComponentAFeature1 and ComponentAFeature2 Context Plugin markers in source documents contained in the ComponentA group
- ComponentBFeature1 and ComponentBFeature2 Context Plugin markers in source documents contained in the ComponentB group
- ComponentCFeature1 and ComponentCFeature2 Context Plugin markers in source documents contained in the ComponentC group

When you generate your Eclipse Help system, ePublisher creates the following folder structure in the *ProjectName*\Output*TargetName* folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your ePublisher project, and *TargetName* is the name of your target:

- ComponentA folder, which contains a plugin.xml file with the following entries:

```
plugin="ComponentAFeature1ContextPlugin"
plugin="ComponentAFeature2ContextPlugin"
```
- ComponentB folder, which contains a plugin.xml file with the following entries:

```
plugin="ComponentBFeature1ContextPlugin"
plugin="ComponentBFeature2ContextPlugin"
```
- ComponentC folder, which contains a plugin.xml file with the following entries:

```
plugin="ComponentCFeature1ContextPlugin"
plugin="ComponentCFeature2ContextPlugin"
```

You can then provide the context plug-in IDs in your plugin.xml files to the appropriate Eclipse developers to use. The Eclipse developers use the context plug-ins defined in plugin.xml files to call your Eclipse Help system as appropriate from Eclipse plug-ins.

To specify a context plug-in in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Identify a topic in a source document where you want to insert the context plug-in.
2. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
3. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Context Plugin** from the drop-down list.
4. *If the Context Plugin marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
5. In the **Marker Text** field, type the appropriate ID for the context plug-in.

Note: If you are responsible for defining the ID, ensure you supply the context plug-in ID to your developers to use as appropriate for their Eclipse plug-ins. If your developers define the ID, use the context plug-in ID you obtained from your developers.

6. Click **New Marker**.
7. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
8. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

9. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher generated a `plugin.xml` file that contains the context plug-in IDs you specified by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. Open the *ProjectName* folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.
 - c. Open the group folder for a group that contains the source documents where you specified your context plug-in ID.
 - d. Open the `plugin.xml` file in Notepad and verify that the context plug-in IDs you specified in your source documents are listed in the `plugin.xml` file. Your context plug-in IDs should be listed in the Contexts area of the file. Following is an example of the how the context plug-in IDs you specified in your source documents should be displayed in the `plugin.xml` file:

```
<!-- Contexts -->
<!--      -->
<extension point="org.eclipse.help.contexts">
    <contexts file="contexts.xml"
plugin="ComponentAFeature1ContextPlugin" />
</extension>
<extension point="org.eclipse.help.contexts">
    <contexts file="contexts.xml"
plugin="ComponentAFeature2ContextPlugin" />
</extension>
```

Creating Accessible Online Content in FrameMaker

Accessible content is content that can be easily accessed by users with certain disabilities. This section explains how you can prepare your Adobe FrameMaker source documents to ensure your content is accessible to users using assistive technologies.

Understanding Accessible Content in FrameMaker

Images and tables are helpful ways to convey information to end users. However, users with disabilities often cannot access the important information provided by images and table layouts in online content. You should document images and other non-text items such as table layouts so that users using assistive technologies to access online content can access the information these items provide.

Content that must easily be accessed by people with disabilities must conform to certain guidelines published by both the W3C and the United States government in order to produce accessible online output, also known as Section 508 compliant output. These guidelines are intended to help writers produce accessible content.

You can use ePublisher to help you produce online content that conforms to the W3C Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 1.0 (WCAG), Section 508 of the U.S. Rehabilitation Act of 1998, and the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). If you are required to generate accessible content, typically you provide the following items in your online content:

- Alternate text and descriptions for all images and image maps. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in FrameMaker” on page 172.
- Long descriptions for all images. For more information, see “Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker” on page 176.
- Summaries for all tables. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text (Summaries) to Tables in FrameMaker” on page 185.

You may also choose to provide the following items in your online content:

- Alternate text for abbreviations. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in FrameMaker” on page 187.
- Alternate text for acronyms. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Acronyms in FrameMaker” on page 189.
- Citations for quotes. For more information, see “Providing Citations for Quotes in FrameMaker” on page 190.

You must prepare source documents and configure your ePublisher project in order to create accessible content. You prepare your source documents by inserting markers into your source documents and by applying character formats and paragraph formats. You configure accessibility settings in your ePublisher project. ePublisher uses the information in your source documents and your ePublisher project to generate accessible online output.

For more information about producing accessible content and to check your content further for compliance, see the following Web sites:

- For the complete W3C note on the WCAG, visit <http://www.w3c.org/TR/WCAG10-CORE-TECHS>.
- For information about the related Web Accessibility Initiative, visit <http://www.w3.org/WAI>.
- For information about Section 508 of the U.S. Rehabilitation Act of 1998, visit <http://www.w3.org/WAI/Policy/#508>.

Understanding Accessible Content Navigation in FrameMaker

Users can navigate through the accessible content using keys on the keyboard. The following output formats support navigation keys:

- Dynamic HTML
- Microsoft HTML Help
- Oracle Help
- WebWorks Help

Note: For the Dynamic HTML, navigation key behavior may vary based on the browser the user uses. For example, in Netscape and Mozilla, users must hold down the **Alt** key while pressing the navigation keys. In Internet Explorer, users must first hold down the **Alt** key while pressing the navigation key, and then press **Enter**.

The following table lists the how each output format supports navigation keys.

Navigation Key	Function	Format
1	Display the TOC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic HTML • WebWorks Help 5.0
2	Display the Index	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic HTML • WebWorks Help 5.0
3	Display the Search tab	WebWorks Help 5.0
4	Go to the previous page	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic HTML • Microsoft HTML Help • Oracle Help • WebWorks Help 5.0 <p>If you are using Microsoft HTML Help, Alt+4 works only if the topic pane has the focus. If the topic pane does not have the focus, you must press Alt+0 and then Alt+4.</p> <p>If you are using Oracle Help, you must press Enter after pressing Alt+4.</p>
5	Go to the next page	<p>Dynamic HTML, Microsoft HTML Help 1.x, Oracle Help, and WebWorks Help 5.0</p> <p>If you are using Microsoft HTML Help, the Alt+5 key works only if the topic pane has the focus. If the topic pane does not have the focus, you must press Alt+0 and then Alt+5.</p> <p>If you are using Oracle Help, you must press Enter after pressing Alt+5.</p>

Navigation Key	Function	Format
6	Shift the focus to the related topics list displayed at the bottom of the current page	WebWorks Help 5.0 After you press the 6 key, you can press Tab to cycle through the entries in the related topics list.
7	Display a blank feedback e-mail (equivalent to clicking the e-mail button in the toolbar frame)	WebWorks Help 5.0
8	Print the current page (equivalent to clicking the Print button in the toolbar frame)	WebWorks Help 5.0
9	Bookmark the current page (equivalent to clicking the Bookmark button in the toolbar frame)	WebWorks Help 5.0
10	Shift the focus to the topic frame (equivalent to clicking within the topic frame)	WebWorks Help 5.0

Validating Accessible Content in FrameMaker

After you configure your source documents and configure the appropriate settings, ePublisher uses Accessibility conformance reports to perform the following checks to verify that the generated output conforms to accessibility standards:

- Alternate text for all images
- Alternate text for all clickable regions in all image maps
- Long descriptions for all images
- Summaries for all tables

ePublisher does not verify that you have provided alternate text for abbreviations or acronyms or verify that you have included citations for quotes. For more information about understanding and using the Accessibility conformance reports ePublisher provides, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369, and “Generating Reports” on page 370.

Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in FrameMaker

This section provides information about how to create accessible images and image maps in your generated output by assigning alternate text to images.

Understanding Image and Image Map Alternate Text in FrameMaker

One of the largest accessibility challenges with online content today is the lack of alternative text for images and image maps. Sight-impaired users often use screen readers or refreshable Braille devices to read online content. However, when these assistive technologies come across images or image maps without alternative text, also known as alternate text, they are unable to provide users with information about the image or image map and its meaning.

The Web Content Accessibility Guidelines require that alternate text be provided for all images and image maps in online content. The alternate text is an image label that describes the image or each area of the image map. Online content should display alternate text for images and image maps when users perform the following actions:

- The user hovers the mouse pointer over an image or section of an image map.
- The user browser has been configured to disable display of images and image maps.
- The user browser is a text-only browser such as Lynx.
- The user uses assistive technology such as a screen reader.

The alternate text you assign to an image or sections of an image map should be as accurate and as succinct as possible and provide users with a brief description of the image and how the image relates to the page they are viewing. Make sure that your alternate text conveys all of the important information related to the image or image map section, but do not burden users with excessively long alternative text. Screen readers or refreshable Braille devices always read the alternative text, so if your page has several images or complex image maps with long descriptions, it can take a long time for the assistive devices to read image-heavy pages with long descriptions. If you need to provide a description of the image or image map section that is more than a few words or a few short sentences, you should provide a brief alternate text description of the image or image map section and then assign a longer description the image using either the `longdesc` attribute or a description. Once you specify a long description using the `longdesc` attribute, you can also optionally display a D link next to the image. For more information about assigning long descriptions to images, see “Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker” on page 176.

Assigning Alternate Text to Images in FrameMaker

To assign alternate text to an image, your Stationery and template must have the ImageAltText marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to assign alternate text to images in the most current version of FrameMaker. The Object Attribute method can be used with newer versions of FrameMaker.

To assign alternate text to an image in an Adobe FrameMaker source document using object attributes

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the anchored frame for the image to which you want to assign alternate text.
2. In the anchored frame that contains the image to which you want to assign alternate text, and complete the following:
 - a. Select the anchored frame that contains the image to which you want to assign an alternate name.
 - b. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Object Properties**.
 - c. Click **Object Attributes**.
 - d. In the **New or Changed Attribute** area, in the **Name** field, type **ImageAltText**.
 - e. In the **Definition** field, type the alternate text you want to assign to the image. Your text cannot exceed 255 characters.
 - f. Click **Add**.
 - g. Click **Set**.
 - h. Click **Set** again to close the window.

To assign alternate text to an image in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the anchored frame for the image to which you want to assign alternate text.
2. In the anchored frame that contains the image to which you want to assign alternate text, insert a text frame by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Tools** to display the graphic tools palette.
 - b. Click the **Text Frame** icon.
 - c. Drag the cursor over the portion of the image where you want to insert the text frame that will contain the ImageAltText marker.
 - d. In the Create New Text Frame window, in the **Number** field, type 1, and then click **Set**.
 - e. Click outside the image, and then insert your cursor in the text frame.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. In the **Marker Type** field, select **ImageAltText** from the drop-down list.

5. *If the **ImageAltText** marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
6. In the **Marker Text** field, type the alternate text you want to assign to the image.
7. Click **New Marker**.
8. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. Verify ePublisher assigned the alternate text you specified to the image when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the image to which you assigned alternate text in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the alternate text you specified is included in the `alt` tag for the image.

Assigning Alternate Text to Image Maps in FrameMaker

To assign alternate text to an image, your Stationery and template must have the `ImageAreaAltText` marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to assign alternate text to an image map in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for assigning alternate text to an image map in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To assign alternate text for an image map in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the anchored frame for the image map to which you want to assign alternate text.
2. In the anchored frame that contains the image map to which you want to assign alternate text, complete the following steps for *each* area of an image map:
 - a. Insert your cursor into the text frame that defines a clickable region on the image map.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - c. In the **Marker Type** field, select **ImageAreaAltText** from the drop-down list.
 - d. *If the ImageAreaAltText marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
 - e. In the **Marker Text** field, type the alternate text you want to assign to the image map area.
 - f. Click **New Marker**.
3. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
4. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
5. Verify ePublisher assigned the alternate text you specified to each area of the image map when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the image map to which you assigned alternate text in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the alternate text you specified is included in the `alt` tag for each area of the image map.

Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker

This section explains how to create accessible images in your generated output by assigning long descriptions to images.

Understanding Image Long Descriptions in FrameMaker

The Web Content Accessibility Guidelines and Section 508 guidelines require you to include long descriptions for each image in an HTML document. You can use the `longdesc` attribute and a long descriptions stored in an external `.txt` file to assign a long description to an image. When you use this approach, the long descriptions are referenced in the HTML `` tag in the `longdesc` attribute as shown in the following example:

```

```

The `longdesc` attribute in the `` tag provides a link to a separate page where a long description is available. The link is invisible to sighted users, but when a conformant screen reader application reads the `longdesc` attribute, it loads the file referenced in the `longdesc` attribute and reads it. In the previous example, the screen reader would load and read the `mission.txt` file.

ePublisher provides the following options for assigning long descriptions to images:

- You can use the `ImageLongDescText` marker to assign a long description to an image. With this method, you assign a long description to an image using a description you include in a marker you insert into your source document. For more information, see “Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker” on page 176.
- You can use the `ImageLongDescByRef` marker to assign a long description to an image by referencing a long description saved in an external text (`.txt`) file. With this method, you specify the path to the external text file in a marker. For more information, see “Using Text in External Files to Assign Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker” on page 181.

If you assign long descriptions to some, but not all of your images, you can use the `ImageLongDescNotReq` marker. Use this marker when you use accessibility reports to verify that all images have long description but you have certain images in your source document that do not require a long description. For more information, see “Excluding Images from Accessibility Report Checks in FrameMaker” on page 183.

Although using the `longdesc` attribute is recommended in the Web Content Accessibility Guidelines and in 508 guidelines, older screen readers and many current browsers do not support this attribute and few online content developers use this attribute. As a result, the `longdesc` attributed benefits a only a small number of users. Only users who use modern screen readers can access the `longdesc` attribute easily. Older screen readers did not support this attribute. In addition, even users who use the latest version of screen reader may be unfamiliar with the `longdesc` attribute and may not know how to access long descriptions using their screen reader because the `longdesc` attribute is used so infrequently in online content.

If you use the ImageLongDescText marker to assign long descriptions to images, as an interim solution ePublisher allows you to display a D link immediately after the image. The D link is an upper case letter D link that directs users to another page that contains the text you specified in the ImageLongDescText marker. Although a D link is not required for accessible Web pages, it can be used in addition to the `longdesc` attribute. The D link technique works in all browsers, but it is less elegant than using the `longdesc` attribute. Some users may be confused when they see a D link on the page, while other users will ignore the D link.

If you want to use D links in addition to the `longdesc` attribute when you generate output, your Stationery must have the D link option enabled. If you have permissions to modify target settings in ePublisher Express, you can enable the D link option setting in an ePublisher Express project. For more information about enabling the D link option in an ePublisher project, see “Specifying Accessibility Settings” on page 383. For more information about permissions required to modify target settings using ePublisher Express, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.

Specifying Long Descriptions for Images in FrameMaker

To assign a long description to an image, your Stationery and template must have the ImageLongDescText marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

When you use the ImageLongDescText marker to assign long descriptions to images, ePublisher generates an external text file that contains the long description you specify. When a conformant screen reader application reads the generated page, it loads the `.txt` file referenced in the `longdesc` attribute on the page and reads the file.

You can use the ImageLongDescText marker to assign long descriptions to images if your image descriptions do not exceed 255 characters. If your image long descriptions are longer than 255 characters, you must use an external `.txt` file and the ImageLongDescByRef marker to assign long descriptions to images, because Adobe FrameMaker limits the length of marker text to 255 characters. For more information, see “Using Text in External Files to Assign Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker” on page 181.

In addition, Adobe FrameMaker ignores carriage returns in marker text when generating MIF files. As result, if you use ImageLongDescText markers, each long description will be generated as a single paragraph.

The steps you use to assign long descriptions to images varies based on the version of Adobe FrameMaker you use. If you use Adobe FrameMaker 6.0, you use the ImageLongDescText marker. If you use Adobe FrameMaker 7.0 or later, you can use either the ImageLongDescText marker or an object attribute you create for the anchored frame to assign a long description to an image. For more information about long descriptions and D links, see “Specifying Long Descriptions for Images in FrameMaker” on page 178.

To assign a long description to an image using marker text in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the anchored frame for the image to which you want to assign a long description.
2. *If you are using Adobe FrameMaker 6.0*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Tools** to display the graphic tools palette.
 - b. Click the **Text Frame** icon.
 - c. Drag the cursor over the portion of the image where you want to insert the text frame that will contain the ImageLongDescText marker.
 - d. In the Create New Text Frame window, in the **Number** field, type 1, and then click **Set**.
 - e. Click outside the image, and then insert your cursor in the text frame.
 - f. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - g. In the **Marker Type** field, select **ImageLongDescText** from the drop-down list.
 - h. *If the ImageLongDescText marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
 - i. In the **Marker Text** field, type the long description you want to assign to the image. Your description cannot exceed 255 characters.
 - j. Click **New Marker**.

3. *If you are using Adobe FrameMaker 7.0*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Select the anchored frame that contains the image to which you want to assign a long description using an external file.
 - b. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Object Properties**.
 - c. Click **Object Attributes**.
 - d. In the **New or Changed Attribute** area, in the **Name** field, type **ImageLongDescText**.
 - e. In the **Definition** field, type the long description you want to assign to the image. Your description cannot exceed 255 characters.
 - f. Click **Add**.
 - g. Click **Set**.
 - h. Click **Set** again to close the window.
4. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
5. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
6. Verify ePublisher assigned the long description to the image by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName\images* folder, verify that ePublisher created a .txt file that contains the long description you specified in the ImageLongDescText marker, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.

 For example, if you specified a long description for *ImageName.png*, verify that ePublisher created an *ImageName.txt* file in the *images* folder, where *ImageName* is the name of the image to which you assigned a long description.
 - c. In the *TargetName\ProjectName* folder, open the page that contains the image to which you assigned the long description in Notepad and verify that the longdesc attribute references the *ImageName.txt* file ePublisher created for the image, where *TargetName* is the name of your target, *ProjectName* is the name of your project, and *ImageName* is the name of the image to which you assigned a long description.
 - d. *If you used the ImageLongDescText marker and the Stationery designer configured your Stationery to support D links*, open the page in a browser, verify that the D link displays in the browser, and then click the D link and verify that a page opens that displays the long description that you specified in the **ImageLongDescText** marker.

Using Text in External Files to Assign Long Descriptions to Images in FrameMaker

Assign long descriptions to images using external files when you have image descriptions that exceed 255 characters or if you want to use image descriptions in external text files to assign long descriptions to images.

To assign a long description to an image, your Stationery and template must have the ImageLongDescText marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The steps you use to assign long descriptions to image varies based on the version of Adobe FrameMaker you use. If you use Adobe FrameMaker 6.0, you use the ImageLongDescByRef marker. If you use Adobe FrameMaker 7.0 or later, you use an object attribute you create for the anchored frame to assign a long description to an image.

To assign a long description to an image using an external file in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. Create a .txt file that contains each image long description.
2. Place each image long description text file in a folder in the *ProjectName\Formats\TargetName\Files* folder for your project, where *ProjectName* is the name of your ePublisher project and *TargetName* is the name of your target.

For example, place the each image long description in the following location:

```
ProjectName\Formats\TargetName\Files\longdescriptions\imagelongdescription.txt
```

where *ProjectName* is the name of your ePublisher project, *TargetName* is the name of your target, *longdescriptions* is the name of the folder where you placed the image long description, and *imagelongdescription* is the name of the .txt file that contains the image long description.

3. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the anchored frame for the image to which you want to assign a long description.

4. *If you are using Adobe FrameMaker 6.0*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Tools** to display the graphic tools palette.
 - b. Click the **Text Frame** icon.
 - c. Drag the cursor over the portion of the image where you want to insert the text frame that will contain the ImageLongDescByRef marker.
 - d. In the Create New Text Frame window, in the **Number** field, type 1, and then click **Set**.
 - e. Click outside the image, and then insert your cursor in the text frame.
 - f. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
 - g. In the **Marker Type** field, select **ImageLongDescByRef** from the drop-down list.
 - h. *If the ImageLongDescByRef marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
 - i. In the **Marker Text** field, type the path to the .txt file that contains the long description you want to assign to the image.

For example, type:

```
./longdescriptions/imagelongdescription.txt
```

where *longdescriptions* is the name of the folder where you placed the image long description, and *imagelongdescription* is the name of the .txt file that contains the image long description.
 - j. Click **New Marker**.

5. **If you are using Adobe FrameMaker 7.0 or later**, complete the following steps:

- a. Select the anchored frame that contains the image to which you want to assign a long description using an external file.
- b. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Object Properties**.
- c. Click **Object Attributes**.
- d. In the **New or Changed Attribute** area, in the **Name** field, type **ImageLongDescByRef**.
- e. In the **Definition** field, type the path to the `.txt` file that contains the long description you want to assign to the image.

For example, type:

```
./longdescriptions/imagelongdescription.txt
```

where *longdescriptions* is the name of the folder where you placed the image long description, and *imagelongdescription* is the name of the `.txt` file that contains the image long description.

- f. Click **Add**.
 - g. Click **Set**.
 - h. Click **Set** again to close the window.
6. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher assigned the long description to the image using the long description in the external file when it generated output by completing the following steps:
- a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName\ProjectName* folder, open the page that contains the image to which you assigned the long description using an external file in Notepad and verify that the `longdesc` attribute references the external text file that contains the long description for the image, where *TargetName* is the name of your target, and *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

Excluding Images from Accessibility Report Checks in FrameMaker

In some instances, alternate text is sufficient for an image, and assigning a long description to an image in addition to alternate text would be redundant. However, you may have configured Accessibility reports to check for images without long descriptions and notify you when an image does not have a long description.

In this scenario, while you want an Accessibility report to notify you when you have an image without a long description, you do not want to be notified when you deliberately did not assign a long description to an image because assigning a both a long description and alternative text would be redundant. To address this issue, you can use the `ImageLongDescNotReq` marker to exclude an image that deliberately does not have a long description from validation when you generate Accessibility reports. For more information about Accessibility reports and configuring and generating Accessibility reports, see “Understanding Accessibility Reports” on page 366, “Configuring Reports” on page 369, and “Generating Reports” on page 370.

To exclude images without long descriptions from Accessibility reports, your Stationery and template must have the `ImageLongDescNotReq` marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to exclude images without long descriptions from Accessibility report checks in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for excluding images without long descriptions from Accessibility report checks in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To exclude an image without a long description from Accessibility report checks in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the anchored frame for the image without a long description that you want to exclude from an Accessibility report check.
2. On the **Graphics** menu, click **Tools** to display the graphic tools palette.
3. Click the **Text Frame** icon.
4. Drag the cursor over the portion of the image where you want to insert the text frame that will contain the `ImageLongDescNotReq` marker.
5. In the Create New Text Frame window, in the **Number** field, type 1, and then click **Set**.
6. Click outside the image, and then insert your cursor in the text frame.
7. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
8. In the **Marker Type** field, select **ImageLongDescNotReq** from the drop-down list.
9. *If the `ImageLongDescNotReq` marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.

10. In the **Marker Text** field, do not enter any text. You do not need to enter any text in this field when you insert a `ImageLongDescNotReq` marker.
11. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
12. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
13. Generate an Accessibility report and confirm that ePublisher did not generate an `Image is missing a long description` message for the image. For more information about generating Accessibility reports and Accessibility report messages, see “Generating Reports” on page 370 and “Accessibility Report Messages” on page 371.

Assigning Alternate Text (Summaries) to Tables in FrameMaker

Tables, just like images, are a way to visually display information. Although tables typically contain text, the purpose of the table is often not evident from text alone. The organization and display of the table may contain information that is not evident to assistive technologies. However, through the use of table summaries, assistive technologies can convey useful information to users about tables. The Web Content Accessibility Guidelines recommend that you provide summary text for each table in an HTML document. Table alternate text, or table summaries, provide users with information about what type of information the table contains.

You can create accessible tables by typing the table summary into a `TableSummary` marker. When ePublisher generates content, ePublisher puts the table summary you specify into the table in the `summary` attribute.

To assign alternate text to tables, your Stationery and template must have the `TableSummary` marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to assign alternate text to tables in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for assigning alternate text to tables in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To assign table summaries in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the table to which you want to assign a table summary.
2. Insert your cursor in front of the table.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. In the **Marker Type** field, select **TableSummary** from the drop-down list.

5. *If the **TableSummary** marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
6. In the **Marker Text** field, type the table summary you want to assign to the table.
7. Click **New Marker**.
8. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. Verify ePublisher assigned the table summary you specified to the table when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the table to which you assigned a table summary in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the table summary you specified is included in the *summary* attribute for the table.

Excluding Tables from Accessibility Report Checks in FrameMaker

Tables used specifically for layout may not need a table summary. For example, if you use a table for layout, you probably would not assign a table summary to the table. However, you may have configured Accessibility reports to check for tables without table summaries and notify you when a table does not have a table summary.

In this scenario, while you want an Accessibility report to notify you when you have a table without a table summary, you do not want to be notified when you deliberately did not assign a table summary to a table because a table summary is not required. To address this issue, you can use the **TableSummaryNotReq** marker to exclude a table that deliberately does not have a table summary from validation when you generate Accessibility reports. For more information about Accessibility reports and configuring and generating Accessibility reports, see “Understanding Accessibility Reports” on page 366, “Configuring Reports” on page 369, and “Generating Reports” on page 370.

To exclude tables from Accessibility report checks, your Stationery and FrameMaker template must have the **TableSummaryNotReq** marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to exclude tables without table summaries from Accessibility report checks in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for excluding tables without table summaries from Accessibility report checks in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To exclude a table without a table summary from Accessibility report checks in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the table without a table summary that you want to exclude from an Accessibility report check.
2. Insert your cursor in front of the table.
3. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. In the **Marker Type** field, select **TableSummaryNotReq** from the drop-down list.
5. *If the **TableSummaryNotReq** marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
6. In the **Marker Text** field, do not enter any text. You do not need to enter any text in this field when you insert a **TableSummaryNotReq** marker.
7. Click **New Marker**.
8. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. Generate the Accessibility report and confirm that ePublisher did not generate an **Table is missing a table summary** message for the table. For more information about generating Accessibility reports and Accessibility report messages, see “Generating Reports” on page 370 and “Accessibility Report Messages” on page 371.

Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in FrameMaker

Abbreviations are often used in written communication. Using an Abbreviation character format and an AbbreviationTitle marker, you can specify alternate text for abbreviations. For example, if your source document includes an abbreviation such as SS#, you can specify Social Security Number as alternate text for the abbreviation. When you use an AbbreviationTitle marker and Abbreviation character format to specify alternate text for an abbreviation, ePublisher adds the abbreviation alternate text you specify to the `title` attribute of the `abbr` tag in the output.

Following is an example of the HTML code produced when you specify Social Security Number as alternate text for SS#.

```
<th>First name</th>
<th><abbr title="Social Security Number">SS#</abbr></th>
```

To assign alternate text to abbreviations, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Abbreviation character format
- AbbreviationTitle marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify alternate text for abbreviations in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for specifying alternate text for abbreviations in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify alternate text for an abbreviation in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the abbreviation for which you want to specify alternate text.
2. Apply the Abbreviation character format to the abbreviation text.
3. Insert your cursor anywhere inside the abbreviation.
4. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
5. In the **Marker Type** field, select **AbbreviationTitle** from the drop-down list.
6. *If the AbbreviationTitle marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
7. In the **Marker Text** field, type the abbreviation alternate text.
8. Click **New Marker**.
9. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
10. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

11. Verify ePublisher assigned the abbreviation alternate text you specified when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the abbreviation to which you assigned alternate text in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the alternate text you specified for the abbreviation is included in the `abbr` tag in the `title` attribute.

Assigning Alternate Text to Acronyms in FrameMaker

Acronyms are often used in written communication. Using an Acronym character format and an AcronymTitle marker, you can specify alternate text for acronyms. For example, if your document includes an acronym like NATO you can specify North Atlantic Treaty Organization as alternate text for the acronym. When you use an AcronymTitle marker and an Acronym character format to specify alternate text for an acronym, ePublisher adds the acronym alternate text you specify to the `title` attribute of the `acronym` tag in the output.

Following is an example of the HTML code produced when you specify North Atlantic Treaty Organization as alternate text for NATO.

```
<p><acronym title="North Atlantic Treaty Organization">NATO</acronym> is a
military alliance.<p>
```

To assign alternate text to acronyms, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Acronym character format
- AcronymTitle marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify alternate text for acronyms in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for specifying alternate text for acronyms in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify alternate text for an acronym in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the acronym for which you want to specify alternate text.
2. Apply the Acronym character format to the acronym text.
3. Insert your cursor anywhere inside the acronym.
4. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
5. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Acronym** from the drop-down list.
6. *If the Acronym marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
7. In the **Marker Text** field, type the acronym alternate text.
8. Click **New Marker**.
9. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
10. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
11. Verify ePublisher assigned the acronym alternate text you specified when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the acronym to which you assigned alternate text in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the alternate text you specified for the acronym is included in the acronym tag in the `title` attribute.

Providing Citations for Quotes in FrameMaker

A **citation** is a reference or footnote to a book, article, or other material that specifies the source from which a quotation was borrowed. A citation contains all the information necessary to identify and locate the work. Using a Citation character format and the Citation marker, you can specify citations for quotes that enable users to go to a Web site that contains additional information about the quote.

Following is an example of the HTML code produced when you specify a citation for a quote.

```
<blockquote cite="http://shakespeare.mit.edu/lll/full.html">
<p>Remuneration! O! that's the Latin word for three farthings.
--- William Shakespeare (Love's Labor Lost).</p> </blockquote>
```

To provide citations for quotes, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Citation character format
- Citation marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify citations for quotes in Adobe FrameMaker source documents using unstructured Adobe FrameMaker 7.2. Steps for specifying citations for quotes in Adobe FrameMaker may be different in other versions of Adobe FrameMaker.

To specify citations for quotes in an Adobe FrameMaker source document

1. In your Adobe FrameMaker source document, locate the quotation for which you want to specify a citation.
2. *If the quotation is a phrase within a paragraph*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Apply the Citation character format to the quotation phrase.
 - b. Insert your cursor anywhere inside the quotation phrase.
 - c. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
3. *If the quotation is a full paragraph*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor into the paragraph.
 - b. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Citation** from the drop-down list.
5. *If the Citation marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in FrameMaker” on page 93.
6. In the **Marker Text** field, type the URL for the citation.

7. Click **New Marker**.
8. Save your Adobe FrameMaker source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. Verify ePublisher created the citation you specified when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the quotation for which you specified a quotation in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the citation you specified for the quotation is included in the `cite` attribute.

Troubleshooting FrameMaker issues

Occasionally there might be issues with the source documents you are using. Below is a list linking to the wiki solutions website that will help you troubleshoot each one:

Issue	For more information, see...
If you are trying to use smart quotes	Character Mapping in mapentrysets.xml
If you are trying to turn off auto-hyphenation	Turning off Auto-hyphenation
If you are using autonumbering in anchored frames	Autonumbered Paragraphs
If you receive a “Cannot Duplicate Document” upon generation	Cannot Duplicate Document
If you receive a “Cannot Initialize API” message opening FrameMaker	Cannot Initialize API
If you are working with Change Bars	Change Bars
If you receive the “Error Communicating with FrameMaker” message upon generating	Error Communicating with FrameMaker
If you are not seeing your filename Markers in ePublisher	Filename markers are not working
If you are seeing unwanted files in the temp directory upon generating	Files being created in Temp directory
If you are trying to use an image as a bullet	Using an image and text together as a paragraph bullet

Issue	For more information, see...
If you are trying to import an XLS file into FrameMaker	Problems with Imported Excel files
If you are trying to link to an external PDF	Creating links outside of project structure
If you are using multiple TOC files in FrameMaker	FrameMaker books with multiple TOC, Index, or Front-matter files
If your title page material is not ordered properly	Title page material not ordered properly
If you are having unexpected paragraph ordering with multiple text flows	FrameMaker paragraphs in different text flows have unexpected order in HTML
If you are wanting to turn unbulleted text to bulleted text in the output	How do I turn regular FrameMaker text into bulleted text in my output?
If you are working with structured content in text-boxes	Structured Elements in Text Boxes
If you notice that some paragraphs in your output are formatting differently than others bearing the same style name	Unexpected changes in font size or other formatting for certain paragraphs
If you notice a few lines of code that are very small at the end of the HTML page from the FM document,	Unexpected Code from FrameMaker plugin

Preparing Microsoft Word Source Documents

5

If you want to implement online content features in your generated output, you need to prepare your Microsoft Word source documents for output generation. This section explains how to prepare your Microsoft Word source documents. This section assumes that you use Microsoft Word templates prepared by a Stationery designer. Using Microsoft Word templates ensures that content in your source documents is formatted consistently and can be used effectively by ePublisher to generate output. For more information about preparing Microsoft Word templates, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Checklist: Preparing Word Source Documents

Use the following checklist to help you prepare your Microsoft Word source documents.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task	For more information, see...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Review the online features you can implement and verify which online features your Stationery supports.	"Implementing Online Features in Word" on page 197
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. Obtain your latest templates and apply the templates to your source documents.	"Obtaining and Applying the Latest Microsoft Word Template" on page 203
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. Install the WebWorks Transit Menu for Microsoft Word.	"Working with the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word" on page 204
<input type="checkbox"/>	4. Review any tables in your source documents and prepare your tables for output generation as needed.	"Working with Tables in Word" on page 209
<input type="checkbox"/>	5. Review any images in your source documents and prepare your images for output generation.	"Working with Images in Word" on page 211
<input type="checkbox"/>	6. If you want to include an index , prepare your source files for index generation.	"Creating Index Entries in Word" on page 224

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task	For more information, see...
<input type="checkbox"/>	7. If you want to use variables , insert variables in your source documents.	"Using Variables in Word" on page 225
<input type="checkbox"/>	8. If you want to use conditions , apply conditions to content in your source documents.	"Using Conditions in Word" on page 229
<input type="checkbox"/>	9. If you want to specify file names for output files , insert Filename markers in your source documents.	"Specifying Output File Names in Word" on page 236
<input type="checkbox"/>	10. If you want to create context-sensitive help , insert TopicAlias markers in your source documents.	"Creating Context-Sensitive Help in Word" on page 241
<input type="checkbox"/>	11. If you want to create popup windows , insert hyperlinks and then insert Popup markers or apply Popup paragraph styles to content in your source documents.	"Creating Popup Windows in Word" on page 245
<input type="checkbox"/>	12. If you want to create expand/collapse sections , apply the Expand/Collapse paragraph style and insert DropDownEnd markers in your source documents.	"Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in Word" on page 252
<input type="checkbox"/>	13. If you want to create related topics , apply the Related Topics paragraph style to content in your source documents.	"Creating Related Topics in Word" on page 254
<input type="checkbox"/>	14. If you want to specify categories or labels for Wiki pages , insert WikiCategory markers in your source documents.	"Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in Word" on page 257
<input type="checkbox"/>	15. If you want to create See Also links , insert SeeAlso markers in your source documents.	"Creating See Also Links in Word" on page 259
<input type="checkbox"/>	16. If you want to create meta tag keywords for pages , insert Keywords markers in your source documents.	"Creating Meta Tag Keywords in Word" on page 262
<input type="checkbox"/>	17. If you want to use multiple page designs , insert PageStyle markers in your source documents.	"Assigning Custom Page Styles in Word" on page 264
<input type="checkbox"/>	18. If you want to create What's This Help , also known as field-level help, insert WhatIsThisID markers in your source documents.	"Creating What's This (Field-Level) Help in Word" on page 265

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task	For more information, see...
<input type="checkbox"/>	19. If you want to open certain topics in a custom window , insert WindowType markers in your source documents.	"Opening Topics in Custom Windows in Word" on page 267
<input type="checkbox"/>	20. If you want to customize the table of contents icons for specific topics , insert TOCIcon markers in your source documents.	"Customizing Table of Contents Icons in Word" on page 268
<input type="checkbox"/>	21. If you want to specify context plug-ins for Eclipse help systems , insert Context Plugin markers in your source documents.	"Specifying Context Plug-ins in Word" on page 272
<input type="checkbox"/>	22. If you want to create accessible online content , insert the appropriate markers and apply the appropriate paragraph formats and character formats to images, tables, abbreviations, acronyms, and citations in your source documents.	"Creating Accessible Online Content in Word" on page 274

Implementing Online Features in Word

Implement online features in your output by preparing your Microsoft Word source documents with custom marker types, paragraph styles, and character styles defined by the Stationery designer for your Stationery. These markers and styles define the presentation and behavior of your online content. For example, markers can define the name of the file generated for a topic. Formats can define how content displays online.

Understanding Custom Marker Types in Word

ePublisher projects use the custom marker types to implement online features when generating output. Custom markers are created using custom marker types available in the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word. ePublisher inserts markers based on marker types as field codes in your Microsoft Word source documents.

Before you begin using custom marker types to implement online features, talk to the Stationery designer and verify which online features your Stationery supports. Your Stationery only recognizes the custom marker types defined by the Stationery designer in your Stationery. If you try to implement online features using custom marker types not supported in your Stationery, ePublisher does not recognize these items when generating output.

When the Stationery designer creates the Stationery, the Stationery designer can use the default name for a custom marker type or the Stationery designer can use a different name for the customer marker type. The following table lists the default names of custom marker types used to implement online features. Always verify with the Stationery designer the names of the custom marker types you should use when implementing online features before you use these items in your source documents. If you need to create a custom marker type to implement an online feature, verify with the Stationery designer that your Stationery supports the custom marker type before you create the custom marker type and insert and use the custom marker in a source document. For more information about creating custom marker types, see “Creating Custom Marker Types Using the WebWorks Transit Menu in Word” on page 207.

Marker Type	Description
AbbreviationTitle marker type	Specifies abbreviation alternate text for browsers to display for abbreviations such as SS# when a user hovers over the abbreviation in output. Screen readers also can read the abbreviation alternate text. Used in combination with the Abbreviation character style. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in Word” on page 292.
AcronymTitle marker type	Specifies acronym alternate text for browsers to display for acronyms such as HTML when a user hovers over the acronym in output. Screen readers can also read the acronym alternate text. Used in combination with the Acronym character style. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Acronyms in Word” on page 293.
Citation marker type	Specifies the source of a quote using a fully qualified Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) when a user hovers over the quote in output. Screen readers can also read the URI for the quote. Used in combination with the Citation character style. For more information, see “Providing Citations for Quotes in Word” on page 295.
Context Plugin marker type	Specifies context plug-ins for Eclipse help systems. Other Eclipse plug-ins can use the context plug-in IDs to call the Eclipse help system. For more information, see “Specifying Context Plug-ins in Word” on page 272.
DropDownEnd marker type	Marks the end of an expand/collapse section. Used in conjunction with an Expand/Collapse paragraph style. For more information, see “Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in Word” on page 252.
Filename marker type	Specifies the name of an output file for a page or an image. For more information, see “Specifying Output File Names in Word” on page 236.
GraphicScale marker type	Specifies a percentage to use to resize an image, such as 50 or 75 percent, in generated output. For more information, see “Assigning Image Scales in Word” on page 219.
GraphicStyle marker type	Specifies the name of a image style defined in a project to apply to an image. This marker type is an internal marker type that is not displayed in Stationery Designer. You cannot create a marker type with a different name and assign it this functionality. For more information, see “Assigning Image Styles in Word” on page 221.

Marker Type	Description
Hypertext marker type	Specifies a link using the <code>newlink</code> and <code>gotolink</code> commands in Adobe FrameMaker. This marker type is a default Adobe FrameMaker marker type ePublisher automatically maps.
ImageAltText marker type	Specifies alternate text for an image. This text is added to the <code>alt</code> attribute of the <code>img</code> tag in the output. Screen readers use this text when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Images in Word” on page 278.
ImageAreaAltText marker type	Specifies alternate text for clickable regions in an image map. This text is added to the <code>alt</code> attribute of the <code>img</code> tag in the output. Screen readers use this text when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Image Maps in Word” on page 279.
ImageLongDescByRef marker type	Specifies the path to the file that contains the long description for an image. This text is added to the <code>longdesc</code> attribute of the <code>img</code> tag in the output. Screen readers read this description when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in Word” on page 280.
ImageLongDescNotReq marker type	Specifies that a long description is not required for an image, which bypasses this accessibility check for the image when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Excluding Images from Accessibility Report Checks in Word” on page 287.
ImageLongDescText marker type	Specifies the long description for an image. This text is added to the <code>longdesc</code> attribute of the <code>img</code> tag in the output. Screen readers read this description when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Specifying Long Descriptions for Images in Word” on page 282.
Keywords marker type	Specifies the keywords to include in the <code>meta</code> tag for the topic. The <code>meta</code> tag improves searchability on the Web. For more information, see “Creating Meta Tag Keywords in Word” on page 262.
PageStyle marker type	Specifies the name of a page style defined in the project to apply to a topic. This marker type is an internal marker type that is not displayed in Stationery Designer. You cannot create a marker type with a different name and assign it this functionality. For more information, see “Assigning Custom Page Styles in Word” on page 264.
PassThrough	Specifies that ePublisher place the contents of the marker directly into the generated output without processing the content in any way. For example, you could use a PassThrough marker if you wanted to embed HTML code within your generated output.
Popup marker type	Specifies the start of the content to include in a popup window. The content is displayed in a popup window when you hover over the link. When you click the link in some output formats, the topic where the popup text is stored, such as the glossary, is displayed. For more information, see “Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in Word” on page 250.
PopupEnd marker type	Marks the end of the content to include in a popup window. For more information, see “Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in Word” on page 250.

Marker Type	Description
PopupOnly marker type	Specifies the start of the content to include in only a popup window. Browsers display the content in a popup window when you hover over or click the link. For more information, see “Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in Word” on page 250.
RubiComposite marker type	No longer supported.
SeeAlsoKeyword marker type	Specifies an internal identifier for a topic. SeeAlsoLink markers in other topics can list this identifier to create a link to this topic. Used in conjunction with a See Also paragraph style or character style. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in Word” on page 259.
SeeAlsoLink marker type	Identifies an internal identifier from another topic to include in the list of See Also links in this topic. Used in conjunction with a See Also paragraph style or character style. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in Word” on page 259.
SeeAlsoLinkDisplayType marker type	Specifies whether to display the target topics on a popup menu or in a window. By default, the links are displayed in the Topics Found window. To display a popup menu, set the value to <code>menu</code> . This marker type is supported only in HTML Help. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in Word” on page 259.
SeeAlsoLinkWindow-Type marker type	Specifies the name of the window defined in the <code>.hhp</code> file, such as <code>TriPane</code> or <code>Main</code> , that the topic opens in when the user clicks the link. This marker type is supported only in HTML Help. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in Word” on page 259.
TableStyle marker type	Specifies the name of a table style to apply to a table. This marker type is an internal marker type that is not displayed in the Style Designer as a marker. You cannot create a marker type with a different name and assign it this functionality. For more information, see “Applying Table Styles in Word” on page 209.
TableSummary marker type	Specifies an alternate text summary for a table, which is used when you create accessible content. This text is added to the <code>summary</code> attribute of the <code>table</code> tag in the output. Screen readers read this description when you create accessible content. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text (Summaries) to Tables in Word” on page 290.
TableSummaryNotReq marker type	Specifies that a summary is not required for a table, which bypasses this accessibility check for that table. For more information, see “Excluding Tables from Accessibility Report Checks in Word” on page 291.
TOCIconHTMLHelp marker type	Identifies the image to use as the table of contents icon for a topic in the HTML Help output format. For more information, see “Customizing Table of Contents Icons in Word” on page 268.
TOCIconJavaHelp marker type	Identifies the image to use as the table of contents icon for a topic in the Sun JavaHelp output format. For more information, see “Customizing Table of Contents Icons in Word” on page 268.
TOCIconOracleHelp marker type	Identifies the image to use as the table of contents icon for a topic in the Oracle Help output format. For more information, see “Customizing Table of Contents Icons in Word” on page 268.

Marker Type	Description
TOCIconWWHelp marker type	Identifies the image to use as the table of contents icon for a topic in the WebWorks Help output format. For more information, see “Customizing Table of Contents Icons in Word” on page 268.
TopicAlias marker type	Specifies an internal identifier for a topic that can be used to create a context-sensitive link to that topic. For more information, see “Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in Word” on page 243.
Topic Description marker type	Specifies a topic description for a context-sensitive help topic in Eclipse help systems. For more information, see “Creating Context-Sensitive Help in Word” on page 241.
WhatIsThisID marker type	Identifies a What’s This help internal identifier for creating context-sensitive What’s This field-level help for Microsoft HTML Help. For more information, see “Creating What’s This (Field-Level) Help in Word” on page 265.
WikiCategory marker type	Specifies the category or label you want to assign to a topic when generating Wiki output. For more information, see “Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in Word” on page 257.
WindowType marker type	Specifies the name of the window defined in the Help project that the topic should be displayed in. In Microsoft HTML Help, the window names are defined in the .hhp file. This marker type is supported in Microsoft HTML Help and Oracle Help. For more information, see “Opening Topics in Custom Windows in Word” on page 267.

Understanding Paragraph and Character Formats in Word

ePublisher projects use the paragraph styles and character styles defined by the Stationery designer to implement online features when generating output. Before you begin using paragraph styles and character styles to implement online features, talk to the Stationery designer and verify which online features your Stationery supports. Your Stationery only recognizes the paragraph styles and character styles defined by the Stationery designer in your Stationery. If you try to implement online features using paragraph styles and character styles not supported in your Stationery, ePublisher does not recognize these items when generating output.

When the Stationery designer creates the Stationery, the Stationery designer specifies the names of paragraph styles and character styles used to implement an online feature. Consult with the Stationery designer to obtain the names of the paragraph styles and character styles defined by the Stationery designer to support each online feature you want to implement.

The following table lists the default names of paragraph styles and character styles used to implement online features. Always verify with the Stationery designer the names of the styles formats and character styles you should use when implementing online features before you use these items in your source documents.

style	Description
AbbreviationTitle character style	Specifies abbreviation alternate text for browsers to display for abbreviations such as SS# when a user hovers over the abbreviation in output. Screen readers also can read the abbreviation alternate text. Used in combination with the AbbreviationTitle marker type. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in Word” on page 292.
AcronymTitle character style	Specifies acronym alternate text for browsers to display for acronyms such as HTML when a user hovers over the acronym in output. Screen readers can also read the acronym alternate text. Used in combination with the AcronymTitle marker type. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Acronyms in Word” on page 293.
Citation character style	Specifies the source of a quote using a fully qualified Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) when a user hovers over the quote in output. Screen readers can also read the URI for the quote. Used in combination with the Citation marker type. For more information, see “Providing Citations for Quotes in Word” on page 295.
Expand/Collapse paragraph style	Specifies the content you want to include in an expand/collapse section. Used in conjunction with a DropDownEnd marker type. For more information, see “Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in Word” on page 252.
Popup paragraph style	Specifies the popup content to display in both a popup window and in a standard help topic. Applied to the first paragraph of popup content. For more information, see “Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in Word” on page 252.
Popup Append paragraph style	Specifies the popup content to display in a popup window and in a standard help topic. Applied to additional popup paragraphs when you have more than one paragraph of popup content. For more information, see “Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in Word” on page 252.
Popup Only paragraph style	Specifies the popup content to display in only a popup window. Applied to the first paragraph of popup content. For more information, see “Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in Word” on page 252.

style	Description
Popup Only Append paragraph style	Specifies the popup content to display in only a popup window. Applied to additional popup paragraphs when you have more than one paragraph of popup content. For more information, see “Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in Word” on page 252.
Related Topic paragraph style	Specifies related topics links. For more information, see “Creating Related Topics in Word” on page 254.
See Also character style	Specifies the text you want to include in a See Also button. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in Word” on page 259.
See Also paragraph style	Specifies the text you want to include in a See Also inline text link. For more information, see “Creating See Also Links in Word” on page 259.

Obtaining and Applying the Latest Microsoft Word Template

An efficient, effective, and consistent ePublisher online content generation process relies upon the use of templates. Templates define paragraph, character, and table styles and standards. Templates may also contain standard variables and cross-reference definitions that you can use when creating and working with source documents used to generate online content. Templates help control the look and feel of source documents and generated output across multiple writers, multiple projects, and multiple types of generated output.

The ePublisher content generation process assumes that you use marker types and paragraph, character, and table styles defined in a Microsoft Word template prepared by a Stationery designer as you create content and format your source documents. Using Microsoft Word templates and the marker types and paragraph, character, and table styles and other layout styles and characteristics defined in templates ensures that you format content in your source documents consistently and also ensures ePublisher can use your source documents effectively to generate output.

If your source documents do not use templates or do not use the same marker types, styles and standards defined in your Stationery by the Stationery designer, your generated output may not conform to the styles and standards defined by the Stationery designer for output. You may also not be able to implement some online features if you do not use the correct templates or the correct marker types and styles defined in the templates.

As a part of preparing your Microsoft Word source documents for output generation, ensure your source documents use the correct Microsoft Word templates from the Stationery designer and you have applied all paragraph, character, and table styles specified in the template correctly. For more information about obtaining and applying the correct Microsoft Word templates for your project, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Working with the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word

This section explains how to work with the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word. For more information about using the WebWorks Transit menu to prepare Microsoft Word documents for output generation, see “Checklist: Preparing Word Source Documents” on page 195.

Understanding the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word

The WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word allows you to insert the following items into your Microsoft Word source documents:

- Markers, including filename markers and TopicAlias markers. For more information about markers in Microsoft Word, see “Understanding Custom Marker Types in Word” on page 197.
- Conditions. For more information about conditions in Microsoft Word, see “Using Conditions in Word” on page 229.

Writers authoring content in Adobe FrameMaker do not use the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word.

Installing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word

You can install the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word when you install ePublisher Express by selecting the **Install the WebWorks Transit menu plug-in for Microsoft Word** check box. For more information about installing the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word during an ePublisher Express installation, see “Installing ePublisher Components” on page 24.

If you did not install the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word during your ePublisher Express installation, you can manually install the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word. For more information about manually installing the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word, see “Manually Installing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Microsoft Word” on page 205.

After you install the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word, you must initialize the WebWorks Transit menu before you can use it. For more information about initializing the menu, see “Initializing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Microsoft Word” on page 205.

Manually Installing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Microsoft Word

When you installed ePublisher Express, the ePublisher installer gave you an option to install the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word. If you did not select the **Install the WebWorks Transit menu plug-in for Microsoft Word** check box when you installed ePublisher Express, then Microsoft Word will not display the WebWorks Transit menu. Without the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word, you cannot create and apply conditions and embed markers in your Microsoft Word source documents.

If you did not choose to install the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word when you installed ePublisher Express, you can manually install the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word.

To manually install the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word:

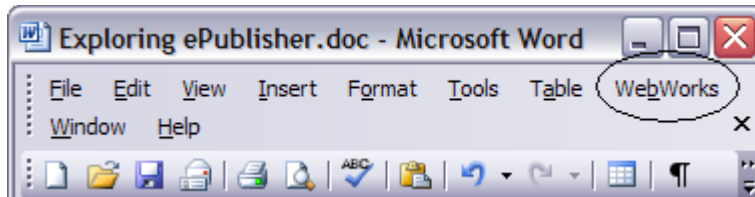
1. Close all instances of Microsoft Word.
2. Open Windows Explorer and browse to the location of the `WebWorks\Transit` folder on your local computer. By default, ePublisher places the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word files in the `[program files]\WebWorks\[yourversion]\Transit` where `[yourversion]` is the version of ePublisher that you have installed
3. Copy the `transit.dot` file.
4. Browse to the `[program files]\Microsoft Office\Office14\STARTUP` folder, where `[program files]` is `C:\Program Files (x86)` if using a 64 bit system, if you are using a 32 bit system it will be `C:\Program Files`. Paste the `transit.dot` file into the `STARTUP` folder.

Initializing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Microsoft Word

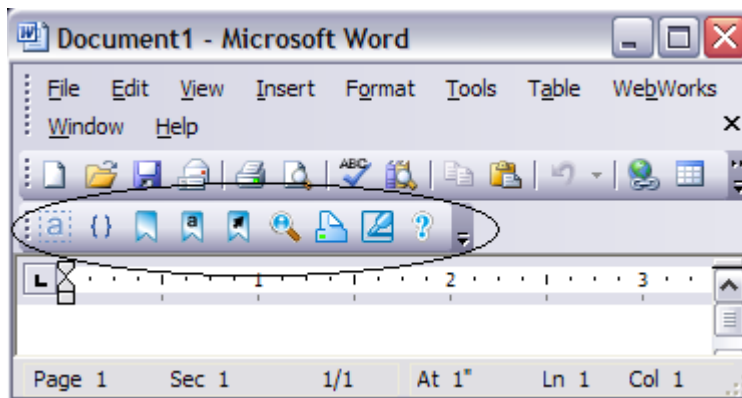
After you install the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word, you must initialize the WebWorks Transit menu before you can use it. For more information about installing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Microsoft Word, see “Installing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word” on page 204.

To initialize the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word

1. Open Microsoft Word.
2. Verify that Microsoft Word displays the **WebWorks** menu on the Microsoft Word menu bar. Your Microsoft Word menu should be similar to the following figure.



3. *If you do not have the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word installed*, install it. For more information, see “Installing the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word” on page 204.
4. *If this is the first time you are using the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word*, on the **WebWorks** menu, click **Initialize Menu**. WebWorks initializes the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word and displays the WebWorks Transit menu in the Microsoft Word window. Your Microsoft Word Window should be similar to the following figure.



Displaying and Hiding the WebWorks Transit Menu in Word

You can choose to display or hide the WebWorks Transit menu in Microsoft Word.

For example, you may want to display the WebWorks Transit menu when you are working in Microsoft Word documents that you will use to generate output. However, you may want to hide the WebWorks Transit menu when you are working in Microsoft Word source documentation that you will not use to generate output.

To display or hide the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word

1. Open Microsoft Word.
2. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Preferences**.
3. *If you want to display the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word in Microsoft Word*, select the Enable Toolbar check box.
4. *If you do not want to display the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word in Microsoft Word*, clear the Enable Toolbar check box.
5. Click **OK**.

Creating Custom Marker Types Using the WebWorks Transit Menu in Word

Typically your Stationery designer will provide the list of markers, which are a type of private or custom Microsoft Word field codes, that you can use in Microsoft Word source documents to create online features. In most cases, you should not need to create a custom marker type for use in Microsoft Word source documents. However, if you need to create a custom marker type to implement an online feature, verify with the Stationery designer that your Stationery supports the custom marker type before you create the custom marker and insert and use the custom marker in a source document.

Occasionally your Stationery may also support a custom marker type that is not defined in the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word. In this situation, first confirm with the Stationery designer that your Stationery supports the custom marker type. After confirming your project supports the custom marker type, you can create the custom marker type using the WebWorks Transit menu for Word.

To create a custom marker type using the WebWorks Transit menu for Word

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, on the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
2. Click the plus (+) icon.
3. In the **Type** field, type *CustomMarkerTypeName* to create a custom marker type, where *CustomMarkerTypeName* is the name of the custom marker type you want to create.

Note: The custom marker type name you type must match the name of the custom marker type supported in your ePublisher Stationery. If you specify a name for the custom marker type that is different than the name of the custom marker type supported in your ePublisher Stationery, ePublisher will not be able to recognize and use the custom marker type when generating output.

4. Click **OK**.

5. Click **OK** again to close the window.

The WebWorks Transit menu for Word saves the custom marker you specified in the marker list and inserts the marker in your Microsoft Word source document.

Creating a Passthrough Marker in Word

A passthrough marker is a marker that allows you to insert content that you do not want ePublisher to process when you generate output. For example, if you have embedded multimedia files in your source documents, such as Audio Video Interleave files (.avi) or Adobe Software Flash files (.swf), you can insert a passthrough marker with a value that is set to the HTML code that you do not want ePublisher to process.

The following example shows .avi code to which you could insert using a passthrough marker.

```
<embed src="sample.avi" width="400"
height="300" pluginspage=";">
</embed>
```

To create a passthrough marker in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the paragraph in which you want to insert the passthrough marker.
2. Insert your cursor in the location on the page where you want to insert the **Passthrough** marker.
3. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
4. In the **Marker** field, select **Passthrough** from the list of markers.
5. In the **Value** field, type the html code that you would like to not be processed by ePublisher such as the Flash embed code indicated in the previous topic.
6. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the Passthrough marker into your source document.
7. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
8. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
9. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the appropriate result for your embedded html code. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Working with Tables in Word

This section explains how to prepare tables in source documents for output generation. Obtain your latest templates and apply the latest table formats from the template to tables in your source documents. If your tables do not have header rows, create a header row for each table.

Applying Table Styles in Word

Table styles define the appearance of your tables, and ePublisher uses table styles to define the appearance of tables in generated output. When you work with tables in your Microsoft Word source documents, ensure you apply the correct table styles to your tables. The Stationery designer defines the table styles you can use in your Microsoft Word source documents in the Microsoft Word templates you associate with your Microsoft Word source documents. If you want to specify a different table styles for sets of tables in your generated output, first ensure the different table styles you want to apply are available in your Microsoft Word source document. Then apply the different table styles to tables in your Microsoft Word source documents as appropriate.

For example, you may have a small set of tables that contain information about a specific component in a product. If you decide you want to modify the appearance of these tables in your generated output by specifying that the tables associated with this component display with a yellow background in your generated output, apply a table style available in your Microsoft Word source document that the Stationery designer created to meet this requirement. When you generate output, the Stationery designed by the Stationery designer specifies that any tables created with a table style configured to display tables with a yellow background display in your output with a yellow background.

If you are working in Microsoft Word 2000 or earlier, Microsoft did not provide support for named table styles in these versions of Word. You can use TableStyle markers to manually assign table style names to tables. To use the TableStyle marker, insert the TableStyle marker using the WebWorks Transit menu for Word into a cell in the table header row, then save your document, generate output, and verify in Output Explorer that ePublisher applied the table style you specified correctly.

If you are working in Microsoft Word XP (2002) or later, you may use TableStyle markers to assign table styles if you prefer that approach to using Microsoft's available table style assignment controls.

Note: TableStyle markers take precedence over table style names derived from Word assigned table styles.

Because of the ambiguity between the different table styles present in the Microsoft Word ribbon for the versions of 2007 and beyond, a recommended approach would be to use the TableStyle marker in lieu of assigning table styles,

To set a TableStyle marker in a Microsoft Word source document (instructions for Word 2007 or higher)

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the table for which you want to assign a tablestyle marker
2. Insert cursor any where inside the table cells.
3. Click the **Add-Ins** tab to access the **WebWorks Transit** menu
4. Select the **Markers** option from the menu
5. In the **Configure Markers** dialog box, select the **TableStyle** marker from the list
6. In the text box for **Value:**, enter in desired name of the TableStyle
7. Click **OK**

For more information about generating output and using Output Explorer to view output files, see “Generating and Regenerating Output” on page 352 and “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Table Header Rows in Word

Header rows are rows that contain information that help identify the content of a particular column. If the table spans several pages of a print layout, the header row will usually repeat itself at the beginning of each new page.

When you create a table in Microsoft Word, by default Microsoft Word does not create a header row. However, if you create header rows in your Microsoft Word source documents, you can quickly and easily specify the appearance that you want for table header rows in your generated output.

Note: You cannot create table footer rows in Microsoft Word source documents. Microsoft Word does not support the creation of table footer rows.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create table header rows in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating table header rows in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create a table header row in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the table for which you want to create a table header row.
2. Select the row or rows of an existing table you want to use to create the header row.
3. On the **Table** menu, click **Table Properties**.
4. On the **Row** tab, in the **Options** area, verify that the **Repeat as header row at the top of each page** check box is selected.

5. *If the check box is not selected*, select the check box to create a header row for the table.
6. Click **OK**.

Working with Images in Word

Many writers include images when producing documents using Microsoft Word. Most writers typically insert images into Microsoft Word source documents in one of the following ways:

- Inserting images in Microsoft Word source documents, also known as embedding images
- Inserting links to image files in the Microsoft Word source documents

If you insert an image into a Microsoft Word source document, Microsoft Word inserts, or embeds, the image in the Microsoft Word source document, and the image becomes a part of the document. Embedded images move with the text of the paragraph in the document. Embedded images in Microsoft Word are also sometimes called **inline shapes**.

If you insert a link to an image in Microsoft Word source documents, Microsoft Word inserts a link to the image and displays the image in the Microsoft Word source document. The link becomes a part of the document, but the actual image file is not inserted into the document, although the actual image file is displayed in the document. If you update the image file referenced by the link, Microsoft Word displays the updated image referenced by the link automatically. Linked images in Microsoft Word are also sometimes called shapes.

There are benefits and drawbacks to inserting images directly into Microsoft Word source documents and inserting links to images used in Microsoft Word source documents.

For example, if you insert images in Microsoft Word source documents, you do not have worry about breaking links between the Microsoft Word source documents and the image files. If you link to images in Microsoft Word source documents, you must ensure that you keep the same file structure for the image files in order to not break links between the Microsoft Word source document and the image file.

However, linking images in Microsoft Word source files, rather than inserting or embedding images, provides some of the following benefits:

- You can update image files without reinserting the image file into your Microsoft Word source documents.
- If you have one image used in multiple places, you can update the image in one place, rather than reinserting the image into multiple places.
- You can manage your documentation files and image files separately, which makes organizing images easier.
- Source documents with linked images are smaller in size than source documents with inserted, or embedded, images.

When you work with Microsoft Word source documents that you will use to generate output, ensure you follow the guidelines specified by the Stationery designer for the following items:

- Method used to insert images
- Correct DPI to use for inserted images
- Correct image file format to use for inserted images

For more information about image considerations, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Inserting Images in Word

Before you insert images into Microsoft Word source documents you plan to use to generate output, review image considerations. For more information, see “Working with Images in Word” on page 211.

The following procedure provides an example of how to insert an image in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for inserting an image in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

After you insert your images, validate your images. For more information, see “Validating Images in Word” on page 213.

To insert an image in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, on the **Insert** menu, click **Picture > From File**.
2. Browse to the location of the image file you want to insert in your Microsoft Word source document, and then select the image file.
3. *If you want to embed the image in your Microsoft Word source document*, click the **Insert** button. Microsoft Word inserts the image in your source document and displays the image.

4. *If you want to insert a link to the image file in your Microsoft Word source document*, click the drop-down button on the **Insert** button and then click **Link to File**. Microsoft Word inserts a link to the image in your source document and displays the image in your source document.

After you insert an image, you can assign alternate text or a long description to the image. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in Word” on page 277 and “Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in Word” on page 280.

Validating Images in Word

If you inserted images in your Microsoft Word source documents, you can validate the images you inserted using the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word before you generate output. For more information about inserting images into Microsoft Word source documents, see “Inserting Images in Word” on page 212.

In the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word, embedded images are referred to as **inline shapes**, and images referenced by links in Microsoft Word source documents are referred to as **shapes**. When you validate embedded images or images referenced by links in Microsoft Word source documents, if ePublisher detects an issue with the image in your source document, ePublisher displays an error and highlights the image with the issue in your Microsoft Word source document.

To validate images in a Microsoft Word source document:

1. Open the Microsoft Word source document that contains the images you want to validate.
2. *If you want to validate embedded images*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Tools > Validate Inline Shapes**.
 - b. ePublisher displays a message that tells you how many embedded images are in the source document. Click **OK** to continue with the validation.
 - c. *If ePublisher did not detect any issues with the embedded images*, ePublisher displays a status message that tells you all embedded images were validated successfully.
 - d. *If ePublisher detects an issue with an embedded image*, ePublisher displays an error message. Complete one of the following steps:
 - *If you want to fix the image with the issue*, click **No** to stop the validation scan. Go to the highlighted inline shape with the issue, fix the inline shape by re-adding the inline shape to your Microsoft Word source document, and then run the inline shape validation scan again.
 - *If you want to continue the scan without fixing the image with the issue*, click **Yes** to continue with the validation scan.

3. *If you want to validate images referenced by links*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Tools > Validate Shapes**.
 - b. ePublisher displays a message that tells you how many images referenced by links are in the source document. Click **OK** to continue with the validation.
 - c. If ePublisher did not detect any issues with the images referenced by links, ePublisher displays a status message that tells you all images were validated successfully.
 - d. If ePublisher detects an issue with an image referenced by a link, ePublisher displays an error message. Complete one of the following steps:
 - *If you want to fix the image with the issue*, click **No** to stop the validation scan. Go to the highlighted shape with the issue, fix the shape by re-adding the link to the shape in your Microsoft Word source document, and then run the inline shape validation scan again.
 - *If you want to continue the scan without fixing the image with the issue*, click **Yes** to continue with the validation scan.

Creating Image Links in Word

You can create image links that allow users who click the image to link to content in another location. For example, if you include your company logo in a source document, you can define a link for the logo so that when users click the logo, they link to your company home page.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create an image link in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating an image link in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create an image link in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, insert the image for which you want to create an image link. For more information, see “Inserting Images in Word” on page 212.
2. Select the image for which you want to create an image link.
3. On the **Insert** menu, click **Hyperlink**.

Note: If Microsoft Word does not display **Hyperlink** on the **Insert** menu, you cannot use this procedure to create a hyperlinked image. However, you can create a hyperlinked text box to create a hyperlinked image. For more information, see “Creating Clickable Regions for Image Maps in Word” on page 215.

4. In the Insert Hyperlink window, select the object you want to link to and specify the appropriate options. For example, you can link to an existing file or web page, a location in a document, or an email address.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image link using the link information you specified on the page by clicking on the image. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Clickable Regions for Image Maps in Word

An image map can be a single image separated with clickable regions or a composite image made up of multiple images grouped together, yet still separated with clickable regions. For example, you could create an image of the countries of Europe and then define an image map for the image that allows users to link to a topic about each country when they click on an area of the image. User can click France to see information about France, Italy to see information about Italy, and so on.

When you define an image map, you can also define alternate text for each clickable region. For example, you might define alternate text for the Italy region as “Click here for more information about Italy.” For more information about assigning alternate text to image maps, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in Word” on page 277.

Creating Image Maps for Single Images in Word

You create an image map for a single image by inserting the image into a drawing canvas and then creating text boxes with hyperlinks that link to a location with additional content. You can also create image maps for composite images. For more information about creating image maps for composite images, see “Creating Image Maps for Composite Images in Word” on page 217.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create an image map for a single image in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating an image map for a single image in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create an image map for a single image in a Microsoft Word source document:

1. Insert your cursor on the line where you want to insert the single image you want to use for your image map.
2. On the **Insert** menu, click **Text Box**. Microsoft Word inserts a drawing canvas. You will insert your image and the text boxes that contain hyperlinks for each clickable area you want to specify for the image into this drawing canvas.
3. Click in the drawing canvas to insert a text box in the drawing canvas.
4. On the **Insert** menu, click **Picture > From File**.
5. Browse to the location of the image you want to use for your image map, select the image, and then click **Insert**, **Link to File**, or **Insert and Link** based on the image insertion method you use for your projects. Microsoft Word inserts the image into the drawing canvas.
6. Add a text box that covers each region in the image that you want to be able to click by completing the following steps:
 - a. Select the drawing canvas.
 - b. On the **Insert** menu, click **Text Box**.
 - c. Click on the drawing canvas, and then drag and drop the text box over an area of the image you want to make clickable.
 - d. Right-click the text box, and then click **Format Text box**.
 - e. On the **Colors and Lines** tab, in the **Fill** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Fill** from the list.
 - f. In the **Line** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Line** from the list.
 - g. Click **OK**.
7. Specify a hyperlink for each text box by completing the following steps:
 - a. Right-click the text box, and then click **Hyperlink** from the right-click menu.
 - b. Specify the location to which you want to link, and then click **OK**. For example, you can link to a Web site or you can link to a location in the source document.
8. Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, and then click the image and the text box you created for each hyperlinked area you want to use to create the clickable image map for the area.
9. When you have the image and all of the hyperlinked text boxes you created for the image map selected, continue to press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then right-click the selection and then click **Grouping > Group** on the context menu.

10. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
11. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
12. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image map using the link information you specified by clicking on the page that contains the image map and then clicking on each area of the image where you created a link. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Image Maps for Composite Images in Word

You can create composite images by inserting the composite images into a drawing canvas and then grouping the composite images with hyperlinked text boxes.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create image maps for composite images in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating image maps for composite images in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create an image map for a composite image in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Insert your cursor on the line where you want to insert the composite image you want to use for your image map.
2. On the **Insert** menu, click **Picture > New Drawing**. Microsoft Word inserts a drawing canvas. You will insert the images that make up your composite image and the text boxes that contain hyperlinks for each clickable area you want to specify for the image into this drawing canvas.
3. Select the drawing canvas, and then on the **Insert** menu, click **Picture > From File**.
4. Browse to the location of each image that makes up your composite image, select the image, and then click **Insert**, **Link to File**, or **Insert and Link** based on the image insertion method you use for your projects. Microsoft Word inserts the image into the drawing canvas.
5. Position each image that makes up your composite image in the drawing canvas by dragging and dropping the image into its correct position.

6. Add a text box that covers each region in the image that you want to be able to click by completing the following steps:
 - a. Select the drawing canvas.
 - b. On the **Insert** menu, click **Text Box**.
 - c. Click on the drawing canvas, and then drag and drop the text box over an area of the image you want to make clickable.
 - d. Right-click the text box, and then click **Format Text box**.
 - e. On the **Colors and Lines** tab, in the **Fill** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Fill** from the list.
 - f. In the **Line** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Line** from the list.
 - g. Click **OK**.
7. Specify a hyperlink for each text box by completing the following steps:
 - a. Right-click the text box, and then click **Hyperlink** from the right-click menu.
 - b. Specify the location that you want to link to, and then click **OK**. For example, you can link to a Web site or you can link to a location in the source document.
8. Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, and then click each image that makes up your composite image and the text box you created for each hyperlinked area you want to use to create the clickable image map for the area.
9. When you have the image and all of the hyperlinked text boxes you created for the image map selected, continue to press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then right-click the selection and then click **Grouping > Group** on the context menu.

Note: After grouping the image and the text boxes, do not use the **Hyperlink** command on the right-click menu to assign a hyperlink to the entire group. If you do, the hyperlink you assign for the group will override the hyperlinks you assigned to the individual text boxes in the group.
10. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
11. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
12. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image map using the link information you specified by clicking on the page that contains the image map and then clicking on each area of the image where you created a link. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Assigning Image Scales in Word

When ePublisher converts images inserted into your source documents, it can scale images to make them display larger or smaller in your generated output. By default, ePublisher uses the scaling factor applied to images as specified by the image style you apply to each image. For example, if you apply an image style to images and the Stationery designer defined the image style to scale images to 80% of their original size, all images that have this image style applied to them will be scaled to 80% in the generated output.

Typically, using the standard scaling factor specified in the image style is sufficient. Occasionally, however you may want to override the scaling factor for an individual image. For example, while most .gif images scale to 80%, you may have one large image that you want scaled to 60% in your generated output. You can manually override the standard scaling factor specified in your Stationery for a specific image by using the GraphicScale marker.

To assign a scale to a specific image, your Stationery and template must have the GraphicScale marker type configured. Your output format must also support scaling by image. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify image scaling for an image Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying image scaling for an image in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify an image scale for an image in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the image for which you want to specify image scaling.
2. Right-click the image, and then click **Format Picture** or **Format Object**.

3. Change the layout setting of the image to **Top and Bottom** by completing the following steps:

Note: By default when you insert images into Microsoft Word, Microsoft Word inserts the image using the **Inline with text layout** setting. In order to specify the image scale for image output files, you must group the image and the text box that contains the GraphicScale marker. However, you cannot group images using the **In line with text** layout setting in Microsoft Word. To work around this known Microsoft Word issue, if you have an image that uses an **In line with text** layout setting, use the **Top and Bottom** layout setting for the image while you insert the GraphicScale marker, and then reapply the **In line with text** layout setting after you group the image and the GraphicScale marker.

- a. On the **Layout** tab, click **Advanced**.
 - b. On the **Text Wrapping** tab, click **Top and Bottom**.
 - c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
4. Select your image.
 5. On the **Insert** menu, click **Text Box**, and then click to the right of your image. Microsoft Word inserts a text box.
 6. Insert your cursor into the text box, and then complete the following steps:

- a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
- b. In the **Markers** field, select **GraphicScale** from the list of markers.
- c. In the **Value** field, type a scaling value for the image.

For example, if you want the image in your Microsoft Word source document reduced by 50% when you generate output, type 50.

Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the GraphicScale marker into the text box.

- d. Select the text box.
 - e. Right-click the selected text box, and then click **Format Text Box**.
 - f. On the **Colors and Lines** tab, in the **Fill** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Fill**.
 - g. In the **Line** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Line**.
 - h. Click **OK**.
7. Drag and drop the text box onto the image.
 8. Select the text box and the image.

9. Right-click the selected text box and image, and then click **Grouping > Group**.

Note: When you select **Group**, the location of the image in your Microsoft Word source document may change in relation to the text in your source document. For example, the image may move up or down in your Microsoft Word source document. This is known Microsoft Word behavior. You may need to scroll up or down in your source document to the new location of the image to find the image.

10. *If your image previously used the **In line with text** layout setting for the image*, reassign this style to your image by completing the following steps:

- a. Right-click only the image, and then click **Format Object**.

Note: You must ensure you right-click only the image, and not on the text box or the grouped text box and image. If you right-click on the text box or the grouped text box and image, Microsoft Word does not display the **Format Object** menu option on the context menu.

- b. On the **Layout** tab, click **In line with text**.
- c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.

11. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
12. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
13. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image using the image scale you specified in the GraphicScale marker by clicking on the page that contains the image for which you specified image scaling. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Assigning Image Styles in Word

Typically you do not need to specify an image style for images when you generate output. By default, each image generated by ePublisher is associated with the default image style defined in the Stationery used by your Stationery. However, if you want to change the image style of one image or a small set of images, you can specify the image style you want to use for an image in your source document using the GraphicStyle marker type.

For example, if you want to specify a yellow border around a set of screen shot images that illustrate a particular piece of product functionality, you can specify that each of the screen shots images in the set have a yellow border around them through the use of the GraphicStyle marker type.

To assign a style to a specific image, your Stationery and template must have the GraphicStyle marker type configured. Your output format must also support specifying image styles. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify image styles for images in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying image styles for images in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify an image style for an image in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the image for which you want to specify an image style.
2. Right-click the image, and then click **Format Picture** or **Format Object** on the context menu. In Microsoft Word 2007/2010, click The **Picture Tools** and then **Format** ribbon once the image is selected.
3. Change the layout setting of the image to **Top and Bottom** by completing the following steps:

Note: By default when you insert images into Microsoft Word, Microsoft Word inserts the image using the **Inline with text layout** setting. In order to specify the image scale for image output files, you must group the image and the text box that contains the GraphicStyle marker. However, you cannot group images that use the **In line with text** layout setting in Microsoft Word. To work around this known Microsoft Word issue, if you have an image that uses an **In line with text** layout setting, use the **Top and Bottom** layout setting for the image while you insert the GraphicStyle marker, and then reapply the **In line with text** layout setting after you group the image and the GraphicStyle marker.

- a. On the **Layout** tab, click **Advanced**. For newer versions click the **Position** dropdown in the ribbon for **Format -> Picture** and click **More Layout Options**.
 - b. On the **Text Wrapping** tab, click **Top and Bottom**.
 - c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
4. Select your image.
 5. On the **Insert** menu, click **Text Box**, and then click to the right of your image. Microsoft Word inserts a text box. For newer versions, you can insert a simple text box.

6. Insert your cursor into the text box, and then complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - b. In the **Markers** field, select **GraphicStyle** from the list of markers.
 - c. In the **Value** field, type the name of the image style the Stationery designer configured for the Stationery used by your ePublisher project.

 For example, if the Stationery designer configured an image style called GreenBorder in your Stationery, type `GreenBorder`.

 Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the GraphicStyle marker into the text box.
 - d. Select the text box.
 - e. Right-click the selected text box, and then click **Format Text Box** on the context menu. For newer versions, click **Format Shape**.
 - f. On the **Colors and Lines** tab, in the **Fill** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Fill**.
 - g. In the **Line** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Line**.
 - h. Click **OK**.
7. Drag and drop the text box onto the image and resize the text box as needed.
8. Press the **SHIFT** key, and then click the text box and the image to select both the text box and the image.
9. Right-click the selected text box and image, and then click **Grouping > Group** on the context menu. For newer versions, it will be listed as **Group**.

Note: When you select **Group**, the location of the image in your Microsoft Word source document may change in relation to the text in your source document. For example, the image may move up or down in relationship to the text in your Microsoft Word source document. This is known Microsoft Word behavior. You may need to scroll up or down in your source document to the new location of the image to find the image.

10. *If your image previously used the In line with text layout setting for the image*, reassign this setting to your image by completing the following steps:
 - a. Right-click only the image, and then click **Format Object** on the context menu.

Note: You must ensure you right-click only the image, and not the text box or the grouped text box and image. If you right-click on the text box or the grouped text box and image, Microsoft Word does not display the **Format Object** menu option on the context menu.
 - b. On the **Layout** tab, click **In line with text**.
 - c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
11. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
12. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
13. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the image using the image style you specified by clicking on the page that contains the image for which you specified an image style and verifying ePublisher applied the image style you specified in the generated output. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Index Entries in Word

An index lists the terms and topics discussed in a document and the page or pages on which they appear. An online index provides the user with a point-and-click resource for quickly navigating online content.

ePublisher uses the same native index entry features used in source documents to create a printed index to create an online index. If you include index entries in your source documents, ePublisher detects the index entries and uses the index entries to create an online index in your generated output.

Microsoft Word inserts index entries as an XE (Index Entry) field in a field code. To create index entries in a Microsoft Word source document, insert index entries into your Microsoft Word source document. ePublisher then uses the index entries to create an online index when you generate output.

Before you insert index entries, verify with the Stationery designer that your Stationery is configured to support online index generation. By default, ePublisher enables online index generate for output, but this functionality can be disabled in your Stationery by the Stationery designer. Also confirm that your output format supports online index creation. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to insert index entries in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for inserting index entries in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To insert an index entry in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, select the word you want to include in your index.
2. Press **ALT+SHIFT+X**. Microsoft Word displays the selected text in the **Main entry** field on the Mark Index Entry window.
3. Specify the appropriate options for the index entry, and then click **Mark**. For more information about the options for the index entry, see the Microsoft Word Help.

Microsoft Word inserts each index entry as an XE (Index Entry) field in a field code. Field codes use hidden text format. If you don't see the XE field after you insert your index entry, click the **Paragraph** symbol on the **Standard** toolbar.

4. After you insert your index entries, update all of your inserted index entries by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **Edit** menu, click **Select All**.
 - b. Press **F9**. Microsoft Word updates all of the field codes in the Microsoft Word source document, including the XE (Index Entry) field codes.
5. Hide the XE (Index Entries) in your source document by clicking the **Paragraph** symbol on the **Standard** toolbar to hide the index field codes and hidden text.
6. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the index correctly by clicking on the page or tab that displays the index and then clicking on the index entries. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359

Using Variables in Word

A variable serves as a placeholder for information that may change frequently. Using variables in source documents allows you to quickly and easily control the content in your generated output. When you change the value of a variable in an ePublisher project, it changes the value in only your generated output. The variable value does not change in your source document.

Once you insert variables into your source documents, whenever the value of a item defined by a variable needs to change, you can make the change in a single location, rather than searching and replacing for all instances of the item. For example, you can use variables in the following ways:

- If you have publication dates or release dates in your source documents that you need to update periodically, you can set up the date as a variable.
- If you work with products that have names or versions that frequently change, you can set up variables for product names and versions.
- If you need to produce documentation sets for a product with multiple brands, you can use variables to help you produce documentation for each different brand using the same set of source files.

Creating Variables in Word

Microsoft Word implements variables as `DocProperty` field codes. When you work with Microsoft Word source documents, typically you use variables defined in a Microsoft Word template by a Stationery designer. The variables in these templates will also include the built-in document properties such as `Author` or `Subject`. You import these variables into your Microsoft Word source documents when you apply the template to your source documents. After you import the variables, you insert the variables as appropriate.

Typically you should not need to create variables in your Microsoft Word source files if you use a Microsoft Word template created by a Stationery designer. However, in some cases you may need to create a variable in a Microsoft Word source document if you do not have a Microsoft Word template that includes a variable you need for your project.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create variables in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2007 and Word 2010.

Note: Newer versions of Word may or may not use this exact procedure, however this may provide enough information to get working with variables in Word.

To create a variable in Word 2007 or Word 2010

1. Go to **File**, and click **Info**
2. Click the Properties tab in the right-hand side of the window and click the **Advanced Properties** option from the dropdown
3. Click the **Custom** tab
4. Type in the Name of your variable in **Name**, for example `BookName`
5. For the **Value**, type in the information you want the variable to represent, for example *User Guide*
6. Click **Add** to add the variable to the list

Inserting Variables into Word

You can insert a variable into a source document after you apply a Microsoft Word template that contains the variables to your source document. If you want to use a variable that is not defined in a Microsoft Word template, you must create the variable in your source document before you can insert it. For more information about creating a variable, see “Creating Variables in Word” on page 226.

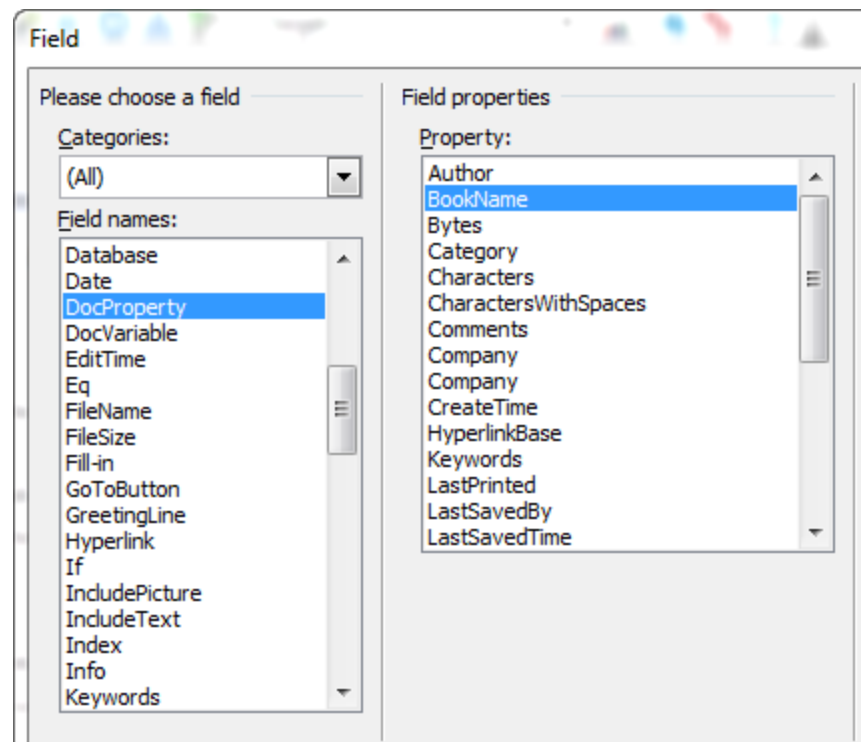
The following procedure provides an example of how to insert variables in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2007 or 2010.

Note: Newer versions of Word may or may not use this exact procedure, however this may provide enough information to get working with variables in Word.

To insert a variable (DocProperty field) into a Microsoft Word document

1. Open the Microsoft Word source document in which you want to insert a variable.
2. Place your cursor in the location where you want to insert the variable.
3. Go to the **Insert** ribbon and click on the **Quick Parts** dropdown and then select **Field...**
4. In the **Field names** selection box, select **DocProperty**
5. In the adjacent selection box labeled **Property**, select the appropriate variable name to insert in your document

Changing Variable



Values in Word

You can change the value assigned to a variable in a Microsoft Word source document.

Note: After you change a variable value in your source document, update the variable value for the variable from the previous value to the new value by selecting all the content in your Microsoft Word source document and then pressing the F9 key.

The following procedure provides an example of how to change a variables in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2007 or 2010.

Note: Newer versions of Word may or may not use this exact procedure, however this may provide enough information to get working with variables in Word.

To change a variable value in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Open the Microsoft Word source document that contains the variable with a value you want to change.
2. On the **File** menu, click **Info**.
3. Click the Properties tab in the right-hand side of the window and click the **Advanced Properties** option from the dropdown
4. Click the **Custom** tab and from the **Name** list box, select the variable you wish to change
5. In the **Value** field, type a new value for the variable. The value you type is the value that Microsoft Word displays in your Microsoft Word document.
6. Click **OK**
7. On the **Edit** menu, click **Select All**.
8. Press the F9 key. Microsoft Word updates the variable value in each place in your source document where you inserted the variable.
9. Click **Done** again to close the window.

Deleting Variables in Word

Delete a variable in a Microsoft Word source document when you no longer want to use the variable. Before you delete a variable, ensure you search for the variable and delete or replace all references to the variable. If your source document still contains a reference to a variable after you delete it, Microsoft Word displays errors in places where a reference to a deleted variable still exists.

The following procedure provides an example of how to delete variables in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2007 or 2010.

To delete a variable in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Open the Microsoft Word source document that contains the variable you want to delete.
2. Press **Alt+F9** to display all field codes in the source document.
3. Search for and replace all references to the variable you want to delete.
4. On the **File** menu, click **Info**
5. Click **Properties** and select Advanced Properties
6. On the **Custom** tab, in the **Properties** field, select the name of the variable you want to delete in the **Name** column.
7. Click **Delete**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. On the **Edit** menu, click **Select All**.
10. Press the **F9** key. Microsoft Word updates the fields in your Microsoft Word source document. If there are any fields that reference the deleted variable in your source document, Microsoft Word displays an error message in the field.
11. Search for the word Error in your Microsoft Word source document to verify no references to the deleted variable remain in your source document.
12. Save your Microsoft Word source document.

Using Conditions in Word

Conditions allow you to show or hide information in your source documents and in your online output. You apply conditions to the content in your source documents, and then you set the visibility for those conditions either in your source documents or in your ePublisher project.

For example, your source documents might contain some content that should be displayed in only the printed version and other content that should be displayed in only the online version. You can use the same set of source documents for both printed and online versions through the use of conditions. You can create one condition called **PrintOnly** specifically for printed content, and then you can create another condition called **OnlineOnly** specifically for online content. After you create the **PrintOnly** and **OnlineOnly** conditions, you can apply them to the appropriate content in your source documents.

Use the WebWorks Transit menu plug-in for Microsoft Word to work with conditions in your Microsoft Word source documents. ePublisher installs the WebWorks Transit menu plug-in for Microsoft Word by default when you install ePublisher Express. You also have the option to install the WebWorks Transit menu plug-in for Microsoft Word when you install ePublisher Designer or ePublisher AutoMap. For more information about installing the WebWorks Transit menu plug-in for Microsoft Word, see “Installing ePublisher Components” on page 24.

After you apply conditions in your source documents, ePublisher can use the conditions defined in your source document to control the visibility of content when it generates output. You can also change the visibility specified for any condition in your ePublisher project. Changing the visibility specified for any condition in your ePublisher project does not change the visibility specified for the condition in your source documents.

Creating Conditions in Word

The WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word allows you to quickly and easily create conditions you can then use to control content in your source documents. Obtain a list of supported conditions from the Stationery designer, and then create each supported condition in each of your Microsoft Word source documents using the WebWorks Transit menu for Microsoft Word.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create conditions in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating conditions in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create a condition in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Open Microsoft Word.
2. Ensure that the WebWorks Transit Menu for Microsoft Word is installed on your computer and initialized. For more information, see “Working with the WebWorks Transit Menu for Word” on page 204.
3. In your Microsoft Word source document, on the **WebWorks** menu, click **Conditions**.
4. Click the **Add** icon.
5. In the **Type** field, type a name for the condition.

For example, if you want to create a condition for content that you want to display in only online content, type `OnlineOnly`. If you want to create a condition for content that you want to display in only printed content, type `PrintOnly`.

6. *If you want the content the condition is applied to hidden in Microsoft Word*, select the **Hidden** check box.

7. *If you want to highlight the content the condition is applied to in Microsoft Word*, in the **Highlight** field, select a color from the drop-down list. Highlighting the content the condition is applied to allows you to more easily see the conditionalized content in your Microsoft Word source documents.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK** again.

Applying Conditions in Word

After you have created conditions in your Microsoft Word source documents, you can apply conditions to content. For more information about creating conditions in Microsoft Word source documents, see “Creating Conditions in Word” on page 230.

The following procedure provides an example of how to apply conditions in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for applying conditions in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To apply a condition to content in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, select the content to which you want to apply the condition.
2. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Conditions**.
3. Select a condition.
4. Click **Apply Condition**.
5. Click **OK**.

Validating Conditions in Word

An unbalanced condition is a condition that does not have either an opening or closing tag. You may accidentally create an unbalanced condition if you delete an opening or closing tag.

The following is an example of a balanced condition:

```
{PRIVATE WWMTS PrintOnly} Timing Devices {PRIVATE WWMTE PrintOnly}
```

The following is an example of an unbalanced condition:

```
{PRIVATE WWMTS PrintOnly} Timing Devices
```

If you have any unbalanced conditions in your Microsoft Word source documents, ePublisher cannot apply the condition when it generates output.

If you use conditions in your Microsoft Word source documents, validate your conditions and verify that your conditions are balanced before you generate output. When you validate conditions, if you have unbalanced conditions in your Microsoft Word source document ePublisher displays the following error.



If ePublisher displays the error, you can go either go to the location of the error, fix the unbalanced condition in your source document, and then continue the validation, or you can cancel the validation.

To validate conditions in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, on the **WebWorks** menu, click **Tools > Validate Conditions**. ePublisher scans the Microsoft Word source document for unbalanced conditions.
2. *If the validation scan detects an unbalanced condition*, click **Navigate to error** to go to the unbalanced condition and correct the error.
3. *If you want the validation scan to continue without correcting the unbalanced condition*, click **Continue scan**.
4. *If you want to cancel the validation scan*, click **Cancel scan**.

Removing Conditions in Word

If you no longer want to apply a condition to content in a Microsoft Word source document, you can remove the applied condition from the content.

The following procedure provides an example of how to remove conditions from content in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for removing conditions from content in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To remove a condition from content in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, select the content with the condition you want to remove.
2. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Conditions**.
3. Click the **Delete** icon.
4. *If you want to remove the condition from the content but keep the content in your Microsoft Word source document, click **OK**.*
5. *If you want to remove both the condition from the content and delete the content from your Microsoft Word source document, select the **Delete applied content** check box, and then click **OK**.*
6. Click **OK** again.

Modifying Conditions in Word

You can edit the name of the condition, specify whether you want the content to which you applied the condition hidden or displayed in Microsoft Word, and change the color assigned to a condition.

The following procedure provides an example of how to modify conditions in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for modifying conditions in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To modify a condition in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, on the **WebWorks** menu, click **Conditions**.
2. Select the condition you want to modify.
3. Click the **Edit** icon.
4. *If you want to change the name of the condition, in the **Type** field, type a new name for the condition.*
5. *If you want the content the condition is applied to hidden in Microsoft Word, select the **Hidden** check box.*
6. *If you want the content the condition is applied to displayed in Microsoft Word, clear the **Hidden** check box.*

7. *If you want to change the color used to highlight the content to which the condition is applied*, in the **Highlight** field, select a color from the drop-down list. Specifying a color for the condition allows you to more easily see the content the condition is applied to in your Microsoft Word source document.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK** again.

Highlighting All Conditions in Word

You can use WebWorks Transit menu functionality to highlight conditions you applied in your Microsoft Word source document. Highlighting all of the conditions you applied in your Microsoft Word source document allows you to see where all of the conditional content is in your Microsoft Word source document.

The following procedure provides an example of how to highlight all conditions in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for highlighting all conditions in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To highlight all conditions in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, on the **WebWorks** menu, click **Preferences**.
2. Select the **Show highlighting** check box.
3. Click **OK**.

Displaying Conditionalized Content with Conflicting Settings in Word

You can apply more than one condition to content in your Microsoft Word source documents. If you apply more than one condition to content in your Microsoft Word source document and the conditions that you applied to the content have different show and hide settings, you can specify how you want conditionalized content with conflicting show and hide settings displayed in your Microsoft Word source documents.

For example, you may have content with three conditions applied to it. Two of the conditions applied may be set to show, or display, in the Microsoft Word source document, while one of the conditions may be set to hide, or not display, in the Microsoft Word source document.

If you have multiple conditions applied to content in your source documents with conflicting show and hide settings, you can choose if you want to display the content with conflicting conditions in a Microsoft Word source document or hide the content.

The following procedure provides an example of how to display conditionalized content with conflicting show and hide settings in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for displaying conditionalized content with conflicting show and hide settings in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To display conditionalized content with conflicting show and hide settings in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, on the **WebWorks** menu, click **Preferences**.
2. *If you want to show content that has conditions applied with conflicting show and hide settings*, select the **Give priority to show conditions** check box. This check box is selected by default.
3. *If you want to hide content that has conditions applied with conflicting show and hide settings*, clear the **Give priority to show conditions** check box.
4. Click **OK**.

Using Passthrough Conditions in Word

A passthrough condition is a condition you apply to content that you do not want ePublisher to process when you generate output. For example, if you have embedded multimedia files in your source documents, such as Audio Video Interleave files (.avi) or Adobe Software Flash files (.swf), you can apply a passthrough condition to the code so that ePublisher does not process the code.

The following example shows .avi code to which you can apply a passthrough condition.

```
<embed src="sample.avi" width="400"
  height="300" pluginspage=";">
</embed>
```

The following example shows .swf code to which you can apply a passthrough condition.

```
<embed src="sample.swf" width="400"
  height="300" pluginspage="
  http://www.macromedia.com/shockwave/download/index.cgi?P1_Prod_Versi
  on=ShockwaveFlash">
</embed>
```

If you have code in your Microsoft Word source documents that you do not want ePublisher to process, create a passthrough condition and then apply the passthrough condition to the code. For more information, see “Creating Conditions in Word” on page 230 and “Applying Conditions in Word” on page 231.

You can also use Passthrough markers and the Passthrough paragraph styles and character styles options to insert content directly into your output without being transformed and coded for your output.

Deleting Conditions in Word

Delete a condition in a Microsoft Word source document when you no longer want to apply the condition to content in the source document.

The following procedure provides an example of how to delete conditions in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for deleting conditions in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To delete a condition in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, on the **WebWorks** menu, click **Conditions**.
2. Select the condition you want to delete.
3. Click the **Delete condition** icon.
4. *If you want to delete the condition from the list of available conditions and remove the condition from any content to which it was applied in the source document*, click **OK**. ePublisher removes the condition from the list of conditions and removes the condition from any content in the source document to which you applied the condition.
5. *If you want to delete the condition from the list of available conditions and also delete any content to which the condition was applied*, select the **Delete applied content** check box, and then click **OK**. ePublisher removes the condition from the list of conditions and deletes any content to which the condition was applied in the source document.

Specifying Output File Names in Word

By default, ePublisher automatically assigns file names to your generated output files for topics (pages) and for embedded images (graphics).

Note: If you insert your images using the **Link to File** or **Insert and Link** option in the Insert Picture window in Microsoft Word, ePublisher preserves the original file names. For more information, see “Working with Images in Word” on page 211.

You can customize this naming convention using one of the following methods:

- Inserting Filename markers into your source documents
- Specifying the topic (page) and image (graphic) naming patterns for ePublisher to use in the target settings for your output

This section explains how you can specify page and image output file names in your Word source documents using Filename markers. For more information about using target settings to specify output file names using page and image naming patterns, see “Specifying Page, Image, and Table File Naming Patterns” on page 385.

Specifying Page Output File Names in Word

Specify specific names for page output files when you generate output using Filename markers. Insert Filename markers into your source document for each page you want to specify a file name for when you generate content.

Note: You can also use page naming patterns to specify names for page output files and embedded image output files. For more information, see “Specifying Page, Image, and Table File Naming Patterns” on page 385.

To specify a file name for a page output file, your Stationery and template must have the Filename marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify page output file names in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying page output file names in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify page output file names in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the page for the topic to which you want to assign a specific file name. For more information about creating pages using page breaks, see “Specifying Page Breaks Settings” on page 385.
2. Insert your cursor at the beginning of the first heading on the page.
3. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Insert Filename Marker**.
4. In the **Filename** field, complete the following steps:
 - a. Type the file name you want to specify for the output page file. Do not include the output file extension when you type the file name text.
 - b. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the Filename marker into your Microsoft Word source document.
5. Save your Microsoft Word source document.

6. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
7. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created an output file using the file name you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Specifying Image Output File Names in Word

Specify specific names for image output files when you generate output if you embed, or insert images directly into the source document instead of inserting and linking or linking images.

Many writers do not need use Filename markers to specify image output file names because many writers prefer to insert images in Microsoft Word source documents as references, or links, using the **Link to File** or **Insert and Link** option in the Insert Picture window in Microsoft Word. When writers use one of these methods to insert images, ePublisher automatically uses the name of the image file referenced by the link as the name of the image output file when generating image output files from Microsoft Word source documents.

However, some writers prefer to insert images directly into Microsoft Word source documents using the **Insert** option in Microsoft Word. If you use the **Insert** option, Microsoft Word inserts the image directly into the Microsoft Word source document. When you use the **Insert** option to insert images directly into Microsoft Word source documents, by default, ePublisher assigns image output file names for the inserted images using an image naming pattern. For more information about image naming patterns, see “Specifying Page, Image, and Table File Naming Patterns” on page 385.

However, if you use the **Insert** option to insert images directly into Microsoft Word source documents, you can also use Filename markers to specify image output file names. Insert Filename markers into your source document for each image you want to specify a file name for when you generate content. To specify a file name for an image output file, your Stationery must have the Filename marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

When you specify image output file names, you create a text box, insert a Filename marker in the text box, and then group the image and the text box that contains the Filename marker. The following procedure provides an example of how to specify image output file names in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying image output file names in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify image output file names for inserted images in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the inserted image for which you want to assign an output image file name.

Note: Only perform this procedure if you have inserted the image directory into the file using the **Insert** option when you inserted the image into your Microsoft Word source document. Do not perform this procedure if you have inserted the image using the **Link to File** or **Insert and Link** options when you inserted the image into your Microsoft Word source document.

2. Right-click the image, and then select **Format Picture** or **Format Object**.
3. Change the layout setting of the image to **Top and Bottom** by completing the following steps:

Note: By default when you insert images into Microsoft Word, Microsoft Word inserts the image using the **Inline with text** layout setting. In order to specify an image output file name for an inserted image, you must group the image and the text box that contains the Filename marker. However, you cannot group images using the **In line with text** layout setting in Microsoft Word. To work around this known Microsoft Word issue, if you have an image that uses an **In line with text** layout setting, use the **Top and Bottom** layout setting for the image while you insert the Filename marker, and then reapply the **Inline with text** layout setting after you group the image and the Filename marker.

- a. On the **Layout** tab, click **Advanced**.
- b. On the **Text Wrapping** tab, click **Top and Bottom**.
- c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
4. Select the image.
5. On the **Insert** menu, click **Text Box**, and then click to the right of your image. Microsoft Word inserts a text box.

6. Insert your cursor into the text box, and then complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Insert Filename Marker**.
 - b. In the **Filename** field, type the file name you want to specify for the output image file, and then click **OK**. ePublisher inserts a Filename marker into the text box.
 - c. Select the text box.
 - d. Right-click the selected text box, and then click **Format Text Box**.
 - e. On the **Colors and Lines** tab, the **Fill** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Fill**.
 - f. In the **Line** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Line**.
 - g. Click **OK**.
7. Drag and drop the text box onto the image.
8. Select the text box and the image.
9. Right-click the selected text box and image, and then click **Grouping > Group**.

Note: When you select **Group**, the location of the image in your Microsoft Word source document may change in relation to the text in your source document. For example, the image may move up or down in your Microsoft Word source document. This is known Microsoft Word behavior. You may need to scroll up or down in your source document to the new location of the image to find the image.
10. If your image previously used the **In line with text** layout setting for the image, reassign this style to the image by completing the following steps:
 - a. Right-click only the image, and then click **Format Object**.

Note: You must ensure you right-click only the image, and not on the text box or the grouped text box and image. If you right-click on the text box or the grouped text box and image, Microsoft Word does not display the **Format Object** menu option on the context menu.
 - b. On the **Layout** tab, click **In line with text**.
 - c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
11. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
12. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
13. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created an image output file using the file name you specified in the Filename marker. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Context-Sensitive Help in Word

This section explains how you can use ePublisher to create links to context-sensitive help content in Microsoft Word source documents

Understanding Context-Sensitive Help in Word

Context-sensitive help links provide content based on the context of what the user is doing. In many cases, this help content is based on the window that is open and active. For example, the Help button on a window in a software product can open a specific Help topic that provides important information about the window:

- What the window allows you to do
- Brief concepts needed to understand the window
- Guidance for how to use the window
- Descriptions about each field on the window, valid values, and related fields
- Links to related topics, such as concepts and tasks related to the window

The Help topic can also be embedded in the window itself, such as an HTML pane that displays the content of the Help topic. Providing this content when and where the user needs it, without requiring the user to search through the help, keeps the user productive and focused. This type of help also makes the product more intuitive by providing answers when and where needed.

There are several methods for creating context-sensitive Help. In addition, output formats use different mechanisms to support context-sensitive Help. You can reference a topic in the following ways:

File name

Use a Filename marker to assign a file name to a topic. Each topic can have no more than one Filename marker by default. However, you can create a custom mapping mechanism using file names. Then, you can open the specific topic with that file name. However, if your file naming changes, you need to change the link to the topic. This file naming approach delivers context-sensitive help capabilities in output formats that do not provide a mapping mechanism.

Internal identifier (topic alias)

Use a TopicAlias marker to define an internal identifier for each topic. The benefit of using an internal identifier is that it allows file names to change without impacting the links from the product. The writer inserts this marker in a topic and specifies a unique value for that topic. Then, the mapping mechanism of your output format determines how that internal identifier is supported. Some output formats, such as HTML Help, use a mapping file that defines these topic aliases.

To simplify the coding of your source documents, the Stationery designer can also configure your Stationery to define both the file name and the topic alias for each topic file.

Before you begin to insert Filename markers or TopicAlias markers into your source documents, consult with your Stationery designer. Confirm that your Stationery supports context-sensitive help links, and discuss with your Stationery designer the type of marker you should use to define context-sensitive help link in your source documents.

For more information about configuring Filename and TopicAlias markers for use in context-sensitive help, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

If you generate Eclipse Help output, you also can choose the topic description you want to display for each context-sensitive link. When you use a TopicAlias marker to create context-sensitive links, Eclipse creates a `contexts.xml` file that lists all of the context IDs for the Eclipse Help system you created using TopicAlias markers. In the `contexts.xml` file, Eclipse also provides a description of the context-sensitive link. By default, the description Eclipse provides for the context-sensitive link is the text of the first paragraph of the topic. However, if you want to specify a different description for the context-sensitive link, you can do this by using the TopicDescription marker. For more information about using the TopicDescription marker, see “Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in Word” on page 243.

Planning for Context-Sensitive Help in Word

Creating context-sensitive help requires you to collaborate with application developers. Because topic IDs and map numbers must be embedded in both the software application and in your source documents, you and the application developers must agree in advance on the values to use.

Before you create context-sensitive help topics, first confirm with your application developers that the application supports context-sensitive help. Then work with your application developers to decide how to choose the topic ID for each context-sensitive help topic:

You choose the topic IDs

You can choose a set of topic IDs and embed them in your source documents using TopicAlias markers. When you generate output, ePublisher can generate a mapping file using those topic IDs and assign a unique number to each topic ID. You can provide the generated mapping file to your application developers, who can embed the topic IDs in the application code. You can then manually maintain this mapping file, or you can allow ePublisher to generate a new file each time you generate the help. Remember to give the updated help system and mapping file to your application developers each time.

Your developers choose the topic IDs

Your application developers can choose a set of topic IDs and embed them in the application code. Then, you can get a copy of the mapping file from your application developers, specify this mapping file in your project settings, and embed the topic IDs in your source documents using TopicAlias markers. In this case, ePublisher does not generate the mapping file.

Before you begin to implement context-sensitive help, meet with your application developers to select one of these methods for assigning the topic IDs to use for context-sensitive help links. Once you choose a set of topic IDs, embed them in your source documents using TopicAlias markers and do not change them.

Note: Because of the way Microsoft Word uses markers with the Transit menu, in order for ePublisher to best pickup a marker such as a TopicAlias, please place this marker after the heading and not before.

Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in Word

You can use TopicAlias markers that contain topic IDs, or Filename markers that specify file names, to create context-sensitive help. If your output format supports the use of mapping files and topic IDs, typically you use TopicAlias markers to create context-sensitive help. If your output format does not support the use of mapping files and topic IDs, typically you use Filename markers to create context-sensitive help.

If you are generating Eclipse Help, you can also choose to specify a topic description for each context-sensitive help link your created using a TopicAlias marker by using a TopicDescription marker in conjunction with the TopicAlias marker. For more information about how TopicAlias markers and TopicDescription markers can work together when generating Eclipse Help, see “Understanding Context-Sensitive Help in Word” on page 241.

To specify a context-sensitive help link, your Stationery and template must have a TopicAlias or Filename marker type configured. If you are generating Eclipse Help and you want to be able to specify topic descriptions for your context-sensitive help links, you Stationery and template must also have a TopicDescription marker type configured. Consult with the Stationery designer to determine which marker type you should use to create context-sensitive help links and topic descriptions in your source documents. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create context-sensitive help links and topic descriptions in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating context-sensitive help links in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create a context-sensitive help link in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Open the Microsoft Word source document that contains the context-sensitive topic you want to link to when users click a help button or help icon from within an application.
2. Insert your cursor at the beginning of the topic or paragraph to which you want to link.
3. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
4. Select the marker type the Stationery designer configured your Stationery to support from the drop-down list. For example, select **TopicAlias** or **Filename**.
5. In the **Value** field, type the topic ID you want to specify for the topic.
6. Click **OK**.
7. *If you are generating Eclipse Help and you want to specify topic descriptions for each context-sensitive help link you are creating*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor in the topic after the TopicAlias marker you inserted for the Eclipse context-sensitive help topic.
 - b. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - c. Select the **TopicDescription** marker type from the list.
 - d. *If the TopicDescription marker type is not on the list*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality, and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in Word” on page 197.
 - e. In the **Value** field, type the topic description you want to use.
 - f. Click **OK**.
8. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

10. In Output Explorer, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that ePublisher inserted the topic ID into the map file when it generated output.
 - b. *If you generated Eclipse Help and specified topic descriptions for your context-sensitive help topics*, verify that the `contents.xml` file for your Eclipse Help system contains the topic descriptions you specified for context-sensitive help topics.
 - c. Test the generated output using the application and verify that the application links to the appropriate context-sensitive help topic. This testing ensures the context-sensitive help link you created displays correctly within the application.

Creating Popup Windows in Word

A popup window is a window that is smaller than standard windows and typically does not contain some of the standard window features such as tool bars or status bars. Popup windows display when users hover over or click on a link. The popup window closes automatically as soon as the users click somewhere else.

A typical use of popup windows is to display glossary terms. For example, in printed documentation, terms and definitions are typically grouped in a separate glossary document. However, in online content, you can display glossary definitions in popup windows. With glossary popup windows, users can choose whether or not they want to view the definition of a term.

You create popup windows by creating a link between the word or phrase in a topic and the content you want to display in the popup window. After you create the link, you then insert Popup markers or apply Popup paragraph styles to define the content you want to display in the popup window.

If the Stationery designer configured the Stationery to support popup windows using markers, you use the following Popup markers to create popup windows:

Popup

Specifies the start of the content to include in a popup window. The content displays in a popup window when users hover over or click on the link. In some output formats users can also view the content in a standard help topic window in addition to viewing the content in a popup window. For example, if you insert a Popup marker in front of a glossary definition, the glossary definition displays in both a popup window and in a glossary topic that contains the definition.

PopupEnd

Specifies the end of the content to display in the popup window.

PopupOnly

Specifies that the popup content displays only through a popup window. For example, if you insert a PopupOnly marker in front of a glossary definition, the glossary definition displays only in a popup window.

If the Stationery designer configured the Stationery to support popup windows using paragraph styles, you use the following paragraph styles to create popup windows:

Popup and Popup Append paragraph styles

Specifies that content displays both in popup windows and in standard help topics. You apply the Popup paragraph style to the first paragraph of content you want displayed in the popup window. If you have more than one paragraph of content you want to display, you apply the Popup Append style to the additional paragraphs.

For example, if you apply a glossary term and glossary definitions style for a glossary using the Popup and Popup Append styles, the terms and definitions in your output display in both a popup window and in a glossary topic that contains the definitions.

Popup Only and Popup Only Append paragraph styles

Specifies that content displays only in popup windows. You apply the Popup Only paragraph style to the first paragraph of content you want displayed in the popup window. If you have more than one paragraph of content you want to display, you apply the Popup Only Append style to the additional paragraphs.

For example, if you apply a glossary term and glossary definition style for a glossary using the Popup Only and Popup Only Append paragraph styles, the terms and definitions in your output display in only popup windows. The content is not displayed in an additional glossary topic that contains the definitions.

Checklist: Creating Popup Windows in Word

If you want to include popup windows in your generated output, prepare your Microsoft Word source documents using the following checklist.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task	For more information, see...
<input type="checkbox"/>	Create a link between a word or phrase and the content you want to display in a popup window.	"Creating Popup Window Links in Word" on page 247
<input type="checkbox"/>	If you want to implement popup windows using Popup markers , insert Popup markers into the appropriate locations in your Microsoft Word source documents.	"Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in Word" on page 250
<input type="checkbox"/>	If you want to implement popup windows using paragraph styles , apply the appropriate paragraph style to the appropriate content in your Microsoft Word source documents.	"Using Paragraph Styles to Create Popup Windows in Word" on page 251

Creating Popup Window Links in Word

Your first step in creating a popup window is to create a link between a word or phrase in a topic and the popup content you want to display when users hover over or click the link. Use native Microsoft Word functionality to create a link between the word or phrase in a topic and the content you want to display in a popup window. You can create a link in Microsoft Word with a bookmark and a cross-reference or hyperlink.

Before you create popup window links, verify that your output format supports this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create a a popup window link in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating popup window links in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create a link between a word or phrase and popup content in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the text you want to create a link to and display in the popup window.
2. *If you want to create a link that includes the link target text*, create the link using a bookmark and a cross-reference by completing the following steps:

- a. Select the text to which you want to link.
- b. On the **Insert** menu, click **Bookmark**.
- c. In the **Bookmark name** field, type a name for the bookmark in CamelCase. The bookmark name cannot include spaces.

For example, if you are creating a bookmark for the definition of WebWorks Help in your source document, type `WebWorksHelpDefinition`.

- d. Click **Add**. Microsoft Word inserts a hidden bookmark.
- e. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the word or phrase for which you want to create a link.
- f. Using your cursor, select the text you for which you want to create a link.

For example, if you want to specify WebWorks Help as a link, select **WebWorks Help**.

- g. On the **Insert** menu, click **Reference** > **Cross-reference**.
- h. In the **Reference type** field, select **Bookmark**.
- i. In the **Insert reference to** field, select **Bookmark text**.
- j. Select the **Insert as hyperlink** check box.
- k. In the **For which bookmark** field, click the name of the bookmark for the text you want to display in the popup.

For example, if you created a bookmark named `WebWorksHelpDefinition` for text that provides a definition for WebWorks Help, click **WebWorksHelpDefinition**.

- l. Click **Insert**, and then click **Close**.

3. *If you want to create a link that does not include the link target text*, create the link using a bookmark and a hyperlink by completing the following steps:

- a. Insert your cursor in front of the text to which you want to link.
- b. On the **Insert** menu, click **Bookmark**.
- c. In the **Bookmark name** field, type a name for the bookmark in CamelCase. The bookmark name cannot include spaces.

For example, if you are creating a bookmark for the definition of WebWorks Help in your source document, type `WebWorksHelpDefinition`.

- d. Click **Add**. Microsoft Word inserts a hidden bookmark.
- e. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the word or phrase for which you want to create a link.
- f. Using your cursor, select the text you for which you want to create a link.

For example, if you want to specify WebWorks Help as a link, select **WebWorks Help**.

- g. On the **Insert** menu, click **Hyperlink**.
- h. In the **Link to** area, click **Place in This Document**.
- i. In the **Select a place in this document** field, under **Bookmarks**, click the name of the bookmark for the text you want to display in the popup.

For example, if you created a bookmark named `WebWorksHelpDefinition` for text that provides a definition for WebWorks Help, click **WebWorksHelpDefinition**.

- j. Click **OK**.
4. Verify that the link goes to the appropriate location in the source document by pressing and holding down the **CTRL** key and then clicking the link.
5. Save your Microsoft Word source document.

After you create a link between a word or phrase in a topic and the popup content you want to display in the popup window, define the content you want to display in the popup window using one of the following methods:

- Create popup windows using Popup markers. For more information, see “Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in Word” on page 250.
- Create popup windows using Popup paragraph styles. For more information, see “Using Paragraph Styles to Create Popup Windows in Word” on page 251.

Using Markers to Create Popup Windows in Word

You can insert Popup markers into your Microsoft Word source documents to create popup windows. To use Popup markers to create popup windows, your Stationery must have the following items configured:

- Popup marker type
- PopupEnd marker type
- PopupOnly marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to insert Popup markers in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for inserting Popup markers in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To use popup markers to create popup windows in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, create a link between a word or phrase in the topic and the content you want to display in the popup window. For more information, see “Creating Popup Window Links in Word” on page 247.
2. Insert your cursor in front of the text you want to display in the popup window.
3. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
4. *If you want the popup content to display in both a popup window and in a standard help topic*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Select **Popup** from the list of markers in the **Marker** field.
 - b. Leave the **Value** field blank.
 - c. Click **OK** to insert the marker.
5. *If you want the popup content to display only in a popup window*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Select **PopupOnly** from the list of markers in the **Marker** field.
 - b. Leave the **Value** field blank.
 - c. Click **OK** to insert the marker.

6. Specify where you want the popup content to end by completing the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor at the end of the content you want to display in the popup window.
 - b. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - c. Select **PopupEnd** from the list of markers in the **Marker** field.
 - d. Leave the **Value** field blank.
 - e. Click **OK** to insert the marker.
7. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
8. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
9. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the popup window and verify that ePublisher created the popup window that the popup window displays the content you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Using Paragraph Styles to Create Popup Windows in Word

You can use Popup paragraph styles in your Microsoft Word source documents to create popup windows. To use Popup paragraph styles to create popup windows, your Stationery and Microsoft Word template must have the following items configured:

- Popup and Popup Append paragraph style behaviors if you want your content to display both in popup windows and in standard help topics.
- Popup Only and Popup Only Append paragraph style behaviors if you want your content to display only in popup windows.

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to use Popup paragraph styles to create popup windows in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for using Popup paragraph styles to create popup windows in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create popup windows using Popup paragraph styles in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, create a link between a word or phrase in the topic and the content you want to display in the popup window and ensure that the link resolves in the document. For more information, see “Creating Popup Window Links in Word” on page 247.
2. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
3. In the ePublisher **Style Designer**, configure the destination paragraph styles with the appropriate popup behavior via the **Options** panel.
4. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
5. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the popup window and verify that ePublisher created the popup window and that the popup window displays the content you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Expand/Collapse Sections (Drop-Down Hotspots) in Word

You can create sections of content that expand and collapse when you click a link or hot spot. This structure allows you to create items, such as tasks with numbered procedures, bulleted lists, or definitions, that are easy to scan. Users can then expand individual items to display additional information.

Hot spots for expand/collapse sections initially display in one of the following states:

- The content is initially collapsed and will expand beneath the hotspot when the user clicks the hotspot. Clicking the hotspot a second time causes the expanded content to return to its original collapsed state.
- The content is initially expanded and will collapse or disappear from beneath the hotspot when the user clicks the hotspot.

You create expand/collapse sections in Microsoft Word source documents by using the following items:

- An Expand/Collapse paragraph style
- A DropDownEnd marker

You use an Expand/Collapse paragraph style to start expand/collapse sections and a DropDownEnd marker to specify where the content in the expand/collapse section ends. The Stationery defines whether the sections should initially be expanded (shown) or collapsed (hidden) and the image used to show the state of the section.

To create expand/collapse sections, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- An Expand/Collapse paragraph style
- A DropDownEnd marker

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create expand/collapse sections in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating expand/collapse sections in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create an expand/collapse section in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, identify a topic that contains text for which you want to create an expand/collapse section.
2. Apply an Expand/Collapse paragraph style to the text you want users to click to expand or collapse content.

For example, in the following sample procedure, you would apply the Expand/Collapse paragraph style to the *To open a project* text.

To open a project

- a. On the **File** menu, click **Open**.
- b. Browse to the location of the project on your local computer.
- c. Select the project, and then click **Open**.

3. Insert your cursor at the end of the content you want to display in the expand/collapse section.

For example, in the following sample procedure, you would insert your cursor after the period in the last sentence of the procedure, *Select the project, and then click Open.*

To open a project

- a. On the **File** menu, click **Open**.
 - b. Browse to the location of the project on your local computer.
 - c. Select the project, and then click **Open**.
4. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 5. In the **Markers** field, select the **DropDownEnd** marker.
 6. Leave the **Value** field blank.
 7. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts a DropDownEnd marker at your insertion point. This marker identifies where the contents of your expand/collapse section will end.
 8. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
 9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
 10. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the expand/collapse section and verify that ePublisher created the expand/collapse section and that the expand/collapse section displays the content you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Related Topics in Word

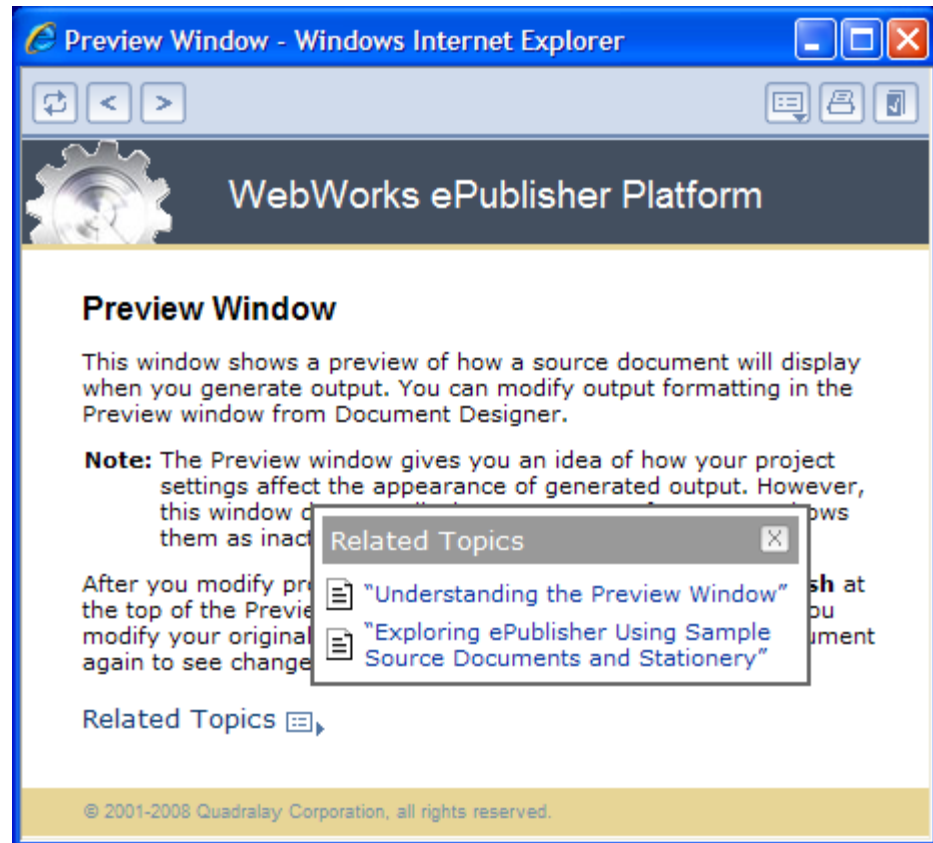
Related topics provide a list of other topics that may be of interest to the user viewing the current topic. For example, you could have a section called Creating Web Pages in your help. You may also have many other topics, such as HTML Tags and Cascading Style Sheets, that related to creating Web pages. Identifying these related topics for users can help them find the information they need and identify additional topics to consider. However, providing these types of links as cross-references within the content itself may not be the most efficient way to present the information. By utilizing related topics links, you combine the capabilities of cross-references with the efficiency of a related topics button.

Related topics and See Also links provide similar capabilities, but there are several important differences:

- Related topics can link to headings in a Help system that do not start a new page.
- Related topics links are static and defined in the source documents as links. You must have all the source documents to create the link and generate the output.
- If a related topics list contains a broken link in the source document, that link is broken in the generated output. In a See Also link list, the broken link is not included in the output.

The Stationery designer can configure related topics to display in the following ways:

- Included as a list in the topic itself.
- Displayed in a popup window when the user clicks a button, as show in the following figure.



Note: If a related topic link is broken in the source document, in most cases that link is broken in the generated output. WebWorks Help and WebWorks Reverb provide an additional feature by removing broken links from related topics lists that are displayed in a popup window when a user clicks the Related Topics button.

To create related topics links, your Stationery and template must have a Related Topics paragraph style configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create related topics links in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating related topics links in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create a related topics list in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Identify the topic in which you would like to insert a related topics list.
2. Identify the different topics you want to link to from this topic.

Note: Generally, you should only create one related topics list for each section of your source document that corresponds to a help topic. For example, if the Stationery designer specified in your Stationery that there will be a page break at each Heading 1 section, then you should only create one related topics list for each Heading 1 section within your source document.
3. Create a cross-reference to each topic you want to include in the related topics list by completing the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor in the location in your Microsoft Word source document where you want to insert the link to the related topic.
 - b. On the **Insert** menu, click **Reference > Cross-reference**.
 - c. In the **Reference type** field, select **Heading**.
 - d. In the **Insert reference to** field, click **Heading text**.
 - e. Select the insert as hyperlink checkbooks.
 - f. In the **For which heading** field, select the heading to which you want to cross reference.
 - g. Click **Insert**.
 - h. Click **Close**.
4. Apply the Related Topic paragraph style to the cross-references in your related topics list.
5. *If you want to display the list of related topics in only your generated output*, apply an OnlineOnly condition to the list of related topics. For more information about applying conditions, refer to “Applying Conditions in Word” on page 231.
6. Save your Microsoft Word source document.

7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the related topics list and verify that ePublisher created the related topics and that the related topics list displays the topics you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Links to PDF in Word

You have the ability to link to different information in an external document such as a PDF with a hyperlink to the content.

To create an external hyperlink to a PDF document

1. In the Word menu, go to **Insert > Hyperlink**.
2. Select **Existing File or Web Page** for the **Link to** label located on the left.
3. In the **Text to display** text box, enter the text you would like for the hyperlink.
4. Navigate to the file location on the system to link against for the PDF.
5. Save the Word document.

Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in Word

On Wikis, **categories**, which are referred to as **labels** in some Wiki formats, are used to organize Wiki content. Categories help group together pages that have similar subjects.

Note: MoinMoin and Media Wiki use the term *category* to describe page grouping functionality. Confluence uses the term *label* to describe page grouping functionality.

Pages are assigned to category groups through the use of category or label tags. When you assign a category or label tag to a Wiki page, the category to which the Wiki page belongs displays in a box at the bottom of the page.

Category and label tags on Wiki pages allow categorized pages to automatically be added to a list on a category page on the Wiki. The category page lists all of the Wiki pages tagged for a certain category. For example, if you tag each page on a Wiki that contains licensing information with a Licensing category tag, then a licensing category page on the Wiki can display a list of all of the pages tagged as containing licensing information.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify categories for Wiki pages in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying categories may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify a Wiki category or label for a topic in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, find the first paragraph on the page for the page for which you want to specify a category or label.
2. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
3. In the **Marker** field, select **WikiCategory** from the list of markers.
4. *If the WikiCategory marker type is not on the list of markers*, check with the Stationery designer to obtain the name of the marker type the Stationery designer created to support this functionality and then use the marker type specified by the Stationery designer. For more information, refer to “Implementing Online Features in Word” on page 197.
5. In the **Value** field, type the category or list of categories you want to specify for the page. If you want to specify more than one category for a page, separate each category with a comma (,).

For example, if you want to specify one category for the page, type `category1`. If you want to specify multiple categories for the page, type `category1, category2, category3`, where `category` is the category you want to specify for the page.

Note: Each Wiki target handles white space in its own way. For example, MoinMoin removes white space in category names, so if you specify *Licensing Considerations* as a category in a WikiCategory marker, in MoinMoin output the category will display as *LicensingConsiderations*.

6. Click **OK**.
7. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
8. Generate output for your Wiki target. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
9. Deploy the Wiki output files to a Wiki server. For more information, see “Deploying Output to Output Destinations” on page 380.

Note: You must deploy generated Wiki content to a Wiki server before you can view the Wiki content.

10. Verify that your Wiki pages display the categories or labels you specified at the bottom of the pages.

Creating See Also Links in Word

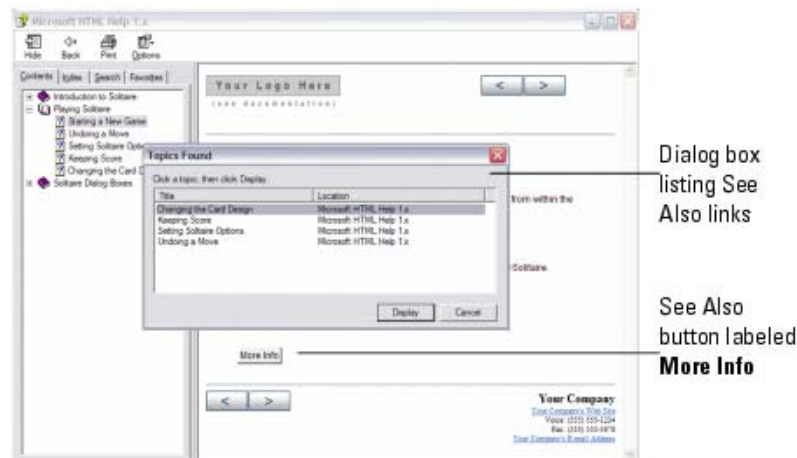
See Also links, also known as ALinks, or associative links, are links that may be of interest to the user viewing the current topic. These links use internal identifiers to specify the links and the link list is built dynamically based on the topics available when the user clicks to display the links. See Also links are important to use with larger help sets and merged help sets.

Related topics and See Also links provide similar capabilities, but there are several important differences:

- See Also links must link to styles that start a new topic, such as a heading.
- See Also links are dynamic and the lists of links are built at display time instead of during help generation.
- Since see Also link lists are dynamically built, they do not include links to topics that are not available when the user displays the links. If a related topics list contains a broken link in the source document, that link is broken in the generated output for most output formats.

See Also links are useful if you plan to merge help systems. For example, if you have a multiple help systems that you merge into one main help system at run time and if your topics in the merged help systems contain See Also keywords that are also used in the main help system, links to those topics are included in the See Also lists in the main project.

You can create See Also links as buttons or as inline text links in Microsoft HTML Help and WebWorks Help. The following example shows how the two different types of See Also links display in a Microsoft HTML Help system.



Create See Also links by applying the See Also paragraph style or character style to text in your Microsoft Word source documents and inserting markers into your Microsoft Word source documents.

Create See Also links by applying the See Also paragraph style or character style to text in your Microsoft Word source documents and inserting markers into your Microsoft Word source documents. To create See Also links, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- See Also paragraph style if you want to create See Also links with buttons
- See Also paragraph style if you want to create see Also links as inline text links
- SeeAlsoKeyword marker type
- SeeAlsoLink marker type
- SeeAlsoLinkDisplay marker type if you generate Microsoft HTML Help and you want to display the target topics in a popup menu

SeeAlsoLinkWindowType marker type if you generate Microsoft HTML Help and you want to display the target topics in a custom window

The following procedure provides an example of how to create See Also links in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating See Also links in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create a See Also link in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Identify each topic to which you want to link from a See Also link, and then complete the following steps for each topic:
 - a. Insert your cursor into the topic to which you want to link.
 - b. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - c. In the **Marker** field, select the **SeeAlsoKeyword** marker.
 - d. In the **Value** field, type a text string that is a unique identifier as the See Also keyword for the topic. See Also keywords are case sensitive and cannot contain punctuation or spaces.

For example, if you have a unique topic called About WebWorks Help, type `AboutWebWorks help` in the **Value** field.
 - e. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts a SeeAlsoKeyword marker at your insertion point. This marker identifies the topic for See Also links.
2. Identify the topic where you want to insert a list of See Also links.
3. Enter the text you want to display for the See Also button or for the See Also inline text link on a separate line in the source document where you want the See Also button or inline text link to display.

For example, if you want to create a button with the text See Also on the button, type `See Also`. If you want to create inline text with the text Additional Information for the link, type `Additional Information`.

4. *If you want to create a See Also button for your See Also links*, apply the See Also paragraph style to the text you want to display in the See Also button.
5. *If you want to create a See Also inline text link for your See Also links*, apply the See Also character style to the text you want to display in the See Also inline text link.
6. Apply an OnlineOnly condition to the See Also text. Applying an OnlineOnly condition to the See Also button or See Also inline text displays the See Also link in your generated output, but does not display the See Also button or link in your printed content.
7. Insert your cursor inside the text you specified for the See Also button or See Also inline text link.
8. For each topic to which you want to link from a See Also link, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - b. In the **Marker** field, select the **SeeAlsoLink** marker.
 - c. In the **Value** field, type the text string that is a unique identifier for the topic to which you want to link. This text string is the text string you typed when you created the **SeeAlsoKeyword** marker for the topic.

For example, if you created a **SeeAlsoKeyword** marker with the text string AboutWebWorksHelp, type AboutWebWorksHelp in the **Value** field for the **SeeAlsoLink** marker.
 - d. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts a **SeeAlsoLink** marker at your insertion point. This marker identifies the topics users can link to when they click the See Also button.
9. *If you generate Microsoft HTML Help output and you want to display the target topics in a popup menu*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor inside the text you specified for the See Also button or inline text link.
 - a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - b. In the **Marker** field, select the **SeeAlsoLinkDisplayType** marker.

Note: This marker type is supported only in Microsoft HTML Help.
 - c. In the **Value** field, type `menu`. By default, Microsoft HTML Help displays See Also links in the Topics Found window. To display See Also links in a popup menu, specify `menu` for the marker value.
 - d. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts a **SeeAlsoDisplayType** marker at your insertion point.

10. *If you generate Microsoft HTML Help output and you want to display the target topics in a custom window*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Insert your cursor inside the text you specified for the See Also button or See Also inline text link.
 - b. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - c. In the **Marker** field, select the **SeeAlsoLinkWindowType** marker.

Note: This marker type is supported only in Microsoft HTML Help.
 - d. In the **Value** field, type the name of a custom window defined for Microsoft HTML Help by the Stationery designer.

For example, if the Stationery designer defined a custom window called ContextHelp to use to when displaying context-sensitive help topics, type ContextHelp in the **Value** field for the SeeAlsoLinkWindowType marker.
 - e. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts a SeeAlsoDisplayType marker at your insertion point.
11. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
12. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
13. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the See Also links and verify that ePublisher created the See Also button or See Also inline text and that the See Also button or inline text displays the links you specified. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating Meta Tag Keywords in Word

Meta tags are lines of code placed between the `<head>` and `</head>` tags in HTML pages. Meta tags give web search engines information about the content of the web page and how search engines should treat the web page. Users viewing web pages do not see the meta tags, but meta tags can be used to influence the way web pages on a web site appear in web search engine results. Users also see the text you specify for meta tags right following the title of your page when your page comes up in search results.

In help systems, search ranking works like ranking in an Internet search engine. If you generate help system output, you can use meta tag keywords to specify terms for pages for help topics where you want to improve searchability. For example, assume that in your help system you have a topic called See Also links. However, you know that See Also links are also sometimes referred to as ALinks, and you think that some users of your help system may search for information about See Also links by typing ALinks into the **Search** field for your help system. In this example, you can insert ALinks as a meta tag keyword for each page that discusses See Also links, so users who search your system for information about ALinks can find the information they are looking for in your See Also link topics.

To assign meta tag keywords, your Stationery and template must have the Keywords marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create meta tag keywords in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating meta tag keywords in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create meta tag keywords for a page in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, find the first paragraph in the page for the page for which you want to create a meta tag keyword.
2. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
3. In the **Marker** field, select **Keywords** from the list of markers.
4. In the **Value** field, type the comma-delimited list of keywords that you want web search engines to use when crawling Web sites and to display immediately following the title of your page when your page comes up in search results.

For example, type `keyword1, keyword2, keyword3`, where *keyword* is the keyword you want web search engines to use when crawling your Web site.

5. Click **OK**.
6. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

8. In Output Explorer, verify that ePublisher inserted your meta tag keywords correctly by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Explorer**.
 - b. In the *TargetName\ProjectName* folder, open the page to which you assigned meta tag keywords in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target and *ProjectName* is the name of your project.
 - c. Verify that the text you specified for your meta tag displays in the `meta name` attribute between in the `<head>` and `</head>` tags section of your web page. For example, if you typed `keyword1`, `keyword2`, `keyword3`, for your meta tag keywords, your meta tags in for the page should be similar to the following entry:

```
<meta name="keywords" content="keyword1, keyword2, keyword3" />
```

Assigning Custom Page Styles in Word

By default, each page generated by ePublisher is associated with the default page style defined in the Stationery used by your ePublisher project. This means that typically you do not need to specify a page style for pages when you generate output. However, if you want to change the page style of one page or a smaller set of pages, you can specify the page style you want to use for a page in your Microsoft Word source document using the `PageStyle` marker.

For example, you may want to use one page style in your help system for all concept and procedure topic pages, and another page style for all context-sensitive window description topic pages in your help system. In this example, you can use the default page style for all of your concept and procedure topic pages, and then you can use a second custom page style defined in your Stationery for all context-sensitive window description topic pages in your help system.

Before you begin, obtain the names of the custom page styles you can use with your Stationery from the Stationery designer. Then insert a `PageStyle` marker with the page style name into the topic you want to display using a custom page style. After you assign a custom page style to a topic using the `PageStyle` marker, the generated output displays the topic using the specified page style.

To assign custom page styles, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Custom page styles defined for your Stationery by the Stationery designer
- `PageStyle` marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

For more information about creating page styles, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

The following procedure provides an example of specifying page styles for pages in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying page styles for pages in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify a custom page style for a page in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the page for the topic to which you want to assign a page style.
2. Insert your cursor in the location on the page where you want to insert the **PageStyle** marker.
3. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
4. In the **Marker** field, select **PageStyle** from the list of markers.
5. In the **Value** field, type the name of the page style you want to associate with the page.

For example, if you Stationery designer configured a page style for your Stationery called YellowBackground, type YellowBackground.

6. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the PageStyle marker into your source document.
7. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
8. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
9. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the page using the page style you specified by clicking on the page and verifying ePublisher applied the page style you specified in the generated output. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Creating What's This (Field-Level) Help in Word

If you generate Microsoft HTML Help output, you can implement What's This help for product dialog boxes and windows. What's This Help is also known as field-level help. Only Microsoft HTML Help supports field-level help. In addition, not all products are designed to support field-level help for product dialog boxes and windows. Before you begin implementing field-level help, consult your product team to determine if field-level help part of the product design. If field-level help is part of the product design, you will also need to obtain the appropriate ID from your product team for each field-level help topic you need.

Users can view the field-level help you create using one of following methods:

- Users click on the question mark icon in the upper right corner of the dialog box or window.

When users click on the question mark icon, their cursor changes to a question mark. Users can then move the question mark cursor over the fields on the dialog box or window, and Windows displays the field-level help you created in a popup window when they hover over a specific field.

- Users right-click a field on a dialog box or window and then select the **What's This?** option from the single option menu Windows displays.

After users select this option, Windows displays the field-level help you specify in in a popup window.

Users close the popup window that provides the field-level help by pressing the `ESC` key on the keyboard. When users press the `ESC` key, their cursor returns to the regular cursor shape for the user.

To create What's This help, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- What Is This help paragraph style

WhatIsThisHelpIDThe following procedure provides an example of how to create What's This help in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for creating What's This help in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To create What's This help in a Microsoft Word source documents

1. Identify a topic that contains field-level help.
2. Apply the What Is This paragraph style to the text that contains the field-level help.
3. Insert your cursor into the field-level help text.
4. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
5. In the **Marker** field, select **WhatIsThisID** from the list of markers.
6. In the **Value** field, type the appropriate ID for the field-level description. Obtain appropriate IDs for each field-level description from your product team.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see "Generating Output" on page 353.

10. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the What's This help you specified by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. Open the `ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.
 - c. Open the `whatisthis.txt` file and verify that the field-level help you created is associated with the correct ID you received from your product development team.
 - d. Open the `whatisthis.h` file and verify that each new string you added is listed in the file.

Opening Topics in Custom Windows in Word

You can open topics in custom windows in Microsoft HTML Help and Oracle Help. By default, Microsoft HTML Help displays content in the standard Microsoft HTML Help tri-pane window. The Stationery designer can modify the size, position, and other characteristics of the tri-pane window in your Microsoft HTML Help project. The Stationery designer can also define custom windows for you to use in a Microsoft HTML Help project. If the Stationery designer defines custom windows in a Microsoft HTML Help project, you can specify which topics you want to display in the custom window using the `WindowType` marker.

By default, Oracle Help displays content in the standard Oracle Help viewer. The Stationery designer can modify the size, position, and other characteristics of Oracle Help windows. The Stationery designer can also define custom windows for you to use in an Oracle Help project. If the Stationery designer defines custom windows in an Oracle Help project, you can specify which topics you want to display in the custom window using the `WindowType` marker.

For example, if you want your context-sensitive help topics to display in a different type of window than other content, after you create a context-sensitive help topic you can use the `WindowType` marker to specify that you want the context-sensitive help topics to display in a custom window. After you assign a custom window to a topic using the `WindowType` marker, the help system displays the topic in your generated output in the custom window whenever users access the topic from the table of contents, index, a standard hyperlink, a related topics list, or a See Also link.

To open topics in custom windows, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Custom window styles defined for your Stationery by the Stationery designer
- `PageStyle` marker type

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify topics open in custom Microsoft HTML Help or Oracle Help windows in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying topics open in custom Microsoft HTML Help or Oracle Help windows in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify topics open in a custom window in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Obtain the names of custom windows configured in the Stationery you use for your ePublisher project from the Stationery designer.
2. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the topic that you want to open in a custom window.
3. Insert your cursor into the topic.
4. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
5. In the **Marker** list, select **WindowType** from the list.
6. In the **Value** field, type the name of the custom window configured by the Stationery designer that you want to specify for the topic.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. In Output Explorer, verify the topic displays in the custom window you specified for the topic. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Customizing Table of Contents Icons in Word

By default, the **Contents** tab in a Microsoft HTML Help, Oracle Help, and WebWorks Help uses book and page icons to identify entries. By default, the **Contents** tab in Sun JavaHelp uses folder and page icons to identify entries. You can also customize the table of contents icons.

For example, if you want to make new topics stand out by using a unique icon specific to new books, pages, or folders, you can insert a marker into a topic and specify the icon you want to display for the book, page, or folder in your help system table of contents.

To customize a table of contents icon, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- TOCIconHTMLHelp for Microsoft HTML Help
- TOCIconOracleHelp for Oracle Help
- TOCIconJavaHelp for Sun JavaHelp
- TOCIconWWHelp for WebWorks Help

The following procedure provides an example of how to customize table of contents icons for topics in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for customizing table of contents icons for topics in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify a custom table of contents icon in a Microsoft Word source document

1. *If you want to specify a custom table of contents icon for Microsoft HTML Help*, identify the number of the image you want to use for the table of contents image for the topic in the .hhp file for your Microsoft HTML Help project by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. Open the `ProjectName` folder, where `ProjectName` is the name of your project.
 - c. Open the `ProjectName.hhp` file where `ProjectName` is the name of your project.
 - d. On the **Contents** tab, select a table of contents entry, and then click the **Pencil** icon.
 - e. On the **Advanced** tab, in the **Image index** field, use the up and down arrows to identify the table of contents image you want to use for the topic.
 - f. Note the number of the image you want to use for the table of contents image for the topic.

For example, if you want to use a question mark icon with a red star for the table of contents icon for new topics, note that the number for this icon is 10.
 - g. Close HTML Help Workshop.
2. *If you want to specify a custom table of contents icon for Oracle Help or Sun JavaHelp*, create the graphic file for the custom table of contents icon in .gif format. The default graphics used as Sun JavaHelp or Oracle Help table of contents icons are 17 x 17 pixels. The custom graphics you create for Sun JavaHelp or Oracle Help table of contents icons should also be 17 x 17 pixels. You can assign any name to the graphic files.

3. ***If you want to specify a custom table of content icon for WebWorks help***, create graphics files containing the collapsed and expanded versions of the icons you want to use, then save the graphic files in .gif format. The default graphics used as WebWorks Help table of contents icons are 17 x 17 pixels. The custom graphics you create for WebWorks Help table of contents icons should also be 17 x 17 pixels. You can assign any name to the graphic files.

4. Copy the graphic files you want to use as icons in the table of contents into the following folder:

Note: If the folder does not exist, first create the folder using the specified folder structure and then copy the graphic files you want to use as icons into the folder. You do not need to perform this step when specifying custom table of contents icons for Microsoft HTML Help.

- ***If you are generating Oracle Help***, copy the graphic files you want to use into the following folder:

ProjectName\Formats\Oracle Help\Files\images folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

- ***If you are generating Sun JavaHelp 1.1.3***, copy the graphic files you want to use into the following folder:

ProjectName\Formats\Sun Java Help 1.1.3\Files\images folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

- ***If you are generating Sun JavaHelp 2.0***, copy the graphic files you want to use into the following folder:

ProjectName\Formats\Sun Java Help 2.0\Files\images folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

- ***If you are generating WebWorks Help***, in your *ProjectName*\Files folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project, create a wwhelp\images subfolder and copy the graphic files you want to use into this folder. Your project file structure should be similar to the following structure:

ProjectName\Files\wwhelp\images, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

5. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the topic where you want to use the custom table of contents icon.
6. Insert your cursor into the heading for the topic.
7. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
8. In the **Marker** list, select the appropriate TOCIcon marker type from the list.

9. In the **Value** field, type the following text:

- **If you are generating Microsoft HTML Help**, type the number of the icon that you want to use for the table of contents image.

For example, if you want to use a question mark icon with a red star for the table of contents icon for new topics, type 10.

- **If you are generating Oracle Help or Sun JavaHelp**, type the following text:

`images/TOCIcon.gif`

where `TOCIcon.gif` is the name of the table of contents icon you want to display for the topic.

- **If you are generating WebWorks Help**, type the following text:

`c="collapsed.gif" e="expanded.gif"`

where `collapsed.gif` is the name of the icon you want to use when the table of contents entry is collapsed, and `expanded.gif` is the name of the icon you want to use when the table of contents entry is expanded. If the table of contents entry is for a page instead of a book, the entry will never be expanded, so you can omit the `e="expanded.gif"` portion of the entry for pages.

For example, you might create a special icon to highlight books that are new for a particular release of your WebWorks Help system. If you named these icons `newbookopen.gif` and `newbookclosed.gif`, you would type the following text into the **Value** field:

`c="newbookclosed.gif" e="newbookopen.gif"`

10. Click **OK**.
11. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
12. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
13. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher created the table of contents using the table of contents icon you specified for the topic. For more information about viewing output files in Output Explorer, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Specifying Context Plug-ins in Word

You can specify Eclipse Help context plug-ins by using Context Plugin markers in your source documents. ePublisher places the context plug-ins you specify in your source documents in the `plugin.xml` file generated for each source document group you have in Document Manager. You can then have developers use the context plug-ins defined in `plugin.xml` files to call your Eclipse Help system as appropriate from Eclipse plug-ins.

For example, assume you have the following three top-level groups in Document Manager for your Eclipse Help system target:

- Component A group - contains the source documents for ComponentA Feature1 and ComponentA Feature2
- Component B group - contains the source documents for ComponentB Feature1 and ComponentB Feature 2
- Component C group - contains the source documents for ComponentC Feature1 and ComponentC Feature 2

You insert the following Context Plugin markers into the source documents for each group:

- ComponentAFeature1 and ComponentAFeature2 Context Plugin markers in source documents contained in the ComponentA group
- ComponentBFeature1 and ComponentBFeature2 Context Plugin markers in source documents contained in the ComponentB group
- ComponentCFeature1 and ComponentCFeature2 Context Plugin markers in source documents contained in the ComponentC group

When you generate your Eclipse Help system, ePublisher creates the following folder structure in the `ProjectName\Output\TargetName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your ePublisher project, and *TargetName* is the name of your target:

- ComponentA folder, which contains a `plugin.xml` file with the following entries:

```
plugin="ComponentAFeature1ContextPlugin"
plugin="ComponentAFeature2ContextPlugin"
```
- ComponentB folder, which contains a `plugin.xml` file with the following entries:

```
plugin="ComponentBFeature1ContextPlugin"
plugin="ComponentBFeature2ContextPlugin"
```
- ComponentC folder, which contains a `plugin.xml` file with the following entries:

```
plugin="ComponentCFeature1ContextPlugin"
plugin="ComponentCFeature2ContextPlugin"
```


You can then provide the context plug-in IDs in your `plugin.xml` files to the appropriate Eclipse developers to use. The Eclipse developers use the context plug-ins defined in `plugin.xml` files to call your Eclipse Help system as appropriate from Eclipse plug-ins.

To specify a context plug-in in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Identify a topic in a source document where you want to insert the context plug-in.
2. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
3. In the **Marker Type** field, select **Context Plugin** from the list of markers.
4. In the **Value** field, type the appropriate ID for the context plug-in.

Note: If you are responsible for defining the ID, ensure you supply the context plug-in ID to your developers to use as appropriate for their Eclipse plug-ins. If your developers define the ID, use the context plug-in ID you obtained from your developers.

5. Click **OK**.
6. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
7. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

8. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher generated a `plugin.xml` file that contains the context plug-in IDs you specified by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. Open the *ProjectName* folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.
 - c. Open the group folder for a group that contains the source documents where you specified your context plug-in ID.
 - d. Open the `plugin.xml` file in Notepad and verify that the context plug-in IDs you specified in your source documents are listed in the `plugin.xml` file. Your context plug-in IDs should be listed in the Contexts area of the file. Following is an example of the how the context plug-in IDs you specified in your source documents should be displayed in the `plugin.xml` file:

```
<!-- Contexts -->
<!--      -->
<extension point="org.eclipse.help.contexts">
    <contexts file="contexts.xml"
plugin="ComponentAFeature1ContextPlugin" />
</extension>
<extension point="org.eclipse.help.contexts">
    <contexts file="contexts.xml"
plugin="ComponentAFeature2ContextPlugin" />
</extension>
```

Creating Accessible Online Content in Word

Accessible content is content that can be easily accessed by users with certain disabilities. This section explains how you can prepare your Microsoft Word source documents to ensure your content is accessible to users using assistive technologies.

Understanding Accessible Content in Word

Images and tables are helpful ways to convey information to end users. However, users with disabilities often cannot access the important information provided by images and table layouts in online content. You should document images and other non-text items such as table layouts so that users using assistive technologies to access online content can access the information these items provide.

Content that must easily be accessed by people with disabilities must conform to certain guidelines published by both the W3C and the United States government in order to produce accessible online output, also known as Section 508 compliant output. These guidelines are intended to help writers produce accessible content.

You can use ePublisher to help you produce online content that conforms to the W3C Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 1.0 (WCAG), Section 508 of the U.S. Rehabilitation Act of 1998, and the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). If you are required to generate accessible content, typically you provide the following items in your online content:

- Alternate text and descriptions for all images and image maps. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in Word” on page 277.
- Long descriptions for all images. For more information, see “Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in Word” on page 280.
- Summaries for all tables. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text (Summaries) to Tables in Word” on page 290.

You may also choose to provide the following items in your online content:

- Alternate text for abbreviations. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in Word” on page 292.
- Alternate text for acronyms. For more information, see “Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in Word” on page 292.
- Citations for quotes. For more information, see “Providing Citations for Quotes in Word” on page 295.

You must prepare source documents and configure your ePublisher project in order to create accessible content. You prepare your source documents by inserting markers into your source documents and by applying character formats and paragraph formats. You configure accessibility settings in the ePublisher project. ePublisher uses the information in your source documents and your ePublisher project to generate accessible online output.

For more information about producing accessible content and to check your content further for compliance, see the following Web sites:

- For the complete W3C note on the WCAG, visit <http://www.w3c.org/TR/WCAG10-CORE-TECHS>.
- For information about the related Web Accessibility Initiative, visit <http://www.w3.org/WAI>.
- For information about Section 508 of the U.S. Rehabilitation Act of 1998, visit <http://www.w3.org/WAI/Policy/#508>.

Understanding Accessible Content Navigation in Word

Users can navigate through the accessible content using keys on the keyboard. The following output formats support navigation keys:

- Dynamic HTML
- Microsoft HTML Help
- Oracle Help
- WebWorks Help

Note: For the Dynamic HTML, navigation key behavior may vary based on the browser the user uses. For example, in Netscape and Mozilla, users must hold down the **Alt** key while pressing the navigation keys. In Internet Explorer, users must first hold down the **Alt** key while pressing the navigation key, and then press **Enter**.

The following table lists the how each output format supports navigation keys.

Navigation Key	Function	Format
1	Display the TOC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic HTML • WebWorks Help 5.0
2	Display the Index	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic HTML • WebWorks Help 5.0
3	Display the Search tab	WebWorks Help 5.0
4	Go to the previous page	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic HTML • Microsoft HTML Help • Oracle Help • WebWorks Help 5.0 <p>If you are using Microsoft HTML Help, Alt+4 works only if the topic pane has the focus. If the topic pane does not have the focus, you must press Alt+0 and then Alt+4.</p> <p>If you are using Oracle Help, you must press Enter after pressing Alt+4.</p>
5	Go to the next page	<p>Dynamic HTML, Microsoft HTML Help 1.x, Oracle Help, and WebWorks Help 5.0</p> <p>If you are using Microsoft HTML Help, the Alt+5 key works only if the topic pane has the focus. If the topic pane does not have the focus, you must press Alt+ 0 and then Alt +5.</p> <p>If you are using Oracle Help, you must press Enter after pressing Alt+5.</p>

Navigation Key	Function	Format
6	Shift the focus to the related topics list displayed at the bottom of the current page	WebWorks Help 5.0 After you press the 6 key, you can press Tab to cycle through the entries in the related topics list.
7	Display a blank feedback e-mail (equivalent to clicking the e-mail button in the toolbar frame)	WebWorks Help 5.0
8	Print the current page (equivalent to clicking the Print button in the toolbar frame)	WebWorks Help 5.0
9	Bookmark the current page (equivalent to clicking the Bookmark button in the toolbar frame)	WebWorks Help 5.0
10	Shift the focus to the topic frame (equivalent to clicking within the topic frame)	WebWorks Help 5.0

Validating Accessible Content in Word

After you configure your source documents and configure the appropriate settings, ePublisher uses Accessibility conformance reports to perform the following checks to verify that the generated output conforms to accessibility standards:

- Alternate text for all images
- Alternate text for all clickable regions in all image maps
- Long descriptions for all images
- Summaries for all tables

Note: ePublisher does not verify that you have provided alternate text for abbreviations or acronyms or verify that you have included citations for quotes. For more information about understanding and using the Accessibility conformance reports ePublisher provides, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369, and “Generating Reports” on page 370.

Assigning Alternate Text to Images and Image Maps in Word

This section provides information about how to create accessible images and image maps in your generated output by assigning alternate text to images.

Understanding Image and Image Map Alternate Text in Word

One of the largest accessibility challenges with online content today is the lack of alternative text for images and image maps. Sight-impaired users often use screen readers or refreshable Braille devices to read online content. However, when these assistive technologies come across images or image maps without alternative text, also known as alternate text, they are unable to provide users with information about the image or image map and its meaning.

The Web Content Accessibility Guidelines require that alternate text be provided for all images and image maps in online content. The alternate text is an image label that describes the image or each area of the image map. Online content should display alternate text for images and image maps when users perform the following actions:

- The user hovers the mouse pointer over an image or section of an image map.
- The user browser has been configured to disable display of images and image maps.
- The user browser is a text-only browser such as Lynx.
- The user uses assistive technology such as a screen reader.

The alternate text you assign to an image or sections of an image map should be as accurate and as succinct as possible and provide users with a brief description of the image and how the image relates to the page they are viewing. Make sure that your alternate text conveys all of the important information related to the image or image map section, but do not burden users with excessively long alternative text. Screen readers or refreshable Braille devices always read the alternative text, so if your page has several images or complex image maps with long descriptions, it can take a long time for the assistive devices to read image-heavy pages with long descriptions. If you need to provide a description of the image or image map section that is more than a few words or a few short sentences, you should provide a brief alternate text description of the image or image map section and then assign a longer description the image using either the `longdesc` attribute or a description. Once you specify a long description using the `longdesc` attribute, you can also optionally display a D link next to the image. For more information about assigning long descriptions to images, see “Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in Word” on page 280.

Assigning Alternate Text to Images in Word

Use the **Web** tab on the Format Picture window to assign alternate text to images in Microsoft Word source documents.

The following procedure provides an example of how to assign alternate text to images in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for assigning alternate text to images in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To assign alternate text to an image in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the image for which you want to specify image scaling.
2. Right-click the image, and then click **Format Picture** or **Format Object**.
3. On the **Web** tab, in the **Alternative text** field, type the alternate text you want to specify for the image.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
6. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
7. Verify ePublisher assigned the alternate text you specified to the image when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the image to which you assigned alternate text in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the alternate text you specified is included in the `alt` tag for the image.

Assigning Alternate Text to Image Maps in Word

Use the **Web** tab on the Format Text Box window to assign alternate text to areas of an image map in Microsoft Word source documents.

The following procedure provides an example of how to assign alternate text to an image map in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for assigning alternate text to an image map in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To assign alternate text to an image map in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the image map for which you want to specify alternate text.
2. For each clickable area of the image map, complete the following steps:
 - a. Right-click the text box that defines a clickable region for the image map.
 - b. On the **Web** tab, in the **Alternative text** field, type the alternate text you want to specify for the image.
 - c. Click **OK**.
3. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
4. Verify ePublisher assigned the alternate text you specified to each area of the image map when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the image map to which you assigned alternate text in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the alternate text you specified is included in the `alt` tag for each area of the image map.

Assigning Long Descriptions to Images in Word

This section explains how to create accessible images in your generated output by assigning long descriptions to images.

Understanding Image Long Descriptions

The Web Content Accessibility Guidelines and Section 508 guidelines require you to include long descriptions for each image in an HTML document. You can use the `longdesc` attribute and a long descriptions stored in an external `.txt` file to assign a long description to an image. When you use this approach, the long descriptions are referenced in the HTML `` tag in the `longdesc` attribute as shown in the following example:

```

```

The `longdesc` attribute in the `` tag provides a link to a separate page where a long description is available. The link is invisible to sighted users, but when a conformant screen reader application reads the `longdesc` attribute, it loads the file referenced in the `longdesc` attribute and reads it. In the previous example, the screen reader would load and read the `mission.txt` file.

ePublisher provides the following options for assigning long descriptions to images:

- You can use the `ImageLongDescText` marker to assign a long description to an image. With this method, you assign a long description to an image using a description you include in a marker you insert into your source document. For more information, see “Specifying Long Descriptions for Images in Word” on page 282.
- You can use the `ImageLongDescByRef` marker to assign a long description to an image by referencing a long description saved in an external text (`.txt`) file. With this method, you specify the path to the external text file in a marker. For more information, see “Using Text in External Files to Assign Long Descriptions to Images in Word” on page 284.

If you assign long descriptions to some, but not all of your images, you can use the `ImageLongDescNotReq` marker. Use this marker when you use accessibility reports to verify that all images have long descriptions but you have certain images in your source document that do not require a long description. For more information, see “Excluding Images from Accessibility Report Checks in Word” on page 287.

Although using the `longdesc` attribute is recommended in the Web Content Accessibility Guidelines and in 508 guidelines, older screen readers and many current browsers do not support this attribute and few online content developers use this attribute. As a result, the `longdesc` attributed benefits only a small number of users. Only users who use modern screen readers can access the `longdesc` attribute easily. Older screen readers did not support this attribute. In addition, even users who use the latest version of screen reader may be unfamiliar with the `longdesc` attribute and may not know how to access long descriptions using their screen reader because the `longdesc` attribute is used so infrequently in online content.

If you use the `ImageLongDescText` marker to assign long descriptions to images, as an interim solution ePublisher allows you to display a D link immediately after the image. The D link is an upper case letter D link that directs users to another page that contains the text you specified in the `ImageLongDescText` marker. Although a D link is not required for accessible Web pages, it can be used in addition to the `longdesc` attribute. The D link technique works in all browsers, but it is less elegant than using the `longdesc` attribute. Some users may be confused when they see a D link on the page, while other users will ignore the D link.

If you want to use D links in addition to the `longdesc` attribute when you generate output, your Stationery must have the D link option enabled. If you have permissions to modify target settings in ePublisher, you can enable the D link option setting in a project. For more information about enabling the D link option in a project, see “Specifying Accessibility Settings” on page 383. For more information about permissions required to modify target settings using ePublisher Express, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.

Specifying Long Descriptions for Images in Word

To assign a long description to an image, your Stationery and template must have the ImageLongDescText marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

When you use the ImageLongDescText marker to assign long descriptions to images, ePublisher generates an external text file that contains the long description you specify. When a conformant screen reader application reads the generated page, it loads the .txt file referenced in the longdesc attribute on the page and reads the file.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify long descriptions for images in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specify long descriptions for images in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To assign a long description to an image using marker text in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the image to which you want to assign a long description.
2. Right-click the image, and then click **Format Picture** or **Format Object**.
3. Change the layout setting of the image to **Top and Bottom** by completing the following steps:

Note: By default when you insert images into Microsoft Word, Microsoft Word inserts the image using the **Inline with text layout** setting. In order to specify the image scale for image output files, you must group the image and the text box that contains the ImageLongDescText marker. However, you cannot group images using the **In line with text** layout setting in Microsoft Word. To work around this known Microsoft Word issue, if you have an image that uses an **In line with text** layout setting, use the **Top and Bottom** layout setting for the image while you insert the ImageLongDescText marker, and then reapply the **In line with text** layout setting after you group the image and the ImageLongDescText marker.

- a. On the **Layout** tab, click **Advanced**.
- b. On the **Text Wrapping** tab, click **Top and Bottom**.
- c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
4. Select your image.
5. On the **Insert** menu, click **Text Box**, and then click to the right of your image. Microsoft Word inserts a text box.

6. Insert your cursor into the text box, and then complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - b. In the **Markers** field, select **ImageLongDescText** from the list of markers.
 - c. In the **Value** field, type the long description you want to specify for the image.
 - d. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the ImageLongDescText marker into the text box.
 - e. Select the text box.
 - f. Right-click the selected text box, and then click **Format Text Box**.
 - g. On the **Colors and Lines** tab, in the **Fill** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Fill**.
 - h. In the **Line** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Line**.
 - i. Click **OK**.
7. Drag and drop the text box onto the image.
8. Select the text box and the image.
9. Right-click the selected text box and image, and then click **Grouping > Group**.

Note: When you select **Group**, the location of the image in your Microsoft Word source document may change in relation to the text in your source document. For example, the image may move up or down in your Microsoft Word source document. This is known Microsoft Word behavior. You may need to scroll up or down in your source document to the new location of the image to find the image.

10. *If your image previously used the **In line with text layout setting for the image**, reassign this style to your image by completing the following steps:*
 - a. Right-click only the image, and then click **Format Object**.

Note: You must ensure you right-click only the image, and not on the text box or the grouped text box and image. If you right-click on the text box or the grouped text box and image, Microsoft Word does not display the **Format Object** menu option on the context menu.
 - b. On the **Layout** tab, click **In line with text**.
 - c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
11. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
12. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

13. Verify ePublisher assigned the long description to the image by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName\images* folder, verify that ePublisher created a .txt file that contains the long description you specified in the ImageLongDescText marker, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.

For example, if you specified a long description for *ImageName.png*, verify that ePublisher created an *ImageName.txt* file in the *images* folder, where *ImageName* is the name of the image to which you assigned a long description.
 - c. In the *TargetName\ProjectName* folder, open the page that contains the image to which you assigned the long description in Notepad and verify that the longdesc attribute references the *ImageName.txt* file ePublisher created for the image, where *TargetName* is the name of your target, *ProjectName* is the name of your project, and *ImageName* is the name of the image to which you assigned a long description.
 - d. ***If you used the ImageLongDescText marker and the Stationery designer configured your Stationery to support D links***, open the page in a browser, verify that the D link displays in the browser, and then click the D link and verify that a page opens that displays the long description that you specified in the ImageLongDescText marker.

Using Text in External Files to Assign Long Descriptions to Images in Word

Use the ImageLongDescByRef marker to assign long descriptions to images using text in external files. To assign a long description to an image, your Stationery and template must have the ImageLongDescText marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to use text in external files to assign long descriptions to images in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for using text in external files to assign long descriptions to images in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To assign a long description to an image using marker text in a Microsoft Word source document

1. Create a .txt file that contains each image long description.
2. Place each image long description text file in a folder in the `ProjectName\Formats\TargetName\Files` folder for your project, where *ProjectName* is the name of your ePublisher project and *TargetName* is the name of your target.

For example, place the each image long description in the following location:

```
ProjectName\Formats\TargetName\Files\longdescriptions\imagelongdescription.txt
```

where *ProjectName* is the name of your ePublisher project, *TargetName* is the name of your target, *longdescriptions* is the name of the folder where you placed the image long description, and *imagelongdescription* is the name of the .txt file that contains the image long description.

3. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the image to which you want to assign a long description.
4. Right-click the image, and then click **Format Picture** or **Format Object**.
5. Change the layout setting of the image to **Top and Bottom** by completing the following steps:

Note: By default when you insert images into Microsoft Word, Microsoft Word inserts the image using the **Inline with text layout** setting. In order to specify the image scale for image output files, you must group the image and the text box that contains the ImageLongDescByRef marker. However, you cannot group images using the **In line with text** layout setting in Microsoft Word. To work around this known Microsoft Word issue, if you have an image that uses an **In line with text** layout setting, use the **Top and Bottom** layout setting for the image while you insert the ImageLongDescText marker, and then reapply the **In line with text** layout setting after you group the image and the ImageLongDescText marker.

- a. On the **Layout** tab, click **Advanced**.
 - b. On the **Text Wrapping** tab, click **Top and Bottom**.
 - c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
6. Select your image.
 7. On the **Insert** menu, click **Text Box**, and then click to the right of your image. Microsoft Word inserts a text box.

8. Insert your cursor into the text box, and then complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - b. In the **Markers** field, select `ImageLongDescByRef` from the list of markers.
 - c. In the **Value** field, type the path to the `.txt` file that contains the long description you want to assign to the image.

For example, type:

```
./longdescriptions/imagelongdescription.txt
```

where `longdescriptions` is the name of the folder where you placed the image long description, and `imagelongdescription` is the name of the `.txt` file that contains the image long description.

- d. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the `ImageLongDescText` marker into the text box.
 - e. Select the text box.
 - f. Right-click the selected text box, and then click **Format Text Box**.
 - g. On the **Colors and Lines** tab, in the **Fill** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Fill**.
 - h. In the **Line** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Line**.
 - i. Click **OK**.
9. Drag and drop the text box onto the image.
10. Select the text box and the image.
11. Right-click the selected text box and image, and then click **Grouping > Group**.

Note: When you select **Group**, the location of the image in your Microsoft Word source document may change in relation to the text in your source document. For example, the image may move up or down in your Microsoft Word source document. This is known Microsoft Word behavior. You may need to scroll up or down in your source document to the new location of the image to find the image.

12. *If your image previously used the **In line with text** layout setting for the image,* reassign this style to your image by completing the following steps:
 - a. Right-click ***only*** the image, and then click **Format Object**.

Note: You must ensure you right-click ***only*** the image, and not on the text box or the grouped text box and image. If you right-click on the text box or the grouped text box and image, Microsoft Word does not display the **Format Object** menu option on the context menu.
 - b. On the **Layout** tab, click **In line with text**.
 - c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
13. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
14. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
15. In Output Explorer, verify ePublisher assigned the long description to the image using the long description in the external file when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName\ProjectName* folder, open the page that contains the image to which you assigned the long description using an external file in Notepad and verify that the `longdesc` attribute references the external text file that contains the long description for the image, where *TargetName* is the name of your target, and *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

Excluding Images from Accessibility Report Checks in Word

In some instances, alternate text is sufficient for an image, and assigning a long description to an image in addition to alternate text would be redundant. However, you may have configured Accessibility reports to check for images without long descriptions and notify you when an image does not have a long description.

In this scenario, while you want an Accessibility report to notify you when you have an image without a long description, you do not want to be notified when you deliberately did not assign a long description to an image because assigning a both a long description and alternative text would be redundant. To address this issue, you can use the `ImageLongDescNotReq` marker to exclude an image that deliberately does not have a long description from validation when you generate Accessibility reports. For more information about Accessibility reports and configuring and generating Accessibility reports, see “Understanding Accessibility Reports” on page 366, “Configuring Reports” on page 369, and “Generating Reports” on page 370.

To exclude images without long descriptions from Accessibility reports, your Stationery and template must have the ImageLongDescNotReq marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to exclude images without long descriptions from Accessibility report checks in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for excluding images without long descriptions from Accessibility report checks in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To exclude an image without a long description from Accessibility report checks in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the image without a long description that you want to exclude from an Accessibility report check.
2. Change the layout setting of the image to **Top and Bottom** by completing the following steps:

Note: By default when you insert images into Microsoft Word, Microsoft Word inserts the image using the **Inline with text layout** setting. In order to specify the image scale for image output files, you must group the image and the text box that contains the ImageLongDescNotReq marker. However, you cannot group images using the **In line with text** layout setting in Microsoft Word. To work around this known Microsoft Word issue, if you have an image that uses an **In line with text** layout setting, use the **Top and Bottom** layout setting for the image while you insert the ImageLongDescNotReq marker, and then reapply the **In line with text** layout setting after you group the image and the ImageLongDescNotReq marker.

- a. On the **Layout** tab, click **Advanced**.
 - b. On the **Text Wrapping** tab, click **Top and Bottom**.
 - c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.
3. Select your image.
4. On the **Insert** menu, click **Text Box**, and then click to the right of your image. Microsoft Word inserts a text box.

5. Insert your cursor into the text box, and then complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
 - b. In the **Markers** field, select ImageLongDescNotReq from the list of markers.
 - c. In the **Value** field, do not enter any text. You do not need to enter any text in this field when you insert a ImageLongDescNotReq marker.
 - d. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the ImageLongDescText marker into the text box.
 - e. Select the text box.
 - f. Right-click the selected text box, and then click **Format Text Box**.
 - g. On the **Colors and Lines** tab, in the **Fill** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Fill**.
 - h. In the **Line** area, in the **Color** field, select **No Line**.
 - i. Click **OK**.
6. Drag and drop the text box onto the image.
7. Select the text box and the image.
8. Right-click the selected text box and image, and then click **Grouping > Group**.

Note: When you select **Group**, the location of the image in your Microsoft Word source document may change in relation to the text in your source document. For example, the image may move up or down in your Microsoft Word source document. This is known Microsoft Word behavior. You may need to scroll up or down in your source document to the new location of the image to find the image.

9. *If your image previously used the **In line with text layout setting for the image**, reassign this style to your image by completing the following steps:*

- a. Right-click only the image, and then click **Format Object**.

Note: You must ensure you right-click only the image, and not on the text box or the grouped text box and image. If you right-click on the text box or the grouped text box and image, Microsoft Word does not display the **Format Object** menu option on the context menu.

- b. On the **Layout** tab, click **In line with text**.
- c. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** again to close the window.

10. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
11. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

12. Generate an Accessibility report and confirm that ePublisher did not generate an Image is missing a long description message for the image. For more information about generating Accessibility reports and Accessibility report messages, see “Generating Reports” on page 370 and “Accessibility Report Messages” on page 371.

Assigning Alternate Text (Summaries) to Tables in Word

Tables, just like images, are a way to visually display information. Although tables typically contain text, the purpose of the table is often not evident from text alone. The organization and display of the table may contain information that is not evident to assistive technologies. However, through the use of table summaries, assistive technologies can convey useful information to users about tables. The Web Content Accessibility Guidelines recommend that you provide summary text for each table in an HTML document. Table alternate text, or table summaries, provide users with information about what type of information the table contains.

You can create accessible tables by typing the table summary into a TableSummary marker. When ePublisher generates content, ePublisher puts the table summary you specify into the table in the `summary` attribute.

To assign alternate text to tables, your Stationery and template must have the TableSummary marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to assign alternate text to tables in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for assigning alternate text to tables in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To assign table summaries in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the table to which you want to assign a table summary.
2. Insert your cursor in front of the table.
3. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
4. In the **Markers** field, select **TableSummary** from the list of markers.
5. In the **Value** field, type the alternate text for the table.
6. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the TableSummary marker into the table.
7. Insert the marker into the table caption by clicking **OK**.
8. Save your Microsoft Word source document.

9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. Verify ePublisher assigned the table summary you specified to the table when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the table to which you assigned a table summary in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the table summary you specified is included in the `summary` attribute for the table.

Excluding Tables from Accessibility Report Checks in Word

Tables used specifically for layout may not need a table summary. For example, if you use a table for layout, you probably would not assign a table summary to the table. However, you may have configured Accessibility reports to check for tables without table summaries and notify you when a table does not have a table summary.

In this scenario, while you want an Accessibility report to notify you when you have a table without a table summary, you do not want to be notified when you deliberately did not assign a table summary to a table because a table summary is not required. To address this issue, you can use the `TableSummaryNotReq` marker to exclude a table that deliberately does not have a table summary from validation when you generate Accessibility reports. For more information about Accessibility reports and configuring and generating Accessibility reports, see “Understanding Accessibility Reports” on page 366, “Configuring Reports” on page 369, and “Generating Reports” on page 370.

To exclude tables from Accessibility report checks, your Stationery must have the `TableSummaryNotReq` marker type configured. Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to exclude tables without table summaries from Accessibility report checks in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for excluding tables without table summaries from Accessibility report checks in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To exclude a table with a table summary from Accessibility report checks in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the table without a table summary that you want to exclude from an Accessibility report check.
2. Insert your cursor in front of the table.

3. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
4. In the **Markers** field, select **TableSummaryNotReq** from the list of markers.
5. In the **Value** field, do not enter any text. You do not need to enter any text in this field when you insert a TableSummaryNotReq marker.
6. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the TableSummaryNotReq marker into the table.
7. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
8. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
9. Generate the Accessibility report and confirm that ePublisher did not generate an `Table is missing a table summary` message for the table. For more information about generating Accessibility reports and Accessibility report messages, see “Generating Reports” on page 370 and “Accessibility Report Messages” on page 371.

Assigning Alternate Text to Abbreviations in Word

Abbreviations are often used in written communication. Using an Abbreviation character style and an AbbreviationTitle marker, you can specify alternate text for abbreviations. For example, if your source document includes an abbreviation such as SS#, you can specify Social Security Number as alternate text for the abbreviation. When you use an AbbreviationTitle marker and Abbreviation character style to specify alternate text for an abbreviation, ePublisher adds the abbreviation alternate text you specify to the `title` attribute of the `abbr` tag in the output.

Following is an example of the HTML code produced when you specify Social Security Number as alternate text for SS#.

```
<th>First name</th>
<th><abbr title="Social Security Number">SS#</abbr></th>
```

To assign alternate text to abbreviations, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Abbreviation character style
- AbbreviationTitle marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify alternate text for abbreviations in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying alternate text for abbreviations in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify alternate text for an abbreviation in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the abbreviation for which you want to specify alternate text.
2. Apply the AbbreviationTitle character style to the abbreviation text.
3. Insert your cursor anywhere inside the abbreviation.
4. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
5. In the **Markers** field, select **AbbreviationTitle** from the list of markers.
6. In the **Value** field, type the abbreviation alternate text.
7. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the AbbreviationTitle marker into the abbreviation.
8. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. Verify ePublisher assigned the abbreviation alternate text you specified when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the abbreviation to which you assigned alternate text in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the alternate text you specified for the abbreviation is included in the `abbr` tag in the `title` attribute.

Assigning Alternate Text to Acronyms in Word

Acronyms are often used in written communication. Using an Acronym character style and an AcronymTitle marker, you can specify alternate text for acronyms. For example, if your document includes an acronym like NATO you can specify North Atlantic Treaty Organization as alternate text for the acronym. When you use an AcronymTitle marker and an Acronym character style to specify alternate text for an acronym, ePublisher adds the acronym alternate text you specify to the `title` attribute of the `acronym` tag in the output.

Following is an example of the HTML code produced when you specify North Atlantic Treaty Organization as alternate text for NATO.

```
<p><acronym title="North Atlantic Treaty Organization">NATO</acronym> is a
military alliance.<p>
```

To assign alternate text to acronyms, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Acronym character style
- AcronymTitle marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify alternate text for acronyms in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying alternate text for acronyms in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify alternate text for an acronym in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the acronym for which you want to specify alternate text.
2. Apply the AcronymTitle character style to the abbreviation text.
3. Insert your cursor anywhere inside the abbreviation.
4. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
5. In the **Markers** field, select **AcronymTitle** from the list of markers.
6. In the **Value** field, type the acronym alternate text.
7. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the AcronymTitle marker into the abbreviation.
8. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. Verify ePublisher assigned the acronym alternate text you specified when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the acronym to which you assigned alternate text in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the alternate text you specified for the acronym is included in the acronym tag in the title attribute.

Providing Citations for Quotes in Word

A **citation** is a reference or footnote to a book, article, or other material that specifies the source from which a quotation was borrowed. A citation contains all the information necessary to identify and locate the work. Using a Citation character style and the Citation marker, you can specify citations for quotes that enable users to go to a Web site that contains additional information about the quote.

Following is an example of the HTML code produced when you specify a citation for a quote.

```
<blockquote cite="http://shakespeare.mit.edu/lll/full.html">
<p>Remuneration! O! that's the Latin word for three farthings.
--- William Shakespeare (Love's Labor Lost).</p> </blockquote>
```

To provide citations for quotes, your Stationery and template must have the following items configured:

- Citation character style
- Citation marker type

Your output format must also support this feature. For more information about output formats that support this feature, see “Features Available in Each Output Format” on page 9.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify citations for quotes in Microsoft Word source documents using Microsoft Word 2003. Steps for specifying citations for quotes in Microsoft Word may be different in other versions of Microsoft Word.

To specify citations for quotes in a Microsoft Word source document

1. In your Microsoft Word source document, locate the quotation for which you want to specify a citation.
2. *If the quotation is a phrase within a paragraph*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Apply the Citation character style to the quotation phrase.
 - b. Insert your cursor anywhere inside the quotation phrase.
3. *If the quotation is a full paragraph*, insert your cursor into the paragraph.
 - c. On the **Special** menu, click **Marker**.
4. On the **WebWorks** menu, click **Markers**.
5. In the **Markers** field, select **Citation** from the list of markers.
6. In the **Value** field, type the URL for the citation.

7. Click **OK**. ePublisher inserts the Citation marker into the abbreviation.
8. Save your Microsoft Word source document.
9. Generate output for your project. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. Verify ePublisher created the citation you specified when it generated output by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. In the *TargetName* folder, open the page that has the quotation for which you specified a quotation in Notepad, where *TargetName* is the name of your target.
 - c. Verify that the citation you specified for the quotation is included in the `cite` attribute.

Troubleshooting Word issues

Occasionally there might be issues with the source documents you are using. Below is a list linking to the wiki solutions website that will help you troubleshoot each one:

Issue	For more information, see to...
If you are seeing hidden text in the output	Hidden text in output
If you are seeing inconsistent bullets in output	Inconsistent bullet sizes
If you are seeing an “infinite” number of transit menus in Word 2003	Transit Menu displays "infinite" menu syndrome
If you are using relative images	Relative Images
If you are using master docs	Using Microsoft Word Master Docs

Preparing DITA Source Documents

Before you can generate output using DITA source documents, you need to prepare your DITA source documents for output generation. This section explains how to prepare your DITA source files for output generation.

Checklist: Preparing DITA Source Documents

Use the following checklist to help you prepare your DITA source documents for output generation.

	Task	For more information, see to...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. If you want to create Context Sensitive Help	"Creating Context-Sensitive Help in DITA Source Documents" on page 301
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. If you want to create Popups	"Creating Popups in DITA Source Documents" on page 306
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. If you want to create Related Topics,	"Creating Related Topics in DITA Source Documents" on page 308
<input type="checkbox"/>	4. If you want to create Wiki Categories	"Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in DITA" on page 310
<input type="checkbox"/>	5. If you want to create See Also links,	"Creating See Also Links in DITA Source Documents" on page 311
<input type="checkbox"/>	6. If you want to assign a specific page style to specific pages,	"Assigning Custom Page Styles to Pages in DITA Source Documents" on page 313
<input type="checkbox"/>	7. If you want to customize the appearance of table of contents icons in your generated output,	"Customizing Table of Contents Icons for Topics in DITA Source Documents" on page 315

DITA 1.2 Support

Starting with version 2011.2, ePublisher includes support for the DITA 1.2 standard. For information on the complete set of DITA 1.2 topic types, elements, attributes, and other specifications you may want to visit:

http://www.webworks.com/Documentation/DITA_1.2_Specification.

Keyref elements

You can use the "keyref" feature in DITA 1.2 as an indirect addressing mechanism. Instead of linking directly to topics or maps, these can be given a symbolic name (key attribute) that points to a topic file path (href attribute). References to the topics are made using a key reference (keyref attribute). If the topic is relocated, the path needs to be updated only in the map where it is defined. All other references will automatically pick up the new location.

For more information, see [DITA 1.2 feature article: Keyref overview](http://dita.xml.org/resource/keyref-overview-dita-12) (<http://dita.xml.org/resource/keyref-overview-dita-12>).

Conref extensions

DITA 1.2 introduces new extensions to the conref element.

- Conref Range - Allows a single element to reference a range of elements.
- Conref Push - Most commonly used when your component adds to an existing component.
- Conkeyref - Allows you to use a key in the `conref` attribute so you can more easily change the target of the `conref`.

For more information, see [Understanding DITA 1.2: Keys, conref extensions, and more](http://dita.xml.org/resource/understanding-dita-12-keys-conref-extensions-and-more) (<http://dita.xml.org/resource/understanding-dita-12-keys-conref-extensions-and-more>).

New Document Type Definitions

DITA 1.2 introduces new, industry specific specializations:

- Classifications - specifically for information taxonomy for audience and relationships
- Glossary - support for acronym expansion and also for more information such as parts of speech and usage
- Learning - created by learning professionals with instructional design goals in mind

For more information, see [What's Coming in DITA 1.2](http://dita.xml.org/sites/dita.xml.org/files/DITA12.pdf) (<http://dita.xml.org/sites/dita.xml.org/files/DITA12.pdf>).

Using Ditaval files in DITA

For conditional text, DITA uses filtering to determine the user or audience that will be viewing the help content. Using a file called a “ditaval” file, you can control the filtering of the content that will be generated as output. You can place ditaval files within files using the name of the DITA map files that they are to be applied to similar to this (nested maps use the parentmap's ditaval file):

```
<ditamap name>.ditaval
```

With ePublisher you have 3 additional ways to handle ditaval files. The ditaval definitions are looked for in the following order.

- Per Target: Targets\<Target Name>\Adapters\xml\scripts\dita\default.ditaval
- Per Format: Formats\<Format Name>\Adapters\xml\scripts\dita\default.ditaval
- Entire project: Formats\Adapters\xml\scripts\dita\default.ditaval

The following example shows an example of how filtering works with the ditaval markup:

```
<val>
  <prop att="audience" val="web" action="exclude" />
</val>
```

The attributes within prop determine the action and who sees the material that is defined in the output.

action

include - Includes the content in output. This is the default behavior unless otherwise set.

exclude - Excludes the content from output (if all values in the particular attribute are excluded).

passthrough - Include the content in output, and preserve the attribute value as part of the output stream for further processing by a runtime engine, for example runtime filtering based on individual user settings

flag - include and flag the content on output (if the content has not been excluded).

att

The attribute to be acted. This must be one of props, audience, platform, product, otherprops, or a specialization of props. If the att attribute is absent, then the prop element declares a default behavior for any conditional processing attribute.

val

The value to be acted upon. If the val attribute is absent, then the prop element declares a default behavior for any value in the specified attribute.

For further explanation of the ditaVal file, please refer to the specification:

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.2/os/spec/common/about-ditaval.html#ditaval>

Using Passthrough outputclass in DITA

You may want to include some kind of HTML or Javascript in your output that would not be generated as normal output. For this example we are going to use a passthrough attribute on a paragraph tag in DITA. This will create a Passthrough paragraph style that you would switch to Passthrough in the paragraph options tab in ePublisher, for more information, See “Paragraph Styles Options” on page 93.

Below is an example of a Javascript alert in HTML using the CDATA attribute

```
<p outputclass="Passthrough">
<![CDATA[
<div><a href="alert('Yahoo!')">Click Me!</a></div>
]]>
</p>
```

Once you have entered in the paragraph that contains the passthrough attribute, re-scan the document and make sure that this passthrough paragraph has the “Passthrough” option enabled so that the HTML will not be processed.

Depending on the output, for example, browser-based (Dynamic HTML or WebWorks Help 5.0) versus PDF output, you may want to use ditaVal filtering to ensure that only the web-based output is getting output. For this instance, you would want to have the following DITA markup

```
<p outputclass="Passthrough" audience="web">
<![CDATA[
<div><a href="alert('Yahoo!')">Click Me!</a></div>
]]>
</p>
```

For the PDF output, for example you would want to have the Target override:

Targets\PDF\Adapters\xml\scripts\dita

and the default.ditval information:

```
<val>
  <prop att="audience" val="web" action="exclude" />
</val>
```

For the Dynamic HTML output you would want to have the Target override:

Targets\Dynamic HTML\Adapters\xml\scripts\dita

and the default.ditval information:

```
<val>
  <prop att="audience" val="web" action="include" />
</val>
```

Note: Depending on what your Target name and input is like, the information may be different than what is listed above. For more information on Target overrides, See “Creating Target Overrides” on page 427.

Creating Context-Sensitive Help in DITA Source Documents

This section explains how you can use ePublisher to create links to context-sensitive help content in DITA source documents

Understanding Context-Sensitive Help

Context-sensitive help provides immediate assistance and information to users without requiring users to leave the context in which they are working. It helps answer questions like "What is this?" and "Why would I use this?", and provides information for a particular object and its context.

For example, in many applications, user interface controls such as windows and tabs have a help button. When users click on the help button, the application links users to a help topic specific to the context of the window. Some applications also embedded context-sensitive help topics into the window itself as an HTML pane. The application relies on an identifier such as a topic ID or file name to identify the specific help topic to display.

There are several methods for creating context-sensitive help links. In addition, different output formats use different mechanisms to support context-sensitive help links. For example, some output formats, such as Microsoft HTML Help, create a map file using topic aliases. Applications then use the topic IDs in the map file to provide links to context-sensitive help topics from within the application. Other output formats do not have a mapping mechanism. However, these output formats may support creating links to context-sensitive help topics using file names.

Understanding Map Files

Many applications support the use of map files to deliver context-sensitive help. The topic IDs and map numbers are listed in a map file, which is a text file that typically has a `.h` extension. Applications can use the information in the map file to link users to the appropriate context-sensitive help topic.

Note: Some developers may use the term header file instead of map file.

There are some variations in the way context-sensitivity works depending on which supported ePublisher output format you use. For example, Microsoft WinHelp, Microsoft HTML Help, Sun JavaHelp, and Oracle Help output formats use map files.

Note: WebWorks Help, WebWorks Reverb, Simple HTML Help, Dynamic HTML Help, and XML+XSL output formats do not use map files.

When an application calls a context-sensitive help topic, it relies on the topic IDs and map numbers to identify the specific topic to display. Therefore, the topic IDs and map numbers must be embedded both in the application code and in the help system. If the topic IDs and map numbers do not match, the wrong topic (or no topic) displays when the user requests Help.

Following is a typical example of a Microsoft HTML Help and Microsoft WinHelp map file:

```
#define IDH_WDWTYPE      1001
#define IDH_WDWENTER     1002
#define IDH_WDWCANCEL    1003
```

In this example, `IDH_WDWTYPE` is a topic ID, and 1001 is the corresponding map number. These topic IDs and map numbers must be embedded in the software application and in your source documents.

Following is a typical example of a Sun JavaHelp and Oracle Help map file:

```
<mapID target="ch1_htm_999374" url="ch1.htm#999374">
<mapID target="ch2_htm_999640" url="ch2.htm#999640">
<mapID target="ch9_htm_999786" url="ch9.htm#999786">
```

In this example, `ch1_htm_99374` is a topic ID, and `ch1.htm#99374` is the target URL for the topic ID. These topic IDs must be embedded in the software application and in your source documents.

Planning for Context-Sensitive Help

Creating context-sensitive help requires you to collaborate with application developers. Because topic IDs and map numbers must be embedded in both the software application and in your source documents, you and the application developers must agree in advance on the values to use.

Before you create context-sensitive help topics, complete the following steps:

1. Confirm with your application developers that the application supports context-sensitive help.
2. Meet with your application developers to identify each context-sensitive help topic you need to create.
3. Determine if you will use topic IDs or file names to create links to context-sensitive help topics.
4. Discuss the process for referencing context-sensitive help topics from the application with your application developers. Writers and application developers have the following options for creating context-sensitive help links:

- The writer chooses the topic IDs or file names and embeds them in the source documents. If the generated output supports map files, the writer performs the following steps:
 - The writer uses topic IDs inserted into source documents and ePublisher to generate a map file, also known as a header file, that contains the topic IDs defined by the writer and automatically generated mapping IDs.
 - The writer supplies the generated map file to the application developers to implement.

Note: The writer must supply the header file along with the help system to the developers each time the writer updates the help system. This ensures correctly identified context-sensitive help topics each time.

- Application developers choose the topic IDs or file names and then give the topic IDs or filenames to the writer to embed in the source documents. If the generated output supports map files, the application developers perform the following steps:
 - Application developers create the map file, or header file.
 - Application developers give the writer a copy of the map file, or header file, and the writer embeds the topic IDs from the map file into the source documents.

Note: The group context must be unique so that if there are the same topic ID's in a help system, the context sensitive pointer will go to the correct place in the help.

Understanding Topic ID and File Name Requirements

If you are creating context-sensitive help topics using topic IDs, topic IDs must follow these guidelines:

- Must be unique
- Must begin with an alphabetical character
- May contain alphanumeric characters
- May not contain special characters or spaces, with the exception of underscores (_)

Dynamic HTML, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, Microsoft WinHelp, Oracle Help, Sun, WebWorks Help, and WebWorks Reverb support the use of topic IDs to create context-sensitive help.

If you are creating context-sensitive help topics using file names, file names must follow these guidelines:

- Must be unique
- Must begin with an alphabetical character
- May contain alphanumeric characters
- May not contain special characters or spaces

Microsoft Reader, Palm Reader, Simple HTML, and XML+XSL support the use of file names to create context-sensitive help.

Output Formats that support Creating Context-Sensitive Help Links In DITA Source Documents

The following table lists output formats available for creating context-sensitive help links.

Output Formats that Support Context-Sensitive Help Links
<p>You can use ePublisher to create context-sensitive help links for the following output formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic HTML • Eclipse Help • Microsoft HTML Help • Microsoft WinHelp • Oracle Help • Sun JavaHelp 1.1.3 • Sun JavaHelp 2.0 • WebWorks Help • WebWorks Reverb

Specifying Context-Sensitive Help Links in DITA Source Documents

Before you specify context-sensitive help links, review context-sensitive help link requirements. For more information about context-sensitive help and context-sensitive help link requirements, see “Understanding Context-Sensitive Help” on page 301 and “Output Formats that support Creating Context-Sensitive Help Links In DITA Source Documents” on page 304.

To specify a topic alias for a topic in a DITA source document:

1. In your DITA source document, locate your topic’s meta information container element.
2. For this element, you use the `<othermeta>` element to define the topic alias, for example: `<othermeta name="TopicAlias" content="helpid"/>`

Note: You can also use the `<data>` element to define topic alias values, for example: `<data name="TopicAlias" value="helpid"/>`
3. Save the DITA document
4. Generate output for your target. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353

Steps for creating context-sensitive help links in DITA may be different in other versions of DITA.

Creating Hyperlinks in DITA Source Documents

You will have to use DITA elements to create links in your documents so that ePublisher can create links to other topics or files in the online help output of your choice.

To create an a hyperlink to a topic in the same DITA file or another DITA file, complete the following steps

1. Identify your link type, as it will determine the markup that is required.
2. For a hyperlink that is going the same file create the following markup:
`<xref href="#yourtopicID">Your xref link text</xref>`
3. For a hyperlink that is going to a different file create the following markup:
`<xref href="file.xml#yourtopicID">Your xref link text</xref>`
4. For a hyperlink that is going to a PDF create the following markup:
`<xref format="PDF" href="sample.PDF">Your xref link text</xref>`

Creating Popups in DITA Source Documents

This section explains how to create popups in DITA source documents.

Understanding Popups

A **popup window** is a window that is smaller than standard windows and typically does not contain some of the standard window features such as tool bars or status bars. Popup windows display when users hover over or click on a link. The popup topic closes automatically as soon as the users clicks somewhere else.

A typical use of popups is to display glossary terms. For example, in a printed document, terms and definitions are typically grouped in a separate glossary document. However, in a help system, you can display glossary definitions in popups. When you create glossary popups, users can choose whether they want to view the definition of an unfamiliar term. If they want additional information about the term, they can view the definition in a click.

You create popups by creating link between the word or phrase in a topic and the content you want to display in the popup, and then you use <othermeta> elements or paragraph styles to create popups.

Popup and Popup Append paragraph styles

Specifies that content displays both in popup windows and in standard help topics. You apply the Popup paragraph style to the first paragraph of content you want displayed in the popup window. If you have more than one paragraph of content you want to display, you apply the Popup Append style to the additional paragraphs.

For example, if you apply a glossary term and glossary definitions style for a glossary using the Popup and Popup Append styles, the terms and definitions in your output display in both a popup window and in a glossary topic that contains the definitions.

Popup Only and Popup Only Append paragraph styles

Specifies that content displays only in popup windows. You apply the Popup Only paragraph style to the first paragraph of content you want displayed in the popup window. If you have more than one paragraph of content you want to display, you apply the Popup Only Append style to the additional paragraphs.

For example, if you apply a glossary term and glossary definition style for a glossary using the Popup Only and Popup Only Append paragraph style, the terms and definitions in your output display in only popup windows. The content is not displayed in an additional glossary topic that contains the definitions.

Requirements for Creating Popups in DITA Source Documents

You prepare popups using <othermeta> elements or paragraph formats. Before you create popups in your source documents, verify that your output formats, templates, and stationery meet popup requirements. The following table lists requirements for creating popups.

	Requirement
Output Format	<p>You can use ePublisher to create popups for the following output formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Microsoft HTML Help • Oracle Help • Sun JavaHelp • WebWorks Help • WebWorks Reverb

Creating Popup Links in DITA Source Documents

Steps for creating links in DITA may be different in other versions of DITA.

Using Paragraph Styles to Create Popups in DITA Source Documents

You can use Popup paragraph formats in your DITA source documents to create popups. To use Popup paragraph styles to create popup windows, your Stationery and DITA file must have the following items configured:

- Popup and Popup Append paragraph style behaviors if you want your content to display both in popup windows and in standard help topics.
- Popup Only and Popup Only Append paragraph style behaviors if you want your content to display only in popup windows.

The following procedure provides an example of how to use Popup paragraph formats to create popup windows in DITA source documents.

To create popup windows using Popup paragraph styles in DITA source document

1. In your DITA source document, create a link between a word or phrase in the topic and the content you want to display in the popup window and ensure that the link resolves in the document.
2. Save your DITA source document.

3. In the ePublisher **Style Designer**, configure the destination paragraph styles with the appropriate popup behavior via the **Options** panel.
4. Generate output for your project.
5. In Output Explorer, go to the page where you created the popup window and verify that ePublisher created the popup window and that the popup window displays the content you specified.

Creating Related Topics in DITA Source Documents

This section explains how to create related topics in DITA source documents.

Understanding Related Topics

Related topics provide a list of other topics that may be of interest to the user viewing the current topic. For example, you could have a section called *Creating Web Pages* in your help. You may also have many other topics, such as *HTML Tags* and *Cascading Style Sheets*, that related to creating Web pages. Identifying these related topics for users can help them find the information they need and identify additional topics to consider. However, providing these types of links as cross-references within the content itself may not be the most efficient way to present the information. By utilizing related topics links, you combine the capabilities of cross-references with the efficiency of a related topics button.

Related topics and See Also links provide similar capabilities, but there are several important differences:

- Related topics can link to headings in a Help system that do not start a new page.
- Related topics links are static and defined in the source documents as links. You must have all the source documents to create the link and generate the output.
- If a related topics list contains a broken link in the source document, that link is broken in the generated output. In a See Also link list, the broken link is not included in the output.

The stationery designer can configure related topics to display in the following ways:

- Display in a popup window when the user clicks a button,
- Included in a list in the topic itself and then displayed in a popup window when the user clicks a button.

Note: If a related topic link is broken in the source document, in most cases that link is broken in the generated output. WebWorks Help provides an additional feature by removing broken links from related topics lists that are displayed in a popups window when a user clicks the Related Topics button.

Requirements for Creating Related Topics Links in DITA Source Documents

You can create related topics using a paragraph format. Before you create related topics links in your DITA source documents, verify that your output formats, templates, and stationery meet related topics links requirements. The following table lists requirements for creating related topics links.

	Requirement
Output Format	<p>You can use ePublisher to create related topics for the following output formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic HTML • Eclipse Help • Microsoft HTML Help • Oracle Help • Simple HTML • Sun Java Help • WebWorks Help • WebWorks Reverb • XML+XSL

Specifying Related Topics Links in DITA Source Documents

Create related topics links by applying the Related Topics paragraph format to cross-references you create in your DITA source documents. Before you create related topics in your source documents, review related topics links requirements. For more information about related topics and related topics links requirements, see “Understanding Related Topics” on page 308 and “Requirements for Creating Related Topics Links in DITA Source Documents” on page 309.

The following procedure provides an example of how to create related topics links in DITA source documents using DITA 1.4. Steps for creating related topics links in DITA may be different in other versions of DITA.

To create a related topics list in a DITA source document

1. Identify the topic in which you would like to insert a related topics list.
2. Identify the different topics you want to link to from this topic.

Note: Generally, you should only create one related topics list for each section of your source document that corresponds to a help topic. For example, if you have specified in your ePublisher project that there will be a page break at each Heading 1 section, then you should only create one related topics list for each Heading 1 section within your source document.

Specifying Wiki Categories or Labels in DITA

On Wikis, **categories**, which are referred to as **labels** in some Wiki formats, are used to organize Wiki content. Categories help group together pages that have similar subjects.

Note: MoinMoin and Media Wiki use the term *category* to describe page grouping functionality. Confluence uses the term *label* to describe page grouping functionality.

Pages are assigned to category groups through the use of category or label tags. When you assign a category or label tag to a Wiki page, the category to which the Wiki page belongs displays in a box at the bottom of the page.

Category and label tags on Wiki pages allow categorized pages to automatically be added to a list on a category page on the Wiki. The category page lists all of the Wiki pages tagged for a certain category. For example, if you tag each page on a Wiki that contains licensing information with a Licensing category tag, then a licensing category page on the Wiki can display a list of all of the pages tagged as containing licensing information.

The following procedure provides an example of how to specify categories for Wiki pages in DITA Source Documents:

To specify a Wiki category or label for a topic in a DITA source document:

1. In your DITA source document, locate your topic's meta information container element.
2. For this element, you use the `<othermeta>` element to define the WikiCategory, for example: `<othermeta name="WikiCategory" content="categoryname"/>`.

Note: You can also use the `<data>` element, for example: `<data name="WikiCategory" value="categoryname"/>`

3. Save the DITA document
 4. Generate output for your Wiki target. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353
 5. Deploy the Wiki output files to a Wiki server. For more information, see “Deploying Output to Output Destinations” on page 380.
- Note:** You must deploy generated Wiki content to a Wiki server before you can view the Wiki content.
6. Verify that your Wiki pages display the categories or labels you specified at the bottom of the page

Creating See Also Links in DITA Source Documents

This section explains how to create See Also links in DITA source documents.

Understanding See Also Links

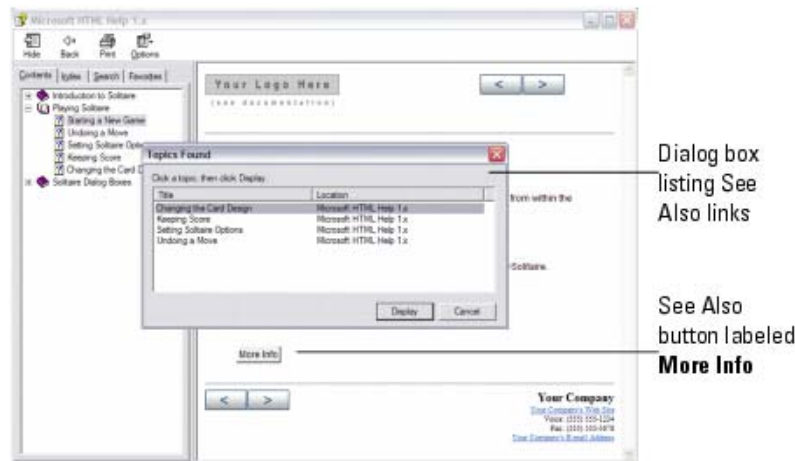
See Also links, also known as **ALinks**, or **associative links**, are links that may be of interest to the user viewing the current topic. These links use internal identifiers to specify the links and the link list is built dynamically based on the topics available when the user clicks to display the links. See Also links are important to use with larger help sets and merged help sets.

Related topics and See Also links provide similar capabilities, but there are several important differences:

- See Also links must link to styles that start a new topic, such as a heading.
- See Also links are dynamic and the lists of links are built at display time instead of during help generation.
- Since see Also link lists are dynamically built, they do not include links to topics that are not available when the user displays the links. If a link list contains a broken link in the source document, that link is broken in the generated output for most output formats.

See Also links are useful if you plan to merge help systems. For example, if you have a multiple help systems that you merge into one main help system at run time and if your topics in the merged help systems contain See Also keywords that are also used in the main help system, links to those topics are included in the See Also lists in the main project.

You can create See Also links as buttons or as inline text links in Microsoft HTML Help and WebWorks Help. The following example shows how the two different types of See Also links display in a Microsoft HTML Help system.



To create See Also links in your generated output, use a See Also paragraph format or character format defined by the stationery designer and through <othermeta> elements.

Requirements for Creating See Also Links in DITA Source Documents

You create See Also links using a paragraph or character format and through <othermeta> elements. Before you create See Also links in your DITA source documents, verify that your output formats, templates, and stationery meet See Also link requirements. The following table lists requirements for creating See Also links.

	Requirement
Output Format	<p>You can use ePublisher to create See Also links for the following output formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Microsoft HTML Help • WebWorks Help

Specifying See Also Links in DITA Source Documents

Create See Also links by applying the See Also paragraph format or character format to text in your DITA source documents and through <othermeta> elements into your DITA source documents. Before you create See Also links in your source documents, review See Also link requirements. For more information about See Also links and See Also link requirements, see “Understanding See Also Links” on page 311 and “Requirements for Creating See Also Links in DITA Source Documents” on page 312.

Steps for creating See Also links in DITA may be different in other versions of DITA.

Assigning Custom Page Styles to Pages in DITA Source Documents

This section explains how to assign custom page styles to specific pages in DITA source documents.

Understanding Page Styles

By default, each page generated by ePublisher is associated with the default page style defined in the stationery used by your ePublisher project. This means that typically you do not need to specify a page style for pages when you generate output.

For example, you may want to use one page style in your help system for all concept and procedure topic pages, and another page style for all context-sensitive window description topic pages in your help system. In this example, you can use the default page style for all of your concept and procedure topic pages, and then you can use a second custom page style defined in your stationery for all context-sensitive window description topic pages in your help system.

Requirements for Specifying Custom Page Styles for Pages in DITA Source Documents

You specify page styles for pages using `<othermeta>` elements. Before you specify page styles for pages by using `<othermeta>` elements in your DITA source documents, verify that your output formats, templates, and stationery meet image style requirements. The following table lists requirements for specifying page styles for pages.

	Requirement
Output Format	<p>You can use ePublisher to specify page styles for specific images for the following output formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic HTML • Eclipse Help • eBook - ePub 2.0 • Microsoft HTML Help • Microsoft WinHelp • Microsoft Reader • Oracle Help • Palm Reader • Simple HTML • Sun JavaHelp 1.1.3 • Sun JavaHelp 2.0 • WebWorks Help • WebWorks Reverb

Specifying Custom Page Styles for Pages in DITA Source Documents

For more information about page styles and page style requirements, see “Understanding Page Styles” on page 313 and “Requirements for Specifying Custom Page Styles for Pages in DITA Source Documents” on page 314.

To specify a Page Style for a topic in a DITA source document:

1. In your DITA source document, locate your topic’s meta information container element.
2. For this element, you use the `<othermeta>` element to define the Page Style, for example: `<othermeta name="PageStyle" content="stylename"/>`
3. Save the DITA document
4. Generate output for your target. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353

Steps for specifying custom page styles for pages in DITA may be different in other versions of DITA.

Customizing Table of Contents Icons for Topics in DITA Source Documents

This section explains how to customize the appearance of table of contents icons for topics in Microsoft HTML Help, Sun JavaHelp, Oracle Help, and WebWorks help systems.

Requirements for Specifying Custom Table of Contents Icons in DITA Source Documents

..

	Requirement
Output Format	<p>You can use ePublisher to specify custom table of contents icons in the following output formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Microsoft HTML Help • Oracle Help • Sun JavaHelp • WebWorks Help

Specifying Custom Table of Contents Icons in DITA Source Documents

For more information about custom table of contents icons, see “Requirements for Specifying Custom Table of Contents Icons in DITA Source Documents” on page 315.

To specify a Custom Table of Contents Icon for a topic in a DITA source document:

1. In your DITA source document, locate your topic’s meta information container element.
2. For this element, you use the `<othermeta>` element to define the Page Style, for example: `<othermeta name="TOCIcon" content="blue.png"/>`.
Note: You can also use the `<data>` element, for example: `<data name="TOCIcon" value="blue.png"/>`.
3. Save the DITA document
4. Generate output for your target. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353

Steps for customizing table of contents icons for topics in DITA may be different in other versions of DITA.

To specify a custom table of contents icon in a DITA source document

5. *If you want to specify a custom table of contents icon for Microsoft HTML Help*, identify the number of the image you want to use for the table of contents image for the topic in the .hhp file for your Microsoft HTML Help project by completing the following steps:
 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**.
 - b. Open the `ProjectName` folder, where `ProjectName` is the name of your project.
 - c. Open the `ProjectName.hhp` file where `ProjectName` is the name of your project.
 - d. On the **Contents** tab, select a table of contents entry, and then click the **Pencil** icon.
 - e. On the **Advanced** tab, in the **Image index** field, use the up and down arrows to identify the table of contents image you want to use for the topic.
 - f. Note the number of the image you want to use for the table of contents image for the topic.

For example, if you want to use a question mark icon with a red star for the table of contents icon for new topics, note that the number for this icon is 10.
 - g. Close HTML Help Workshop.
6. *If you want to specify a custom table of contents icon for Oracle Help or Sun JavaHelp*, create the graphic file for the custom table of contents icon in .gif format. The default graphics used as Sun JavaHelp or Oracle Help table of contents icons are 17 x 17 pixels. The custom graphics you create for Sun JavaHelp or Oracle Help table of contents icons should also be 17 x 17 pixels. You can assign any name to the graphic files.
7. *If you want to specify a custom table of content icon for WebWorks help*, create graphics files containing the collapsed and expanded versions of the icons you want to use, then save the graphic files in .gif format. The default graphics used as WebWorks Help table of contents icons are 17 x 17 pixels. The custom graphics you create for WebWorks Help table of contents icons should also be 17 x 17 pixels. You can assign any name to the graphic files.

8. Copy the graphic files you want to use as icons in the table of contents into the following folder:

Note: If the folder does not exist, first create the folder using the specified folder structure and then copy the graphic files you want to use as icons into the folder. You do not need to perform this step when specifying custom table of contents icons for Microsoft HTML Help.

- **If you are generating Oracle Help**, copy the graphic files you want to use into the following folder:

`ProjectName\Formats\Oracle Help\Files\images` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

- **If you are generating Sun JavaHelp 1.1.3**, copy the graphic files you want to use into the following folder:

`ProjectName\Formats\Sun Java Help 1.1.3\Files\images` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

- **If you are generating Sun JavaHelp 2.0**, copy the graphic files you want to use into the following folder:

`ProjectName\Formats\Sun Java Help 2.0\Files\images` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project.

- **If you are generating WebWorks Help**, in your `ProjectName\Files` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your project, create a `wwhelp\images` subfolder and copy the graphic files you want to use into this folder. Your project file structure should be similar to the following structure:

`ProjectName\Files\wwhelp\images`

Using markopen and markclose

This default.wvconfig modification specifies the start and a stop of an element. This is especially useful for the implementation of the dropdown elements in WebWorks Help 5 or WebWorks Reverb output. ePublisher has preconfigured items such as the Definition Term Elements, below is an example of the sample DITA markup:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE concept PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA Concept//EN" "concept.dtd">
<concept id="simplelist" xml:lang="en-us">
  <title>Definition List</title>
  <conbody>
    <p>Definition list</p>
    <dl>
      <dlhead>
        <dthd>Image File View Selection</dthd>
        <ddhd>Resulting Information</ddhd>
      </dlhead>
      <dlentry>
        <dt>File Type</dt>
        <dd>Image's file extension</dd>
      </dlentry>
      <dlentry>
        <dt>Image Class</dt>
        <dd>Image is raster, vector, metafile or 3D</dd>
      </dlentry>
      <dlentry>
        <dt>Number of pages</dt>
        <dd>Number of pages in the image</dd>
      </dlentry>
      <dlentry>
        <dt>Fonts</dt>
        <dd>Names of the fonts contained within a vector image</dd>
      </dlentry>
    </dl>
    <p>Content after the definition list.</p>
  </conbody>
```

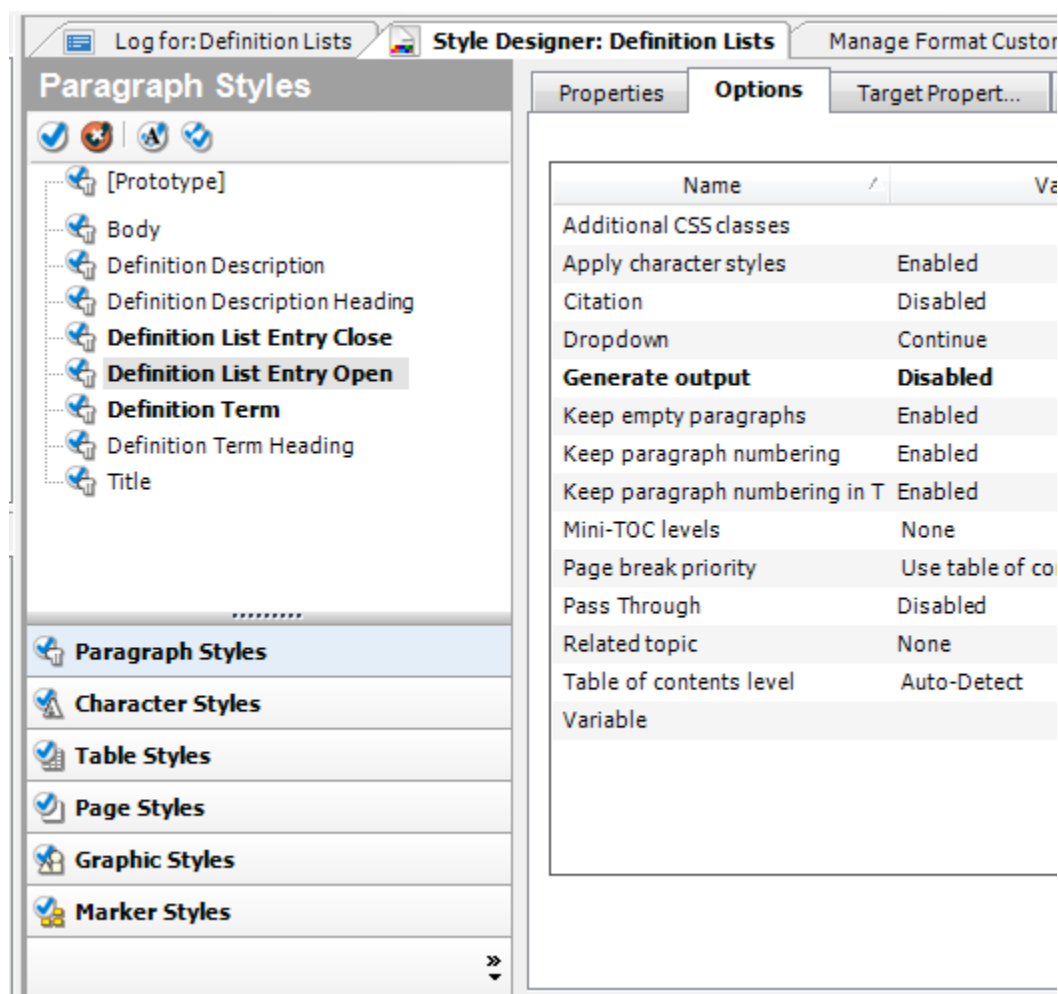
```
</concept>
```

Without the use of the `markclose` in the `default.wvconfig`, the last paragraph would be underneath the last Definition Term element. To make sure that no other elements are inside the dropdown, you can assign `markclosed` to it by creating an override to `default.wvconfig` located in `[project directory]\Formats\Adapters\xml\scripts\dita`. For more information, refer to “Creating Format Overrides” on page 425. Below is an example of the modification needed to get the desired output:

```
<!-- Mark open/close on definition entries -->
<!-- -->
<Style match="//*[contains(@class, ' topic/dlentry ')]">
  <xsl:variable name="VarName" select="'Definition List Entry'" />
  <wwditaconfig:Head name="{ $VarName}" markopen="{ $VarName} Open"
markclose="{ $VarName} Close" />
</Style>
```

Configuring markopen and markclose entries for dropdowns in ePublisher

After you have created the override, you will still need to scan for the newly created paragraph styles in ePublisher. Using our created override, you would see something like this in the Style Designer:



The output is set to disabled because the markopen just serves as a placeholder text. In the closed entry, we set the Options to have the Dropdown to Break:

The screenshot shows the 'Style Designer: Definition Lists' window. The left pane is titled 'Paragraph Styles' and contains a list of styles: [Prototype], Body, Definition Description, Definition Description Heading, **Definition List Entry Close** (selected), Definition List Entry Open, Definition Term, Definition Term Heading, and Title. Below this list are buttons for Paragraph Styles, Character Styles, Table Styles, Page Styles, Graphic Styles, and Marker Styles. The right pane has three tabs: 'Proper...', 'Options' (selected), and 'Target Propert...'. The 'Options' tab contains a table with the following data:

Name	Value
Additional CSS classes	
Apply character styles	Enabled
Citation	Disabled
Dropdown	Break
Generate output	Enabled
Keep empty paragraphs	Enabled
Keep paragraph numbering	Enabled
Keep paragraph numbering in T	Enabled
Mini-TOC levels	None
Page break priority	Use table of contents
Pass Through	Disabled
Related topic	None
Table of contents level	Auto-Detect
Variable	

We do this because that is how the content will emit, below is an example of the sample output's HTML that shows the paragraph styles as div classes:

```

20     <div class="Definition_List_Entry_Close"><a name="3_2_2_4
21     <div class="Definition_Term" onclick="WebWorks_ToggleDIV(
    &quot;wwdd3_2_2_4_10_2&quot;);"><a name="3_2_2_4_10_2">Fonts</a
    type="text/javascript" language="JavaScript1.2">WebWorks_WriteA
    "wwdd3_2_2_4_10_2", false);</script> <a
    href="javascript:WebWorks_ToggleDIV('wwdd3_2_2_4_10_2');">WebWorks_WriteDIVOpen("wwdd3_2_2_4_10_
    </script><div id="wwdd3_2_2_4_10_2" style="visibility: visible;
23     <div class="Definition_Description"><a name="3_2_2_4_10_4
    contained within a vector image</a></div>
24     <script type="text/javascript" language="JavaScript1.2">W
    </script></div>
25     <div class="Definition_List_Entry_Close"><a name="3_2_2_4
26     <div class="Body"><a name="3_2_2_6">Content after the def
27     </blockquote>

```

Note that the Content after the definition list is now in a Body paragraph, so that it does not become included in the dropdown.

Troubleshooting DITA issues

Occasionally there might be issues with the source documents you are using. Below is a list linking to the wiki solutions website that will help you troubleshoot each one:

Issue	Solution
If you are having issues with whitespace when authoring with FrameMaker using DITA	White space in FrameMaker
If you are having issues with cross references when authoring with FrameMaker using DITA	Cross References in FrameMaker
If you are receiving a Cannot Duplicate Document	Cannot duplicate document error message
If you are having issues outputting cross references from DITA	Cross Reference to same topic not working
If you are having issues using a custom DTD	DTD Issues
If you are using an older or newer version of the OTK	Different versions of the OTK
If you are trying to use conditional text	DITA conditions
If you are trying to localize figure/table paragraphs	Localization of the word "table" or "figure"
If you are getting a Java error when generating	Java Error
If you are trying to put a list in a table	List in a Table
If you are getting a Resample WIFerror upon generation	ResampleWIF Pipeline Error Blocks Generation of Output
If your elements are not being populated in the style designer	DITA styles are not being read in the Style Designer
If your Overview topics are showing up on the same level as their children	DITA Overview Topics Showing on Same Level as Children Topics

Producing Output Based on Stationery

This section explains how writers can use their source documents and ePublisher projects and Stationery to produce output.

Checklist: Producing Output Based on Stationery

Use the following checklist to help you use your source documents and ePublisher projects and Stationery and to produce output. For more information about designing Stationery, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Review the conceptual information related to projects, source documents, targets, and Stationery. For more information, see “Understanding Projects and the Project Folder Structure” on page 326, “Understanding Source Documents” on page 329, “Understanding Targets” on page 329, and “Understanding Stationery” on page 330.
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. Talk to the Stationery designer to determine what Stationery you should use to generate output.
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. Identify the source documents you want to use to generate output.
<input type="checkbox"/>	4. Prepare your source documents. For more information, see “Preparing Adobe FrameMaker Source Documents” on page 91 and “Preparing Microsoft Word Source Documents” on page 195.
<input type="checkbox"/>	5. Create a project using the Stationery created by the Stationery designer. For more information, see “Creating Projects Based on Stationery” on page 332.
<input type="checkbox"/>	6. Add source documents to your project. For more information, see “Adding Source Documents to Projects” on page 333.
<input type="checkbox"/>	7. If you are generating WebWorks Help output , replace the default WebWorks Help splash image. For more information, see “Customizing or Removing Splash Page Images in WebWorks Help” on page 356.
<input type="checkbox"/>	8. Generate output. For more information, see “Generating and Regenerating Output” on page 352.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Task
<input type="checkbox"/>	9. View your output. For more information, see “Viewing Output” on page 358.
<input type="checkbox"/>	10. If you want to use reports to validate your output , review reports. For more information, see “Validating Output Using Reports” on page 365.
<input type="checkbox"/>	11. If you want to merge multiple help systems into one help system , configure merge settings for your merged help system. For more information, see “Merging Help Systems (Multivolume Help)” on page 373.
<input type="checkbox"/>	12. If you want to customize target settings , customize target settings as needed. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
<input type="checkbox"/>	13. If you want to customize variable and condition settings , customize variable and condition settings as needed. For more information, see “Customizing Variable Settings in Projects” on page 393 and “Customizing Condition Settings in Projects” on page 395.
<input type="checkbox"/>	14. If you want to customize cross reference settings , customize cross reference settings as needed. For more information, see “Customizing Cross-Reference Settings in Projects” on page 395.
<input type="checkbox"/>	15. Deploy your output. For more information, see “Deploying Output” on page 376.

Understanding Projects and the Project Folder Structure

This section explains what a project is and the folder structure projects use.

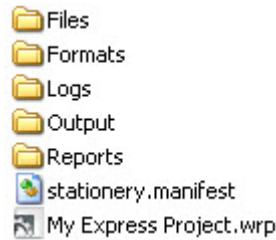
Understanding Projects

An ePublisher project consists of all the necessary pieces needed to convert your source documents into online output. It contains your source documents, images, project Stationery, and any settings or preferences you specify. After you create a project, you can modify your project settings and preferences, generate reports, and produce output.

ePublisher provides powerful single-sourcing capabilities that allow you to generate online output in multiple formats using a single project and a single set of source documents. For example, you can generate WebWorks Help, Microsoft HTML Help, Oracle Help, Dynamic HTML Help, and Sun JavaHelp using one project and one set of source files.

Understanding the Project Folder Structure

The following figure shows a sample project folder.



To view all of the files for your project, on the **View** menu, click **Project Directory**.

The project folder contains the following subfolders:

Files

Contains any custom files you want your project to use. Typically, the `Files` folder contains logo images, custom `.css` files, custom bullet images, and custom background images. To view the files in the `Files` folder for your project, on the **View** menu, click **User Files**.

You can also place a `Files` directory in a target's override folder or within the target's format override folder.

- `Formats\<format name>\Files`
- `Targets\<target name>\Files`

These files will be copied for each target's sub-directory but will not be visible in the user interface to select, e.g. the company logo image in the Target Settings dialog.

Formats

Contains output format overrides and all of the files required to generate output for an output format. Any time you want to override an output format file, place the override in the `Formats` folder. For example, if you want to override the standard table of contents icons for topics in WebWorks Help by specifying custom table of contents icons, place the custom table of contents icons you want to use in an `images` folder in the `Formats` folder. For more information about format overrides, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*. To view the files in the `Formats` folder for your project, on the **View** menu, click **Format Override Directory**.

Logs

Contains the `generate.log` file. The `generate.log` file contains information about the actions ePublisher performed when generating output, along with any warning or errors that occurred during output generation.

Output

Contains the files ePublisher creates when generating output and provides a structure for generated output files. ePublisher creates a folder for each target in the project in the `Output` folder, and each target folder contains all topic pages, generated images, entry-point files, and merged help files generated for the target. The **entry-point file** is the file that opens the help system.

By default, ePublisher creates the `Output` folder in the following location:

- **If you use ePublisher Express**, by default ePublisher creates the `Output` folder in the `My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project.
- **If you use ePublisher Designer**, by default ePublisher creates the `Output` folder in the `My Documents\ePublisher Designer Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project.

You can view output files in the `Output` folder using Output Explorer or by clicking on and opening output files in the `Output` folder. To view the files in the `Output` folder for your project, on the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**. For more information about viewing output, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359 and “Viewing Output in the Output Folder” on page 362.

Reports

Contains all of your configured reports in an XML format that ePublisher can display.

Targets

Contains target overrides. Any time you want to override a file in a target, place the override in the `Targets` folder. ePublisher looks for overrides in the `Targets` folder before it looks for overrides in the `Formats` folder. The `Targets` folder only appears in your project folder if your Stationery is configured to use target overrides. For more information about target overrides, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*. To view the files in the `Targets` folder for the selected target in your project, on the **View** menu, click **Target Override Directory**.

Your project also uses a `Data` folder. The `Data` folder contains information about how files in your project have been processed. The `.wif` files, which are located in the `Data` folder, contain style and content information from your source documents. ePublisher creates the `Data` folder in the following temporary folder location:

```
Documents and Settings\UserName\Local
Settings\Temp\WebWorks\ePublisherComponent\Data
```

where *UserName* is the name of the ePublisher user, and *ePublisherComponent* is the name of the ePublisher component used to generate output, such as ePublisher Express or ePublisher Designer.

To view the files in the `Data` folder for your project, on the **View** menu, click **Data Directory**.

Understanding Source Documents

Source documents are documents you create your content in using a content authoring tool such as Microsoft Word, Adobe FrameMaker, or an authoring environment that supports DITA authoring, such as Adobe FrameMaker, XMetaL, or other XML content authoring tool. After you prepare your source documents, you use your source documents to generate output. For more information about preparing your source documents, see “Preparing Adobe FrameMaker Source Documents” on page 91 and “Preparing Microsoft Word Source Documents” on page 195. For more information about generating output, see “Generating and Regenerating Output” on page 352.

Understanding Targets

A **target** is the specific type of output you want to produce using your source files and project settings. Targets are based the output formats you specify for your project, and include all of the project settings you specify for each output format included in your project when you configure your project.

For example, assume that you are a writer working at CompanyA, and you have the requirement to create a web-based help system using your source documents. In this scenario, you create a project using stationery that supports WebWorks Help output and then create a target called CompanyA WebWorks Help.

Next, assume that your documentation requirements change, and in addition to creating WebWorks Help for CompanyA, you must now also produce Microsoft HTML Help and PDF files for CompanyA using your same source documents. In this scenario, you update your project to now include the following targets:

- CompanyA WebWorks Help
- CompanyA Microsoft HTML Help
- CompanyA PDF Files

Finally, assume your documentation requirements change again, and now, based on an Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) agreement your company signed, in addition to creating WebWorks Help, Microsoft HTML Help, and PDF files for CompanyA, you must use your same set of source documents to create WebWorks Help, Microsoft HTML Help, and PDF files for CompanyB, using company information and variables and conditions specific to CompanyB. In this scenario, you update your project to now include the following targets:

- CompanyA WebWorks Help
- CompanyA Microsoft HTML Help
- CompanyA PDF Files
- CompanyB WebWorks Help
- CompanyB Microsoft HTML Help
- CompanyB PDF Files

When you have multiple targets included in a project, you choose an active target and then specify project settings for the active target. The active target is the target currently selected in your project. When you want to modify project settings for an target, if you have multiple targets included in your project, ensure you have the correct target selected in the project when you modify project settings. For more information about specifying an active target, see “Specifying Active Targets” on page 343.

Understanding Stationery

The Stationery designer creates Stationery with ePublisher Designer using a Stationery design project. Stationery specifies the settings ePublisher uses to generate output. Stationery designers create Stationery by creating a Stationery design project in ePublisher Designer and then saving the processing rules, styles, and other information specified in the Stationery design project as Stationery. ePublisher Express and ePublisher AutoMap can then use the Stationery to generate output.

When the Stationery designer creates a project in ePublisher Designer and then saves a project using the **Save As Stationery** option, ePublisher Designer creates a Stationery file. A Stationery file is a file with the `.wxsp` file extension that contains formatting, project settings, project overrides, and style information. Source documents and document-specific information, such as Document Manager groups, are not saved in Stationery. After the Stationery designer creates the Stationery, writers use the Stationery provided by the Stationery designer when they create an ePublisher Express project. Writers use their ePublisher Express project and Stationery to generate output.

When the Stationery designer saves the Stationery, ePublisher creates the following folders:

- *StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat*
- *StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat.base*

where *StationeryName* is the name the Stationery designer specified for the Stationery, and *OutputFormat* is the type of output format the Stationery Designer specified for a target in the Stationery.

The *StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat* folder contains any customizations or overrides the Stationery designer specified when designing the Stationery. ePublisher Express synchronizes with the files in the *OutputFormat* folder and uses the information about customizations and overrides contained in files in the *OutputFormat* folder to generate output.

Note: The Stationery may have one or more *OutputFormat* folders, based on the settings the Stationery designer specified.

The *StationeryName\Formats\OutputFormat.base* folder contains copies of all the files located in the `\Program Files\WebWorks\ePublisher\2013.3\Formats\OutputFormat` folder. These files define the default output format and transforms and are installed by default when you install ePublisher.

Stationery designers can do a compare, or **diff**, between the files located in these folders to quickly see any customizations or overrides specified for the Stationery. Stationery designers can use this information to help them reapply customizations and overrides as needed when designing a newer version of the Stationery in ePublisher Designer.

When the styles or features used in the generated output need to change, the Stationery designer uses the ePublisher Designer Stationery design project to update the styles and features specified in the Stationery, and then the Stationery designer saves the changes, creates updated Stationery, and deploys the Stationery. Once the new Stationery is available, writers synchronize their ePublisher Express project with the updated Stationery file and use the updated Stationery the next time they generate output.

Note: When you synchronize your project with Stationery, the synchronization process overwrites any target setting customizations you configured for the project.

For more information about synchronizing Stationery, see “Synchronizing Projects with Stationery” on page 347. For more information about designing, creating, and deploying Stationery, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

Creating Projects Based on Stationery

Writers use ePublisher Express and Stationery created by a Stationery designer to generate output. When you use ePublisher Express to create a project based on Stationery, you specify the Stationery you want the project to use and the source documents you want to include in the project. The Stationery file uses a `.wxsp` file extension and contains information and settings for the project to use, such as style or format information, variable values, condition settings, cross-reference definitions, and more. The source documents contain the content for which you want to generate output. The project uses the settings specified in the Stationery file and the content and formatting in the source documents to generate output. A project file created with ePublisher Express uses the `.wtp` file extension.

Note: You cannot create a project based on Stationery using ePublisher Designer. You can only create projects based on Stationery using ePublisher Express. Stationery designers use ePublisher Designer to create Stationery using Stationery design projects. For more information about creating Stationery and Stationery design projects, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.

To create a project based on Stationery

1. In ePublisher Express, on the **File** menu, click **New Project**.
2. In the **Project Name** field, type a name for your project.
3. In the **Location** field, specify the location where you want to save your ePublisher project by clicking on the folder icon and browsing to the location where you want to save your project.

Note: Ensure you consider the length of the full path you specify for the project name and location. If you specify long names and paths for project, Windows may not be able to support the length of the full path.

By default, ePublisher stores projects in the `My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects` folder.

4. In the **Standalone stationery** field, specify the Stationery you want to use to create your project by clicking on the folder icon and browsing to the location of the Stationery file.
5. Select a Stationery file (`.wxsp` file), and then click **Open**.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Click **Add**.

8. Browse to the location of the source documents you want to include in your project, select the source documents, and then click **Open**.

Note: You can add source documents when you create your project or you can add source documents after you create your project. For more information about adding source documents to projects, see “Adding Source Documents to Projects” on page 333.

9. Click **Finish** to create the project. ePublisher creates the project and gathers information about the structure of your source documents.

After you create your project, add targets to your projects as needed and then generate output. For more information, see “Adding Targets to Projects Based on Stationery” on page 343 and “Generating Output” on page 353.

Working with Source Documents

This section explains how to work with source documents in Document Manger.

Adding Source Documents to Projects

You can add source documents to your project when you create a project. You can also add source documents to your project after you create a project. When you add source documents to your project, ePublisher automatically adds the source documents to your project and creates a top-level group in Document Manager that contains your source document. For more information about top-level groups, see “Understanding Source Documents Groups” on page 339.

To add a source document to your project

1. On the **Project** menu, click **Add Document**.
2. Browse to the folder that contains the source document you want to add to your project.
3. Select the source document you want to add to your project, and then click **Open**.
4. *If you configured ePublisher to scan source documents when you add source documents to projects*, ePublisher adds the source documents to Document Manager and scans the source documents. For more information about scanning source documents and setting scanning options, see “Scanning Source Documents” on page 335 and “Setting Scanning Options” on page 336.

5. ***If you did not configure ePublisher to scan source documents when you add source documents to projects***, ePublisher adds the source documents to Document Manager but does not scan your documents. After ePublisher adds your source documents to Document Manager, scan your source documents. For more information about scanning source documents and setting scanning options, see “Scanning Source Documents” on page 335 and “Setting Scanning Options” on page 336.
6. ***If you are adding a FrameMaker book file to your project***, ePublisher adds the FrameMaker book file (.bk or .book files) and the source documents the FrameMaker book file contains (.fm files) to your project. Consider the following points when you add a FrameMaker book file to your project:
 - When you add a FrameMaker book to your project, by default ePublisher creates a group for the FrameMaker book in Document Manager, and any FrameMaker source documents contained within the FrameMaker book are always contained within the group in your project.
 - When you make changes to a FrameMaker book, such as adding or removing source documents from a FrameMaker book file, when you scan the FrameMaker book, ePublisher updates the project with the changes you made to the FrameMaker book file. If you add or remove FrameMaker source documents in a FrameMaker book, ensure you scan the FrameMaker book before you generate output. For more information about scanning source documents and setting scanning options, see “Scanning Source Documents” on page 335 and “Setting Scanning Options” on page 336.
 - ***If your FrameMaker book contains front matter files, table of contents files, or index files***, consider the following points:
 - ***If you are generating output for a target that uses any output format other than PDF***, by default ePublisher generates output for source document front matter files included in a book, but does not generate output using the table of contents files and index files included in the FrameMaker book. ePublisher instead uses the headings and index entries in the source documents to generate a table of contents and an index for your online output.
 - ***If you are generating output for a target that uses PDF as the output format***, by default ePublisher generates the PDF using the front matter, index, and table of contents files included in the FrameMaker book.
 - The Stationery designer may modify these default file processing settings when designing Stationery. If you have target setting modification permissions, you can also customize these settings as needed. For more information about target setting customization permissions and customizing file processing settings, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380 and “Specifying File Processing Behavior for Front Matter, Index, and Table of

Contents Files” on page 384. If you do not have target setting customization permissions, instead of adding an Adobe FrameMaker .book file that contains front matter, table of contents, and index files, you can instead add the individual Adobe FrameMaker chapter .fm files, and then use the individual chapter files to generate output.

After you add source documents to your ePublisher project, ePublisher displays your source documents in Document Manager. You can organize your source documents in Document Manager and perform the following tasks:

- Open and edit source documents from within Document Manager. For more information, see “Opening Source Documents from Document Manager” on page 335.
- Relink source documents. For more information, see “Relinking Source Documents” on page 338
- Remove source documents from your project. For more information, see “Removing Source Documents from Projects” on page 338.
- Create an organizational structure for your online output using groups. For more information, see “Understanding Source Documents Groups” on page 339 and “Organizing Source Documents Using Groups” on page 340.
- Rearrange the source document order in Document Manager. For more information, see “Rearranging Source Documents in Groups” on page 341.

Opening Source Documents from Document Manager

If you want to edit the content of your source documents while working with a project, you can open the source documents from Document Manager.

To open a source document from Document Manager

1. In Document Manager, double-click the source document you want to open. ePublisher opens the source document using the content authoring tool you used to create the source document.
2. *If you want to edit the content in your source document*, edit the content using the content authoring tool you used to create the source document.
3. Save the source document.

Scanning Source Documents

This section explains how scanning works, how to scan source documents, and source document scanning options.

Understanding Scanning and Scanning Options

When ePublisher scans your source documents, it reads the style and formatting information, variables, conditions, and marker types in your source documents and then imports this information into your ePublisher project. Once ePublisher imports this information into your project, you can generate output. You can also modify target settings if you have permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Generating and Regenerating Output” on page 352 and “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.

The scanning process can be time-consuming. You can reduce the amount of time it takes ePublisher to scan your documents by scanning only the source documents you select. Scan your source documents when you have made any of the following changes to your source documents:

- Added new content
- Added new style information
- Modified any existing styles
- Added new markers, variables, or conditions
- Modified existing markers, variables, or conditions

ePublisher provides the following options for scanning source documents in Document Manager:

Scan Selected

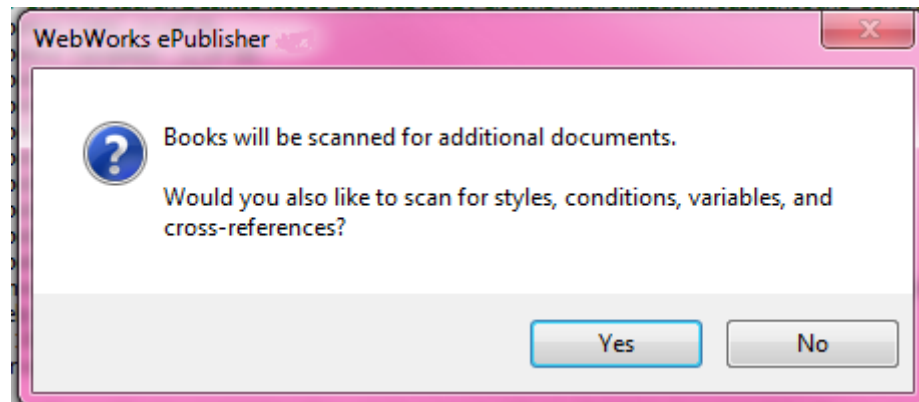
Scans only the selected source document in Document Manager.

Scan All Documents

Scans all of the source documents that you added to your project and that are displayed in Document Manager.

Setting Scanning Options

By default, ePublisher will ask whether or not to scan your documents. When adding a source document a dialog box will appear:



This indicates that files such as FrameMaker .book files will scan for additional .fm files linked from this source. Clicking Yes will scan the individual documents so that the document set styles, for example can be added to the Style Designer (the same goes for most of the document set customizations.)

However, you can specify that you want ePublisher to scan source documents when you add them to your project. For example, you can choose to have ePublisher prompt you to scan the source documents when you add source documents to your project, or you can choose to always have ePublisher scan source documents when you add them to a project. The scanning option you specify will become the default selection for all existing and subsequent projects.

If you choose to never have ePublisher scan source documents, when you add them to a project, you must remember to scan your source documents before you generate output.

To set scanning options

1. On the **Edit** menu, click **Preferences**.
2. On the **General** tab, in the **Scan options** area, select the scan setting you want to specify. For more information about scanning options, click **Help**.
3. Click **OK**.

Scanning Selected Documents

Sometimes you may make a change to content in a single source document. You can scan only the source document you changed. Scanning the selected document updates your project with the new information you specified in the selected source document.

To scan a selected source document

1. In Document Manager, select the source document you want to scan.
2. On the **Project** menu, click **Scan Selected**. ePublisher scans the document you selected in Document Manager.

Scanning All Documents

If you have made multiple changes to content in your source documents, you can scan all of the source documents included in your project at once. Scanning all source documents ensures that ePublisher includes any changes you made to any of the source documents in your project.

To scan all source documents in a project

On the **Project** menu, click **Scan All Documents**. ePublisher scans all of the source documents displayed in Document Manager.

Relinking Source Documents

Sometimes the link between Document Manager and the source document may become broken. For example, moving the source document to another folder location or deleting the source document from a folder may break the link between Document Manager and the source document. When ePublisher detects a broken link between Document Manager and the source document, ePublisher displays a **Broken Link** icon, or red question mark, next to the source document in Document Manager.

To relink a source document

1. In Document Manager, double-click the **Broken Link** icon next to the name of the source document.
2. Browse to the location of the source document.
3. Select the source document, and then click **Open**. ePublisher recreates the link between the source document and Document Manager.

Removing Source Documents from Projects

You can remove source documents from an ePublisher project. Remove source documents from your project when you no longer want to include the content in the source document in your project or in your generated output.

If you are a Stationery designer using ePublisher Designer to design Stationery, when you remove source documents from an ePublisher project, any styles or formats associated with the source document remain in Style Designer. For example, assume that the `UserManualTitle` style is a style that is specific to only one source document in your project. If you remove the source document that contains the `UserManualTitle` style from your project, ePublisher retains the `UserManualTitle` style name and style information in Style Designer. If you want to remove this style from Style Designer, you must manually delete it.

To remove a source document from a project

1. In Document Manager, click the source document you want to remove from your project.
2. On the **Edit** menu, click **Remove**.
3. *If you want to remove an Adobe FrameMaker source document (.fm file) that is a part of an Adobe FrameMaker book (.book or .bk file) you have added to a project*, you cannot remove the Adobe FrameMaker source document from the project using ePublisher. You must remove the Adobe FrameMaker source document from the Adobe FrameMaker book file and then scan the Adobe FrameMaker book file to remove the Adobe FrameMaker source document from your project. For more information about scanning source documents, see “Scanning Source Documents” on page 335.
4. Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to remove the source document from your project.

Understanding Source Documents Groups

Groups are containers in Document Manager that hold your source documents and allow you to create an organizational structure for your output. When you first create a new project, ePublisher automatically creates a new group in Document Manager using the project name. You can use ePublisher to create the following types of groups in Document Manager:

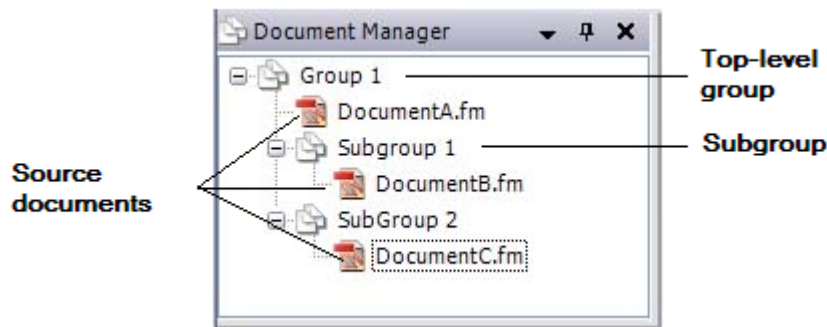
Top-level groups

Contains source documents and subgroups. ePublisher creates an entry-point file for each top-level group in Document Manager. The entry-point file is the file that opens the generated output. All projects must contain at least one top-level group. You can create additional top-level groups to further organize your source documents in Document Manager or if you want to create merged, or multivolume, help. For more information about merged help systems, see “Merging Help Systems (Multivolume Help)” on page 373.

Subgroups

Used to organize source documents within top-level groups. Subgroups do not create entry-point files and do not represent an actual volume in a merged help system.

The following figure shows top-level groups and subgroups in Document Manager.



Organizing Source Documents Using Groups

You can perform the following actions with source documents and groups in ePublisher:

- Create top-level groups. For more information, see “Creating Top-Level Groups” on page 340.
- Create subgroups. For more information, see “Creating Subgroups” on page 341.
- Rename groups. For more information, see “Renaming Groups” on page 341.
- Rearrange source documents in groups. For more information, see “Rearranging Source Documents in Groups” on page 341.
- Remove groups. For more information, see “Removing Groups” on page 342.

Creating Top-Level Groups

By default, ePublisher creates a top-level group based on the name of the project when you add your first source document to your project. There must always be at least one top-level group in Document Manager in order to add source documents to a project. You can create additional top-level groups if you want to further organize your source documents or create merged help systems, or multivolume help. For more information about creating merged help systems, see “Merging Help Systems (Multivolume Help)” on page 373.

To create a top-level group

1. On the **Project** menu, click **New Group**. ePublisher creates and displays a new top-level group in Document Manager.
2. Type a name for the new group.
3. Drag the new top-level group to its appropriate position above, below, or between an existing top-level group in Document Manager.

Creating Subgroups

You can create subgroups in Document Manager to organize the source documents in a group. By organizing your source documents into subgroups, you can organize how you want to display your source documents in Document Manager and how you want content to display in your generated output.

To create a subgroup

1. In Document Manager, select the group to which you want to add a subgroup. You can add a subgroup to a top-level group or to an existing subgroup.
2. On the **Project** menu, click **New Group**. ePublisher displays the new group in Document Manager.
3. Type a name for the new group.

Renaming Groups

You can rename existing top-level groups and subgroups in Document Manager. For example, when you create a new project, by default ePublisher creates a new group based on the project name. However, you can change the default name of the group in Document Manager.

To rename a group in Document Manager

1. In Document Manager, click twice on the group you want to rename.
2. Type a new name for the group.
3. Press ENTER or click outside of the typing area to change the name.

Rearranging Source Documents in Groups

Once you have added source documents to your project and placed your source documents into groups within Document Manager, you can rearrange source documents by moving the source documents within the same group or by moving source documents to a new location in a new group.

If you have a FrameMaker book (.bk or .book file) in a group, you can move the FrameMaker book to a different group, but you cannot move an individual FrameMaker document (.fm file) to a group if it is included in the .book file. .fm files that belong to a .book file must remain in the same group as the .book file. If you want to move a .fm file to a different group than the .book file is in, first remove the .fm file from the book, scan the book, and add the .fm file, which is no longer part of the book, to the appropriate book.

To rearrange source documents in groups

1. *If you want to change the order of source documents within a group*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In Document Manager, click the source document you want to move.
 - b. Drag the source document to the desired location within the group.
2. *If you want to move a source document to a different group*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In Document Manager, click the document you want to move.
 - b. Drag the source document to the desired location within the new group.

Removing Groups

If you no longer want to use a group, you can remove the group from Document Manager. When you remove a group from Document Manager, ePublisher removes any source documents associated with the group from your project.

Note: ePublisher does not delete the source documents from your computer. ePublisher only removes the source documents from the project.

To remove a group

1. In Document Manager, select the group you want to remove.
2. On the **Edit** menu, click **Remove**.

Working with Targets

This section explains how to work with targets. For more information about what targets are, see “Understanding Targets” on page 329.

Specifying Active Targets

Within a project, you can have multiple targets. The active target is the target currently selected in the project. ePublisher uses the active target when you make modifications to your target settings or generate output.

To specify the active target

On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target**.

Adding Targets to Projects Based on Stationery

Every project must contain at least one target. Add targets to projects when you need to produce different kinds of output using the same source documents. Each target is associated with one output format, such as WebWorks Help, Microsoft HTML Help, or PDF. If you are generating output based on Stationery using ePublisher Express, the Stationery you use for your project defines the type of output formats you can specify for a target when you add a target to your project. You can only use output formats defined in the Stationery by the Stationery designer when you create targets. If you need to create a target for an output format not included in the Stationery, talk to the Stationery designer about updating the Stationery to include the output format.

For example, assume that you are a writer working at CompanyA, and you need to create web-based help. You have Stationery from a Stationery designer configured to support WebWorks Help, Microsoft HTML Help, and PDF output. In this scenario, you create an ePublisher project based on Stationery from the Stationery designer, and then you create a target called CompanyA WebWorks Help that specifies WebWorks Help as the output format for the target.

Next, assume that your documentation requirements change, and in addition to creating WebWorks Help for CompanyA, you must now also produce Microsoft HTML Help and PDF files for CompanyA using your same source documents. In this scenario, you update your project by adding Microsoft HTML Help and PDF as targets, and your project now contains the following targets:

- CompanyA WebWorks Help
- CompanyA Microsoft HTML Help
- CompanyA PDF Files

To add a target to a project based on Stationery

1. On the **Project** menu, click **Manage Format Targets**.
2. Click **Add**.

3. In the **Format Type** field, select the output format you want to use for the format target.
4. In the **Target Name** field, type a name for the format target.
5. Click **OK**.

Renaming Targets

You can rename targets. By default, the target name is the same as the output format in ePublisher. However, in some situations, you may want specify a different name for the target. For example, assume that you are a writer working at CompanyA, and you have the requirement to create a web-based help system using your documentation source files. In this scenario, you create an ePublisher project that specifies WebWorks help as your help system and you configure your project settings to use information and branding for CompanyA to create an target called *WebWorks Help*.

Next, assume that your requirements change, and now, based on an OEM agreement your company signed, in addition to creating WebWorks Help for CompanyA, you must use your source files to create WebWorks Help for CompanyB. In this scenario you create a new target in your project called *CompanyB WebWorks Help* and configure settings for this target. However, after configuring settings for the CompanyB WebWorks Help target, you now want to go back and rename your original WebWorks Help output format, and change the name of this output format to *CompanyA WebWorks Help*.

To rename a target

1. On the **Project** menu, click **Manage Format Targets**.
2. In the **Target Name** field, click the name of the output format you want to rename.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. In the **Target Name** field, type the new name you want to specify.
5. Click **OK**.

Deleting Targets

You can delete targets from a project if you no longer need to produce output for the target.

To delete a target

1. On the **Project** menu, click **Manage Format Targets**.
2. In the **Target Name** field, click the name of the output format you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.

4. Click **OK**.

Working with Projects

This section explains how to work with projects.

Saving Projects

You should periodically save your project to ensure that you do not lose any changes you have made. By saving your project, you ensure that ePublisher stores the information in your project in the project files and all of your project information will be available the next time you open your project.

To save a project

On the **File** menu, click **Save**. ePublisher automatically saves your ePublisher project in a file in the location you specified when you first created the project.

- *If you are saving an ePublisher Express project*, by default ePublisher saves the project file in the `My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project.
- *If you are saving an ePublisher Designer project*, by default ePublisher saves the project file in the `My Documents\ePublisher Designer Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project.

Opening Existing Projects

You can open an existing project using one of the following methods:

- Open the project from within the ePublisher Express or ePublisher Designer user interface.
- Open the project from Windows Explorer by double-clicking the project file in the folder where you saved the project.

By default ePublisher saves project files in the following locations:

- ePublisher saves ePublisher Express project files in the `My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project. ePublisher Express project files use the `.wrp` file extension.
- ePublisher saves ePublisher Designer project files in the `My Documents\ePublisher Designer Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *UserName* is the name of the user account running ePublisher Express and *ProjectName* is the name of the project. ePublisher Designer project files use the `.wep` file extension.

When you open an existing project, ePublisher opens a separate instance of the ePublisher for each project, and each project has its own window. For example, if you have *ProjectA* open, and then you decide to open a project called *ProjectB*, ePublisher opens up a new instance of ePublisher for the new project and you have two ePublisher instances with *ProjectA* and *ProjectB* open concurrently on your computer.

To open an existing project

1. *If you want to open an existing project from within ePublisher Express or ePublisher Designer*, complete the following actions:
 - a. In ePublisher, on the **File** menu, click **Open**.
 - b. Browse to the location of the project file you want to open.
 - c. Select the project file you want to open, and then click **Open**.
2. *If you want to open an existing project using Windows Explorer*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In Windows Explorer, browse to the location of the ePublisher project file you want to open.
 - b. Double-click the ePublisher project file.

Closing Projects

When you finish working with a project, you can close it. When you close the project, ePublisher prompts you to save any changes to your project that you have not already saved.

To close a project

On the **File** menu, click **Exit**.

Synchronizing Projects with Stationery

ePublisher Express projects use Stationery designed in ePublisher Designer by the Stationery designer. From time to time, the Stationery designer may update the Stationery used by your ePublisher Express project. When the Stationery designer updates the Stationery, you must synchronize your ePublisher Express project with the Stationery associated with the project in order to obtain the updates made by the Stationery designer. For more information about Stationery, see “Understanding Stationery” on page 330.

When the Stationery designer updates the Stationery an ePublisher Express project uses, ePublisher detects the change the next time you open a project that uses the Stationery, notifies you that the Stationery used by the project has been modified, and prompts you to synchronize your project with the updated Stationery. ePublisher Express prompts you to synchronize your project with its Stationery file under the following conditions:

- ePublisher detects differences between the project manifest file and the Stationery manifest file.
- ePublisher detects modifications to the Stationery file used by the project.

When you synchronize your project with Stationery, you update your project file so that the information in your project file matches the information in the Stationery file and in the Stationery manifest file. Synchronizing the project file with the Stationery file and the manifest file ensures all of the settings and information in the project file match all of the settings and information in the Stationery file. For more information about the Stationery file and the Stationery manifest file, see “Understanding Manifest Files” on page 348 and “Understanding Stationery Files” on page 349.

Based on your ePublisher implementation, after you create an ePublisher Express project using Stationery, you can customize target settings for the targets available in your project if you have appropriate permissions. You can only customize target settings in your ePublisher Express project if you have target setting modification permissions. Any customizations you make to target settings will be overwritten the next time you synchronize your ePublisher Express project with Stationery. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.

ePublisher Express allows you to synchronize your project with its associated Stationery using one of the following methods:

- Automatically synchronize projects with Stationery. For more information, see “Automatically Synchronizing ePublisher Express Projects with Stationery” on page 349.
- Manually synchronize projects with Stationery. For more information, see “Manually Synchronizing ePublisher Express Projects with Stationery” on page 350.

Understanding Manifest Files

When you create a project based on Stationery in ePublisher Express, ePublisher copies the manifest file used by the Stationery you specify for the project and places a copy of the Stationery manifest file in the project folder for the new ePublisher Express project. The manifest file is a record of all of the files associated with the Stationery file, including all of the files listed in the following project folders:

- `Formats` folder
- `Targets` folder
- `Files` folder

For more information about project folders, see “Understanding the Project Folder Structure” on page 327.

Any time the Stationery designer performs one of the following actions in the Stationery `Formats`, `Targets`, or `Files` folder, ePublisher updates the Stationery manifest file:

- Modifies a file in a folder
- Adds a file to a folder
- Removes a file from a folder

When you open an existing ePublisher Express project, ePublisher compares the ePublisher Express project manifest file to manifest file of the Stationery associated with the ePublisher Express project and determines if there are differences between the manifest file.

If the Stationery designer has updated, removed, or added any files to the `Formats`, `Targets`, and `Files` folder in the Stationery since the last time you opened your ePublisher Express project, ePublisher detects these differences and prompts you to synchronize your ePublisher Express project with the Stationery file. When you synchronize your ePublisher Express project with the Stationery file, ePublisher copies the Stationery’s updated manifest file over to your ePublisher Express project file and adds, removes, and updates files in the `Formats`, `Targets`, and `Files` folders for your project as appropriate.

For example, assume that the Stationery designer updated the Stationery you use for one of your projects by adding a new `Page.asp` file. When the Stationery designer makes this change, ePublisher updates the Stationery manifest file with the change. After the Stationery designer makes this change, the next time you open up your ePublisher Express project that uses the changed Stationery, ePublisher Express recognizes that the ePublisher Express project manifest file is different than the Stationery project file and prompts you to synchronize your project to your Stationery file. When you synchronize your project, ePublisher adds the new `Page.asp` file to your project folders.

Understanding Stationery Files

When you open an existing ePublisher Express project, ePublisher Express determines if the Stationery used by the project has been modified by examining the checksum of the Stationery file. A checksum is a value that depends on the contents of a file. ePublisher uses the checksum to determine if a Stationery file has changed. If the checksum of the Stationery file is different than the checksum of the project file, ePublisher Express prompts you to synchronize your project with the Stationery file associated with your project. Any changes to the following settings within the Stationery file will affect the checksum:

- Style and format information
- Conditions
- Variables
- Cross-reference definitions
- Target settings

When to Synchronize

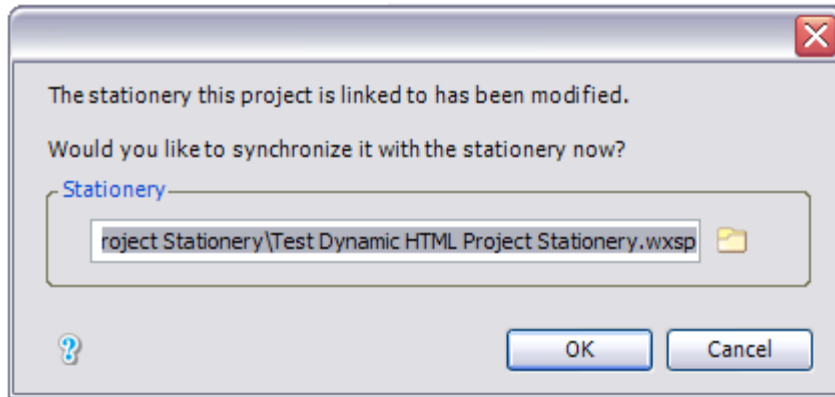
All ePublisher Express projects should be synchronized with Stationery any time the Stationery designer modifies the Stationery. ePublisher Express projects must be synchronized with the Stationery in order for ePublisher to include the changes made by the Stationery designer to the Stationery file in an ePublisher Express project. When you synchronize an ePublisher Express project (.wrxp file) with Stationery (.wxsp file), ePublisher updates the information in the ePublisher Express project to match the information in the Stationery file. If you choose not to synchronize, your project will retain its old settings and the information in the project file will not match the information in the Stationery file until you synchronize.

Automatically Synchronizing ePublisher Express Projects with Stationery

When you open an existing project, ePublisher Express automatically detects whether any modifications have been made to the Stationery file. If any changes have been made to the Stationery, ePublisher Express displays a window notifying you that the Stationery has been modified. When this window displays, you can choose to synchronize your project to the modified Stationery file. You can also choose to synchronize your project to new Stationery.

To automatically synchronize an ePublisher Express project with Stationery

1. Open ePublisher Express. If the Stationery designer has modified the Stationery linked to your ePublisher Express project, ePublisher Express displays a window that tells you that the Stationery the ePublisher Express project is linked to has been modified. The window ePublisher displays should be similar to the following window.



2. *If you want to synchronize your ePublisher Express project with the specified Stationery*, click **Yes**.
3. *If you want to synchronize your ePublisher Express project with different Stationery*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Click the folder icon, and then browse to the location of the Stationery with which you want to synchronize your ePublisher Express project.
 - b. Select the Stationery (.wxsp file), and then click **Open**.
 - c. Click **OK** again.
4. *If you do not want to synchronize your ePublisher Express project with Stationery*, click **Cancel**.

Manually Synchronizing ePublisher Express Projects with Stationery

You can manually synchronize your project file with Stationery at any time. When you manually synchronize your project file with Stationery, ePublisher Express prompts you to specify the Stationery with which you want to synchronize your ePublisher Express project. You can synchronize your ePublisher Express project with the Stationery currently associated with your ePublisher Express project, or you can specify that you want your ePublisher Express project to synchronize with different Stationery.

To manually synchronize an ePublisher Express project with Stationery

1. In ePublisher Express, on the **File** menu, click **Synchronize with Stationery**.

Note: You can only synchronize ePublisher Express projects with Stationery. You cannot synchronize ePublisher Designer projects with Stationery, because ePublisher Designer projects are not based on Stationery. ePublisher Designer projects are used to design Stationery.

2. Browse to the location of the Stationery to which you want to synchronize your ePublisher Express project. By default, ePublisher saves Stationery to the following folder:

`My Documents\ePublisher Stationery\ProjectName`, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project used to create the Stationery.

3. Select the Stationery (.wxsp file), and then click **Open**. ePublisher synchronizes the ePublisher Express project with the specified Stationery.

Deleting Projects

Delete a project when you no longer want to use the project to generate output.

To delete a project

1. Open Windows Explorer.
2. Browse to the location of the project folder for the project you want to delete.
 - By default ePublisher saves ePublisher Express project files in the `My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project. ePublisher Express project files use the .wrp file extension
 - By default ePublisher saves the ePublisher Designer project files in the `My Documents\ePublisher Designer Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project. ePublisher Designer project files use the .wep file extension.
3. Delete the project folder.

When you delete a project, ePublisher continues to display the project on the Start Page until you close and then reopen the ePublisher user interface.

Generating and Regenerating Output

When you generate output in ePublisher, ePublisher creates all of the files specified for the target. ePublisher uses the information in the project source documents and project settings to generate output files. Output files include the following types of files:

- Individual topic page .html files (or .rtf files if you generate Microsoft WinHelp)
- Image files, such as .jpg, .gif, and .png files
- The entry-point file, which is used to open the generated output
- All files required by the help system if you are generating output for a help system

Understanding Output Generation and Regeneration

In ePublisher, you generate output using either the generate or regenerate option. The generate and regenerate option both create output from your project. However, there are some important differences between the options.

As you make changes to your source documents and your project settings, you need to generate output files in order to see any changes made to the following items:

- Content changes in your source documents
- Changes to project settings
- Changes in the Stationery associated with your ePublisher project

When you *generate* output for a target for the first time, ePublisher creates the output files for the first time. After you generate output files for a target the first time, if you generate output for your target again, you *update* your output files with the changes you made in your source documents and the changes you made to your project settings. Generating, or updating, your output creates output files more quickly than regenerating your output files.

Use the generate option when you have made changes to the following project settings:

- Condition settings
- Variable values
- Cross-reference definitions
- Merge settings
- Target settings
- Project preferences

When you *regenerate* output, ePublisher deletes the `Data` folder from the project folder, creates a new `Data` folder, and *creates* new output files each time. Regenerate your output any time you add new information to your source documents that is not content. Non-content modifications to source documents include adding, removing, or modifying following items:

- Paragraph, character and table styles and formats
- Marker types
- Cross-reference definitions
- Variable values in the source documents
- Condition settings in the source documents

Generating Output

In ePublisher, you can generate output for the following items:

- The entire project, which generates output for all the groups and source documents in your project
- A single group within your project
- An individual source document within your project

Generate output for all of the groups in your project when you are generating the final, completed output or help system, when you are merging output or help systems, or when you are deploying your output.

Generate output for a single group if you have already generated output for the other groups in your project, but you have made some slight modifications to one of the groups. Using ePublisher to generate output for a single group reduces the amount of time it takes ePublisher to generate output for your project. When you generate output for a single group, ePublisher generates output for all of the source documents within the group. If you select a top-level group or a group that contains subgroups, ePublisher generates output for all of the source documents in the group and its subgroups.

Generate output for an individual source document if you have made some slight modifications to a source document and want to preview what your generated output will look like. Selecting an individual source document instead of generating output for the entire group or project reduces the amount of time it takes ePublisher to generate output.

To generate output

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to generate output.
2. *If you want to generate output for an entire project*, on the **Project** menu, click **Generate All**.

3. *If you want to generate output for a group in your project*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In **Document Manager**, select the group for which you want to generate output.
 - b. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate Selected**.
4. *If you want to generate output for an individual source document in your project*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In **Document Manager**, select the document for which you want to generate output.
 - b. On the **Project** menu, click **Generate Selected**.

Note: Some formats, such as the Wiki-based formats and WebWorks Reverb, must be deployed to a server for proper viewing. WebWorks Reverb does provide a convenience web server that can be used for quick, non-production preview purposes. Refer to [Deploying Output to Output Destinations](#) for further information.

Regenerating Output

When you regenerate output, ePublisher deletes the `Data` folder from the project folder, creates a new `Data` folder, and generates new output files.

Regenerate your source document any time you have added new information to your source document that is not content, including adding, removing, or modifying the following items:

- Character styles
- Paragraph styles
- Table styles
- Cross-reference definitions
- Variable values within source documents
- Conditions settings within source documents

To regenerate output

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to regenerate output.
2. On the **Project** menu, click **Regenerate All**.

Generating Output from FrameMaker or Microsoft Word

In 2011.1, ePublisher adds the ability to generate output and reports with your authoring tool via the Transit menu. Output and reports generated via this menu are short-lived. They disappear once the project window is closed. Long lived projects should be created with the classic Express interface.

In your Source Document

1. Go to the **WebWorks** menu
2. Select **ePublisher Express -> Generate Output**
3. Select the Stationery file on which you want the project to be based
4. Click **OK** once you have selected the Stationery and the Target you want to use. Now click **Finish** to generate output. ePublisher provides you a window to view the Output Explorer as well as the generated output

Modifying Help System Title Bars

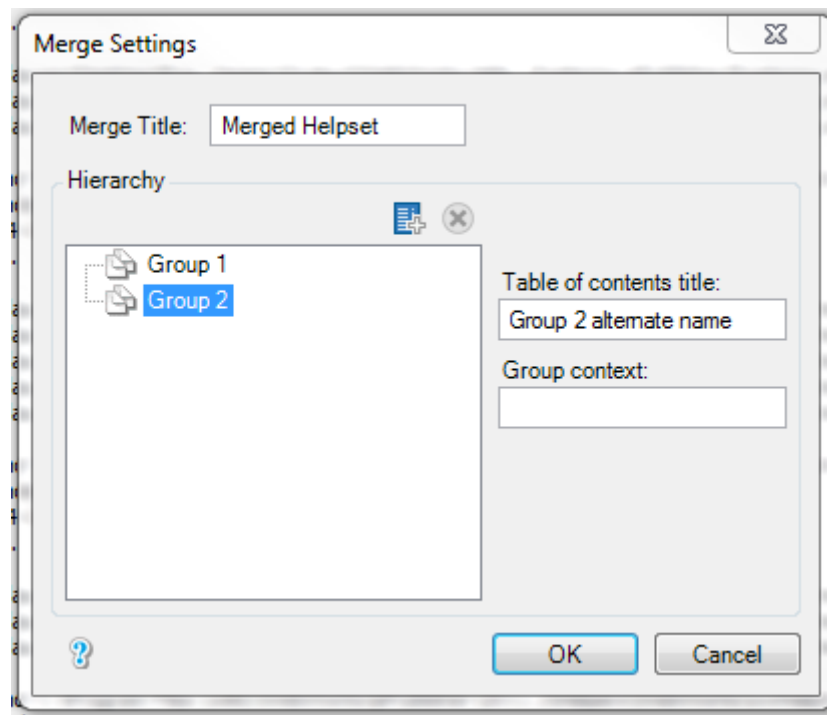
The title bar in your generated help system displays the title you assigned to your project. If you want to specify a different title in the title bar for your generated help system, you can do this in the Merge Settings window if you are generating output for the following help systems:

- Dynamic HTML
- Eclipse Help
- Microsoft HTML Help
- WebWorks Help
- WebWorks Reverb

You cannot use merge settings to modify help system title bars for other output formats.

To modify the title bar of a help system

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to modify the title bar of a help system.
2. On the **Target** menu, click **Merge Settings**.



3. In the **Merge Title** field, type the title you want to display in the title bar for your generated help system, and then click **OK**.
4. On the **File** menu, click **Save**.
5. Regenerate your output. For more information, see “Regenerating Output” on page 354.

Customizing or Removing Splash Page Images in WebWorks Help

The splash page is the first page that displays in the topic frame when a WebWorks Help system first opens. By default, WebWorks Help displays a WebWorks image on the splash page. The Stationery designer may also customize the WebWorks Help splash page in the Stationery used by your project to display a custom image. You can replace the existing splash page image with a different image or you can configure WebWorks Help to display the first topic in the help instead of the splash page image.

Customizing Splash Page Images in WebWorks Help

By default when you generate WebWorks Help, WebWorks Help displays a splash page. The splash page is the first page that displays in the topic frame when the WebWorks Help opens. You can replace the default splash page image with a custom image.

For more information about the project folder, see “Understanding Projects and the Project Folder Structure” on page 326.

To replace the splash page image

1. *If you want to override the image for all WebWorks Help targets*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In your project, on the **View** menu, click **Format Override Directory**.
 - b. Create the WebWorks Help 5.0\Pages\images folder in your *ProjectName***Formats** folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your ePublisher project.
2. *If you want to override the image for one WebWorks Help target*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In your project, on the **View** menu, click **Target Override Directory**.
 - b. Create the WebWorks Help 5.0\Pages\images folder in your *ProjectName***Targets** folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of your ePublisher project.
3. Copy the splash.jpg file from the following folder to the images folder you created within your project folder:


```
Program Files\WebWorks\ePublisher\2013.3\Formats\WebWorks Help 5.0\Pages\images
```
4. Open the splash.jpg file you copied into the images folder and modify it to be the splash page image you want.
5. Save and close the splash.jpg file.
6. Regenerate your output and then open WebWorks Help in Output Explorer to verify the change to the splash page image. For more information, see “Regenerating Output” on page 354 and “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

Removing Splash Page Images in WebWorks Help

By default when you generate WebWorks Help, WebWorks Help displays a splash page. However, instead of displaying the splash page, WebWorks Help can display the first topic page instead. If you configure this option, when users open the WebWorks Help system, it displays the first topic.

To remove the splash page image in WebWorks Help

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**.
3. Set **Show first document instead of splash page** to **Enabled**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Regenerate your output and then open WebWorks Help in Output Explorer to confirm the first topic page displays instead of the splash page. For more information, see “Regenerating Output” on page 354 and “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.

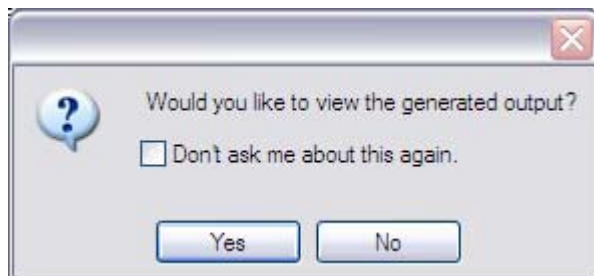
Viewing Output

After you specify project and target settings, generate output for your target to review your changes and verify that the generated output displays and functions properly. You can generate output for all of the source documents and groups in your project, or you can generate output for a single group or source document. You can view your generated output files in one of the following ways:

- View output by automatically opening the generated output. For more information, see “Viewing Output by Automatically Opening Generated Output” on page 358.
- View output in Output Explorer. For more information, see “Viewing Output in Output Explorer” on page 359.
- View output in the `Output` folder. For more information, see “Viewing Output in the Output Folder” on page 362.

Viewing Output by Automatically Opening Generated Output

When you generate or regenerate output for a target, after ePublisher generates output, ePublisher prompts you to view the generated output by displaying the following window:



To view output by automatically opening the output

1. Generate or regenerate output. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353 or “Regenerating Output” on page 354.
2. When ePublisher displays a window asking if you would like to view the generated output, perform one of the following actions:
 - *If you want to view the generated output*, click **Yes**.
 - *If you do not want to view the generated output*, click **No**.
 - *If you want ePublisher to automatically open the output each time you generate output and you do not want ePublisher to ask you each time if you want to view the generated output*, select the **Don’t ask me about this again** check box, and then click **Yes**.
 - *If you do not want ePublisher to automatically open the output each time you generate output and you do not want ePublisher to ask you each time if you want to view the generated output*, select the **Don’t ask me about this again** check box, and then click **No**.

If you select the **Don’t ask me about this again** check box and specify that you always want ePublisher to display the generated output or that you never want ePublisher to display the generated output, ePublisher uses the options you specify as the default behavior for automatically displaying output when you generate or regenerate output. If you later want to change the default behavior, you can clear your preferences in the WebWorks ePublisher Preferences window, and then set new preferences the next time you generate or regenerate output. For more information about setting ePublisher preferences, see “Specifying General ePublisher Preferences” on page 89.

Viewing Output in Output Explorer

Output Explorer allows you to view output files from within the ePublisher user interface. Each time you generate output for a group of source documents or for an individual source document, ePublisher displays the generated output files in Output Explorer. The list of files ePublisher displays in Output Explorer is based on if you have a group of source documents selected or if you have an individual source document selected.

If you select a top-level group in Document Manager, ePublisher displays a group folder with the same name as the top-level group in Output Explorer that contains the following items:

- **Navigation group.** The Navigation group displays the generated entry-point file and printable reports. The entry-point file is the file that opens the generated output.
- **Reports group.** The Reports group displays any reports associated with the target that ePublisher generated.

If you select a source document in Document Manager, ePublisher displays the source document group with the same name as the source document selected in Document Manager that contains the following items:

- Files group. The Files group contains all of the generated content files and printable reports.
- Images group. The Images group contains images associated with the source document.
- Reports group. The Reports group displays any reports associated with the generated output for the target.

If you select a subgroup in Document Manager, ePublisher does not display any information in the Navigation and Reports groups in Output Explorer, because subgroups do not create a generated entry-point file and do not represent an actual table of contents group in generated output. The entry-point file is the file that opens the generated output.

If you have two or more top-level groups in Document Manager and your output format supports merged help systems, ePublisher creates a Merge Output group in Output Explorer. The Merge Output group contains the entry-point file for the merged help system. For more information about merged help systems, see “Merging Help Systems (Multivolume Help)” on page 373.

To view output in Output Explorer

1. *If Output Explorer is not displayed in the ePublisher user interface*, on the **View** menu, click **Output Explorer**.
2. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to view output.
3. *If you want to view output by opening the entry-point file*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In Output Explorer, select a top-level group.
 - b. Click on the plus sign next to the top-level group to expand the group.
 - c. Click on the plus sign next to the **Navigation** group to expand the group.
 - d. Double-click on the entry-point file to open the generated output.

Output Type Generated	Default Entry-Point File to Double-Click to Open
Dynamic HTML	toc.html
Eclipse Help	View Eclipse Help
Microsoft HTML Help	name.chm
Microsoft Reader	name.lit
Microsoft WinHelp	name.hlp

Output Type Generated	Default Entry-Point File to Double-Click to Open
Oracle Help	<code>name.jar</code>
Palm Reader	<code>name.pdb</code>
Sun JavaHelp	<code>name.jar</code>
WebWorks Help	<code>index.html</code>
WebWorks Reverb	<code>index.html</code>
Wiki - Confluence	You cannot view Confluence generated output by clicking on an entry-point file in Output Explorer. you must deploy the Confluence output to a Confluence server computer before you can view the output. For more information about deploying Confluence output, see “Deploying Output” on page 376.
Wiki - MediaWiki	You cannot view MediaWiki generated output by clicking on an entry-point file in Output Explorer. You must deploy the MediaWiki output to a MediaWiki server computer before you can view the output. For more information about deploying MediaWiki output, see “Deploying Output” on page 376.
Wiki - MoinMoin	You cannot view MoinMoin Wiki generated output by clicking on an entry-point file in Output Explorer. You must deploy the MoinMoin Wiki output to a MoinMoin Wiki server computer before you can view the output. For more information about deploying MoinMoin Wiki output, see “Deploying Output” on page 376.
XML+XSL	<code>toc.xml</code>

4. *If you generated output for an HTML-based output format and you want to view the individual HTML files generated for a specific document*, complete the following steps:

Note: By default, ePublisher produces individual HTML files for HTML-based output formats based on the page breaks settings you specify for your project. For more information about specifying page break settings, see “Specifying Page Breaks Settings” on page 385.

- a. In Document Manager, select a source document.
- b. In the Output Explorer, click on the plus sign next to the document to expand the group.
- c. Click on the plus sign next to the **Files** group to expand the group.
- d. Double-click on the generated output file to open the file.

5. *If you generated output for a Wiki-based output format and you want to view the individual .wiki files generated for a specific document*, you must deploy the generated .wiki files to a Wiki server computer before you can view the individual .wiki files. For more information about deploying Wiki-based output, see “Deploying Output” on page 376.

Note: By default, ePublisher produces individual .wiki files for Wiki-based output formats based on the page breaks settings you specify for your project. For more information about specifying page break settings, see “Specifying Page Breaks Settings” on page 385.

6. *If your output format supports merged help systems and you want to view the entry-point file for a merged help system*, complete the following steps:
 - a. In Output Explorer, click on the plus sign next to the **Merged Output** group in the Output Explorer to expand the group.
 - b. Double-click on the entry-point file to open the generated output.

Viewing Output in the Output Folder

ePublisher stores generated output pages and images in the Output folder. By default, ePublisher creates an Output folder in the following location:

- *If you are creating a project using ePublisher Express*, by default ePublisher creates the Output folder in the My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\ProjectName folder, where ProjectName is the name of the project.
- *If you are creating a project using ePublisher Designer*, by default ePublisher creates the Output folder in the My Documents\ePublisher Designer Projects\ProjectName folder, where ProjectName is the name of the project.

The Output folder contains individual output folders for each one of your targets. For example, if your project contains targets for WebWorks Help, Microsoft HTML Help, and Dynamic HTML, then there will be three folders, one for each of these targets, in the Output folder.

You can view output files for all output formats other than Wiki-based output formats by opening them directly from the Output folder. You can only view output files for Wiki-based output formats by deploying the files to a Wiki server computer. For more information about deploying output files to a Wiki server computer, see “Deploying Output” on page 376.

You can also view output files for all output formats other than Wiki-based output formats by opening them from the ePublisher user interface. You cannot open files for Wiki-based output formats from the ePublisher user interface. When you open output files from the ePublisher user interface, ePublisher opens the `Output` folder for the active target you are currently working with in ePublisher. For more information about specifying an active target and working with targets, see “Specifying Active Targets” on page 343 and “Working with Targets” on page 342.

To view output in the Output Folder

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to view output.

Note: You must generate output before you can view output in the `Output` folder. For more information about generating output, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

2. On the **View** menu, click **Output Directory**. ePublisher opens Windows Explorer and displays a folder based on the name of your target. This `Output` folder contains the output files ePublisher generated for the active target.

Changing the Location of the Output Folder

When you generate output, ePublisher places the output files into the Output folder. You can modify the location where ePublisher stores your output files.

To change the default location of the Output folder

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to view output.
2. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**.
3. In the **Generated output location** field, type the path to the folder where you want ePublisher to place the generated output, or click the folder icon to browse to and select a folder.
4. Click **OK**.

Working with Output Log Files

Each time you generate output for a target, ePublisher creates a log file named `generate.log` and writes the following information to the log file:

- Time when output generation began
- Actions and commands ePublisher performed, such as processing, creating and copying files
- Pipelines processed by ePublisher
- Any messages, warnings, or errors generated by ePublisher when ePublisher generated output for the target
- Time when output generation ended
- Total amount of time it took ePublisher to generate the output

To work with output log files for a target

1. If you want to view the log file for a target from within the ePublisher user interface, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to view log files.
 - b. On the **View** menu, click **Log Window**.
2. If you want to save the log file as a `.txt` file, complete the following steps:
 - a. Click the **Save** button, located in the upper-right corner of the Log Window.
 - b. Specify a name for the log file and the location where you want to save the log file, and then click **Save**.

3. If you want to view the log file for a target using Windows Explorer, in Windows Explorer browse to one of the following locations:
 - ***If you are using ePublisher Express***, browse to the `ProjectName\Logs\TargetName` folder, where `ProjectName` is the name of the project and `TargetName` is the name of the target for which you generated output. By default ePublisher saves project files for ePublisher Express projects in the `My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\ProjectName` folder, where `ProjectName` is the name of the project.
 - ***If you are using ePublisher Designer***, browse to the `ProjectName\Logs\TargetName` folder, where `ProjectName` is the name of the project and `TargetName` is the name of the target for which you generated output. By default ePublisher saves project files for ePublisher Designer projects in the `My Documents\ePublisher Designer Projects\ProjectName` folder, where `ProjectName` is the name of the project.

Validating Output Using Reports

After you generate output, you can validate your output using ePublisher reports. ePublisher reports contain information about how ePublisher processed items in your source documents when ePublisher generated output. Reports also allow you to identify any problems that occurred when ePublisher generated output. If reports display notifications, such as messages, warnings, or errors, you can correct the items in your source documents that caused the error. You can then generate output again and then review the reports again to verify that any issues have been addressed as needed.

ePublisher provides the following types of reports:

- Accessibility reports. For more information, see “Understanding Accessibility Reports” on page 366.
- Filenames reports. For more information, see “Understanding Filenames Reports” on page 366.
- Links reports. For more information, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369.
- Styles reports. For more information, see “Understanding Styles Reports” on page 367.
- Topics Reports. For more information, see “Understanding Topics Reports” on page 368.

For more information about configuring and generating reports, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369 and “Generating Reports” on page 370.

Understanding Accessibility Reports

You can use markers in your source documents to create accessible online content. For more information about using markers to creating accessible content, see “Creating Accessible Online Content in FrameMaker” on page 169 and “Creating Accessible Online Content in Word” on page 274.

You can use Accessibility reports to validate that the online content you generate using ePublisher meets your accessibility requirements. Accessibility reports provide notifications on the following items when ePublisher generates output:

- Images without alternative text
- Image maps without alternative text
- Images without long descriptions
- Tables without summaries

Configure the notifications you want ePublisher to generate for Accessibility report settings before you generate Accessibility reports. For more information about configuring Accessibility report settings, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369. For more information about generating Accessibility reports, see “Generating Reports” on page 370.

Understanding Filenames Reports

You can specify names for output files using Filename markers. For more information about specifying output file names using Filename markers, see “Specifying Output File Names in FrameMaker” on page 133 and “Specifying Output File Names in Word” on page 236.

You can use Filenames reports to validate that ePublisher named your output files correctly using the Filename markers you inserted in your source documents. The Filenames report displays the name of the Filename marker you inserted into your source document and the name of the output file ePublisher generated based on the Filename marker. The Filenames report also provides notifications on the following items when ePublisher generates output:

- The files ePublisher created that correspond to the Filename markers you inserted into your source documents
- If ePublisher ignored a Filename marker when generating output
- If duplicate Filename markers exist in the source documents used by your project to generate output

Configure the notifications you want ePublisher to generate for Filenames report settings before you generate Filenames reports. For more information about configuring Filename report settings, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369. For more information about generating Filename reports, see “Generating Reports” on page 370.

Understanding Links Reports

You can use Links reports to verify that the links you specify to items in your source documents resolve and that ePublisher processed links in your source documents to the item referenced by the link correctly. Links reports provide notifications on the following items:

- Baggage files
- External URLs
- Unresolved links to items in other documents
- Unresolved links to missing source document
- Unresolved links to missing files
- Unresolved link within source documents document
- Unsupported baggage files
- Unsupported external URLs
- Unsupported group to group links

A baggage file is any file that your source document references but is not contained in the ePublisher project, such as .jpeg, .avi, .swf, .gif, or .png or Microsoft Word, Adobe FrameMaker, or XML file.

Configure the notification you want ePublisher to generate for Links report settings before you generate Links reports. For more information about configuring Links report settings, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369. For more information about generating Links reports, see “Generating Reports” on page 370.

Understanding Styles Reports

Styles reports allow you to verify that your source documents conform to the styles and formatting defined in the Stationery by the Stationery designer. The Styles report notifies you about the following items when ePublisher generates reports:

- Any non-standard styles used in your source documents
- Any style overrides used in your source documents

A non-standard style is any style that exists in your source document but is not defined in the stationery file used by your project. For example, if you add a new style to your source document called `BodyIndent 4`, but your stationery designer has not updated the stationery file to include the `BodyIndent 4` style, the Styles report notifies you that there is a non-standard style used in the source document.

A style override is any modification you made to the original style definition for a particular instance of a style. For example, if you have applied the `Body` paragraph style to a paragraph in your source document, and you then apply the `Bold` character style to the paragraph, the `Body` paragraph style has a style override.

If your source document contains any non-standard styles or style overrides, ePublisher will process your source documents when you generate output using the non-standard styles and style overrides you applied in your source documents.

Configure the notifications you want ePublisher to generate for Styles report settings before you generate Styles reports. For more information about configuring Styles report settings, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369. For more information about generating Styles reports, see “Generating Reports” on page 370.

Understanding Topics Reports

Context-sensitive help topics require that you have `TopicAlias` markers inserted in your source documents. ePublisher generates context-sensitive help topics based on the topic IDs you specify for each `TopicAlias` marker you insert in your source documents. Each time ePublisher detects a `TopicAlias` marker in a source document, ePublisher generates a context-sensitive help topic based on the topic ID. For more information about creating context-sensitive help topics, see “Creating Context-Sensitive Help in FrameMaker” on page 134 and “Creating Context-Sensitive Help in Word” on page 241.

You can use the Topics Report to verify that context-sensitive help topics have been created for each topic ID specified in your source document. The Topics Report lists the topic ID and the topic file created for each topic ID.

Configure the notifications you want ePublisher to generate for Topics report settings before you generate Topics reports. For more information about configuring Topics report settings, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369. For more information about generating Topics reports, see “Generating Reports” on page 370.

Understanding Images Reports

Image reports enable you to verify the integrity and appearance of ePublisher manage images. Users are notified any time a source image is missing or when an image occurs in a problematic structure, such as images within tables in the ePUB format.

Configuring Reports

When you use reports to validate your output, you must specify the type of notification that you want to display when ePublisher detects issues or performs actions while generating output using your source documents. When ePublisher generates output, ePublisher generates notifications under the following conditions:

- When ePublisher cannot properly process elements
- When ePublisher encounters missing information

For example, ePublisher can generate a notification when it detects a potential error in your source documents when you generate output, such as an unresolved cross reference. ePublisher can also generate a notification when it performs a specific action using elements contained in your source documents, such as when ePublisher generates an output file using a filename you specified using a Filename marker.

You can specify the following values for report options when you generate output:

Ignore

Specify this value if you do not want ePublisher to report any issues it identifies in the report. For example, specify this value if you do not want the Styles report to report any style overrides.

Message

Specify this value if you want to receive a message when ePublisher completes or fails to complete an action. For example, if you are not concerned if your source document uses non-standard styles, but you would like to see where non-standard styles are used in your source documents, specify this value.

Warning

Specify this value if you want to receive a warning when ePublisher completes or fails to complete an action. For example, if you want to be warned when ePublisher detects non-standard styles in your source documents, specify this value.

Error

Specify this value if you want the report to display an error when ePublisher completes or fails to complete an action. For example, if you want to receive an error notification when ePublisher detects unresolved cross-references in your source documents, specify this value.

To configure report notification settings

1. On the Project menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to configure report notification settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**.

3. *If you want to specify Accessibility report notification settings*, in the **Accessibility Report** area, specify a value for each Accessibility report notification setting you want to configure. For more information about each setting, click **Help**.
4. *If you want to specify Filenames report notification settings*, in the **Filenames Report** area, specify a value for each Filename report notification setting you want to configure. For more information about each setting, click **Help**.
5. *If you want to specify Links report notification settings*, in the **Links Report** area, specify a value for each Links report notification setting you want to configure. For more information about each setting, click **Help**.
6. *If you want to specify Styles report notification settings*, in the **Styles Report** area, specify a value for each Styles report notification setting you want to configure. For more information about each setting, click **Help**.
7. *If you want to specify Topics report notification settings*, in the **Topics Report** area, specify a value for each Topics report notification setting you want to configure. For more information about each setting, click **Help**.

Generating Reports

You can generate reports for source documents by selecting the group or source document that you want to generate reports for in Document Manager. Before you generate reports, configure notification settings for each report you want to generate. For more information about configuring report notification settings, see “Configuring Reports” on page 369.

To generate a report

1. In Document Manager, select the group or source document for which you want to generate a report.
1. *If you want to generate all reports for the selected item*, on the **Project** menu, click **Generate Reports > All**.
2. *If you want to generate Accessibility reports for the selected item*, on the **Project** menu, click **Generate Reports > Accessibility Report**.
3. *If you want to generate Filename reports for the selected item*, on the **Project** menu, click **Generate Reports > Filenames Report**.
4. *If you want to generate Links reports for the selected item*, on the **Project** menu, click **Generate Reports > Links Report**.
5. *If you want to generate Styles reports for the selected item*, on the **Project** menu, click **Generate Reports > Styles Report**.
6. *If you want to generate Topics reports for the selected item*, on the **Project** menu, click **Generate Reports > Topics Report**.

Understanding Report Messages

The following tables provide descriptions for report messages.

Accessibility Report Messages

The following table lists messages in Accessibility reports.

Message	Definition
Table is missing a table summary.	The table does not contain a table summary. Insert a table summary marker within the table.
Image link '{0}' is missing alternate text.	The hotspot does not have alternate text. Insert an image area alternate text marker in a text frame within the image.
Image is missing alternate text.	The image does not have alternate text. Insert an image alternate text marker in a text frame within the image.
Image is missing a long description	The image does not have a long description. Insert an image long description marker in a text frame within the image.

Filename Report Messages

The following table lists messages in Filename reports.

Message	Definition
File '[NAME]' has been processed as a baggage file.	Any files not contained within your project are processed as baggage files.
Filename marker '[NAME]' has been used for generated file '[FILE PATH]'.	A file has been generated using a filename marker. This alerts you that the name of the file has been changed.
Filename marker '[NAME]' has been ignored.	The filename marker has been ignored because it is either uses a duplicate name or it has not been inserted at a heading that splits.
Filename marker '[NAME]' has been processed as '[NAME]' for generated file '[NAME]'.	The filename marker has not been used; instead, the file has been renamed to the filename indicated.

Links Report Messages

The following table list messages in Links reports.

Message	Definition
Unresolved link to target '[NAME]' in document '[NAME]'.	There is an unresolved cross-reference in the document. The destination target either does not exist or cannot be found.
Unresolved link from document '[NAME]' to target '[NAME]' in document '[NAME]'.	There is an unresolved cross-reference from a document to a location in another document. The destination target cannot be found.
Unresolved link from document '[NAME]' to document '[NAME]'.	There is an unresolved link from one document to another document. It cannot find the referenced document.
Unresolved link from document '[NAME]' to missing file '[NAME]'.	There is an unresolved link from a document to an external file. A file refers to any file that is not part of the ePublisher project or is not of the same type as your source document (for example, .jpeg, .gif, .tif)
Unresolved link from document '[NAME]' to document '[NAME]'. Output format does not support group to group linking.	There is an unresolved cross-reference from one document to another document because the output format your project is using does not support linking from one top-level group to another.
Unresolved link from document '[NAME]' to file '[NAME]'. Output format does not support baggage files.	There is an unresolved cross-reference from the document to a file because the output format your project is using does not support baggage files. Files refer to any file that is not part of the project.
External URL link '[NAME]' is not supported.	The output format does not support external links.

Styles Report Messages

The following table lists messages in Styles reports.

Message	Definition
Non-standard [STYLE TYPE] style '[NAME]' in use.	The style name is not contained with the stationery file.
[STYLE TYPE] style overrides exist for '[NAME]'.	There is a style override. Style overrides refer to attributes that are defined within the style.
Unnamed [STYLE TYPE] style overrides exist.	There is a style override. For example, the character style <i>bold</i> has been modified in one instance of its use.

Topics Report Messages

The following table lists messages in Topics reports.

Message	Definition
Topic '[NAME]' resolves to the file '[FILE PATH]'.	A topic page has been created for the topic alias marker.
Topic '[NAME]' is duplicated in the file '[FILENAME]'	A duplicate topic alias has been created in that file.

Images Report Messages

The following table lists messages in Images reports.

Message	Definition
Missing by-reference source files	An image referenced by the source document is missing.
Images in table cells	Image occurs inside a table cell (problematic for certain ePUB readers)

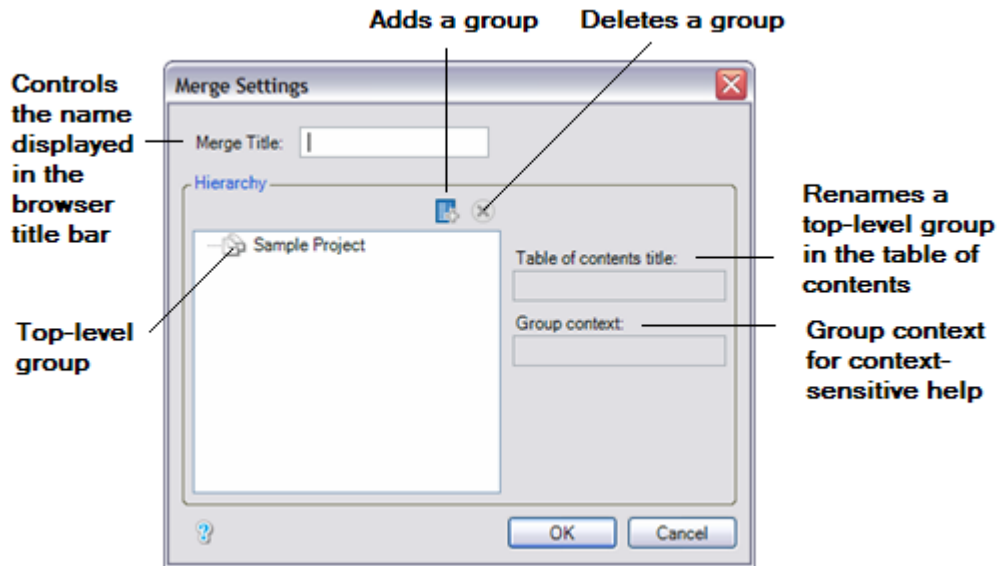
Merging Help Systems (Multivolume Help)

Merged help, which is sometimes also referred to as multivolume help, is a help system with a single set of files created from output from multiple groups from within a project. Merged help takes the table of contents, index, and search data from each top-level group entry-point file and combines this information to create a single, consolidated help system. You can use ePublisher to create merged help systems for the following output formats:

- Eclipse Help
- Microsoft HTML Help
- WebWorks Help
- WebWorks Reverb

If you have created several top-level groups in Document Manager for your project, by default ePublisher generates its own help system with its own entry-point file when you generate output for your project. The entry-point file is the file that opens the help system. ePublisher places the merged help system in the Merged Output group in Output Explorer.

You must have at least two top-level groups in Document Manager to create merged help. By default, ePublisher uses the organizational structure specified in Document Manager to create the merged, or multivolume help system. If you want to organize and group your top-level groups using a different name than the group name specified in the Document Manager, or if you want to use a different hierarchy in your merged help system than the hierarchy you currently have specified for your project in Document Manager, you can do this using merge settings. The following figure shows the Merge Settings window.



ePublisher names the merged help system based on the name of your target. For example, if you generate output for a target named CompanyA WebWorks Help, ePublisher creates an entry-point file for the merged help system named CompanyA WebWorks Help and displays this name in the title bar when users open the merged help system.

ePublisher also creates individual help systems for each top-level group in Document Manager and names these individual help systems based on the names of the top-level groups in Document Manager. For example, if you have three top-level groups in Document Manager named FeatureA, FeatureB, and FeatureC and you are generating output for a target called CompanyA WebWorks Help, ePublisher creates FeatureA, FeatureB, and FeatureC help systems as well as a merged help system named CompanyA WebWorks Help that merges the table of contents, index, and search data from each top-level group into a single, consolidated help system. These top-level groups also display in the table of contents in your merged help system.

You can use ePublisher merge settings to perform the following actions:

- Specify a different name than the target name for the title displayed in the title bar of the merged help system
- Specify a different name for subgroups in your generated output than the names used in Document Manager
- Organize and group your top-level groups in a merged help system into a different hierarchy than the hierarchy used in Document Manager.

To merge help systems

1. Create the top-level groups you want to use in your merged help system in Document Manager. For more information about creating top-level groups, see “Creating Top-Level Groups” on page 340.
2. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to create a merged help system.
3. On the **Target** menu, click **Merge Settings**.
4. *If you want to specify a name other than your target name for the merged help system*, in the **Merge Title** field, type in the name you would like to display in the title bar of your merged help system.
5. *If you want to specify a different name for each top-level group in the table of contents for your generated output*, complete the following steps for each top-level group you want to rename in your generated output:
 - a. In the **Hierarchy** area, select the name of the top-level group for which you want to specify a different name in the generated output.
 - b. In the **Table of contents title** field, type the name you want to display for the group in the generated output.
6. *If you want to reorganize the table of contents in your merged help system*, select and then drag and drop any of the top-level groups to a new position.
7. *If you want to create a new custom group for your merged help system that includes some of your existing top-level groups from Document Manager*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Click the **Add** button. The **Add** button in the Merge Settings window is an icon of a blue page with a plus (+) character ePublisher adds a new group called `Untitled Topic` to your table of contents hierarchy.
 - b. Click on the `Untitled Topic` group in the Merge Settings window and rename it.
 - c. Select and then drag and drop the top-level groups you want to include in the new group into the new group.

8. *If you want to delete a custom group you previously created that contains top-level groups*, complete the following steps:

Note: You can only remove groups that you have manually added to your merged help system hierarchy. You cannot remove groups ePublisher creates by default based on the top-level groups in Document Manager.

 - a. Select the group you want to remove.
 - b. Click the **Delete** button.
9. *If you are generating merged, or multivolume WebWorks Help or WebWorks Reverb that includes context-sensitive help*, in the **Group context** field, specify the help context for each top-level group to use.

Note: In WebWorks Help and WebWorks Reverb, you need to include the context and the TopicAlias value in the help call to display the correct help topic. For more information, see the *ePublisher Design Guide*.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Generate your output. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
12. Open the merged help system by completing one of the following steps:

Note: ePublisher creates the entry-point file using the name of the selected target. If you want to change the name of the entry-point file for the merged help system, rename your target. For more information about renaming your target, see “Renaming Targets” on page 344.

 - a. On the **View** menu, click **Output Explorer**.
 - b. Under the Merge Output group in the Output Explorer, double-click on the entry-point file for the merged help system to open the merged help system.

Note: Ensure you click under the Merge Output group in Output Explorer. You must click under the Merge Output group in Output Explorer in order to view the merged output. If you click under one of the other groups, you will only see the output generated for the specific group selected.
13. Review the merged help system you created based on the merge settings you specified and confirm that your merged help system displays using the help system name and table of contents group hierarchy that you want.

Deploying Output

This section explains how you can use ePublisher to deploy output to multiple locations, such as to folders on a network, to a Web server, or to a Wiki.

Understanding Output Deployment

By default ePublisher places output files in the following location on your local computer:

- ***If you are creating a project using ePublisher Express***, by default ePublisher creates the Output folder in the `My Documents\ePublisher Express Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project.
- ***If you are creating a project using ePublisher Designer***, by default ePublisher creates the Output folder in the `My Documents\ePublisher Designer Projects\ProjectName` folder, where *ProjectName* is the name of the project.

If you would like to deploy your output files to another location in addition to this default location after ePublisher generates output, such as a folder on a network, you can deploy your output to one or more output destinations using ePublisher. The **output destination** is the location where you would like to deploy your generated output files. In ePublisher, the output destination consists of the following components:

- Output name
- Output destination location

To deploy your output, you must perform the following steps:

1. Create one or more output destinations. For more information, see “Creating Output Destinations” on page 377.
2. Specify an output destination for each target. For more information, see “Specifying Output Destinations for Targets” on page 379.
3. Deploy output to output destinations. For more information, see “Deploying Output to Output Destinations” on page 380.

Creating Output Destinations

Before you can deploy your output, you must create output destinations. You can specify one output destination or multiple output destinations. Specify multiple output destinations when you want to deploy your output to multiple locations. For example, assume that you place your generated output to a web server computer or to a Wiki, and you use both a staging server and a production server. You can create one output destination in ePublisher for the staging server, and another output destination in ePublisher for the production server.

Output destinations are not project or target specific. When you define output destinations in ePublisher, ePublisher saves the output destinations you define and allows you to use the output destinations you specify across multiple ePublisher projects and targets.

When you deploy output to an output destination, ensure you specify a descriptive name for the output destination. When you work with output destination, you can only see the name of the output destination. You will not be able to see the actual path you specified to the output destination. Type a descriptive name for the output destination that allows you to easily identify each output destination you specify.

For example, if you are deploying WebWorks Help output for a product to both a staging server and a production server, type `Production Server ProductA WebWorks Help` for the first output destination. When you create your second output destination, type `Staging Server ProductA WebWorks Help` for the second output destination.

If you are deploying Wiki - MediaWiki or Wiki - MoinMoin output, review Wiki output format requirements before creating an output destination on a Wiki. For more information, see “Wiki - MediaWiki” on page 20 and “Wiki - MoinMoin” on page 20.

To create an output destination

1. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**.
2. Click **Add deploy target**.
3. *If your target is not based on a Wiki output format*, complete the following steps:
 - a. Click **Add > Folder**.
 - b. In the **Name** field, type a descriptive name for the output destination.
 - c. In the **Directory** field, type the path to the folder you want to specify as the output destination, or click the folder icon and then browse to and select the folder where you would like to deploy your output.
 - d. Click **OK**.

4. *If your target is based on a Wiki output format*, such as Wiki - MediaWiki or Wiki - MoinMoin, complete the following steps:
 - a. Click **Add > Wiki - Type**
 where *Type* is the Wiki type output format on which your target is based.
 For example, click **Add > Wiki - MediaWiki** or **Add > Wiki - MoinMoin**
 - b. In the **Name** field, type a descriptive name for the output destination.
 - c. Click **Edit**.
 - d. In the **Wiki Location** field, specify the URL root on the Wiki where you want to deploy the output.
 - e. *If you want to deploy output for a target that uses the Wiki - MoinMoin output format and you want to deploy different versions of MoinMoin Wiki content to the same MoinMoin Wiki*, specify a parent page where you want to deploy the MoinMoin Wiki content. The parent page is the URL page path where you want to deploy the Wiki output.
 - f. *If the Wiki to which you are deploying uses authentication*, select the **User name and password** check box, and then specify the user name and password for a user account with permissions on the Wiki. ePublisher encrypts this information before storing it.
 - g. Click **Test**. ePublisher checks to see if the user credentials you specify have appropriate permissions on the Wiki by requesting an authentication token from the Wiki.
 - h. Click **OK**.

After you create an output destination, you must specify which target is associated with the output destination before you can deploy output. For more information, see “Specifying Output Destinations for Targets” on page 379 and “Deploying Output to Output Destinations” on page 380.

Specifying Output Destinations for Targets

After you create an output destination, you must associate the output destination with an target before you can deploy output.

To specify an output destination for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify an output destination.
2. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**.

3. In the **Deploy to** field, select an output destination.

Note: You must create an output destination before you can specify an output destination for a target. For more information about creating output destinations, see “Creating Output Destinations” on page 377.

4. Click **OK**.

After you specify an output destination for a target, you can generate output and deploy the output to the output destination.

Deploying Output to Output Destinations

After you create output destinations, specify output destinations for targets and generate output, you can use the **Deploy** command in ePublisher to copy your output files and place them into the locations you specified as output destinations. When you deploy output, ePublisher copies the target output files and places the output files in the location you specified as the output destination. For more information about creating output destinations and specifying output destinations for targets, see “Creating Output Destinations” on page 377 and “Specifying Output Destinations for Targets” on page 379.

If you are deploying Wiki - MediaWiki or Wiki - MoinMoin output, review Wiki output format requirements and ensure the output destination you specify has been configured appropriately in order to support deployment of Wiki - MediaWiki or Wiki - MoinMoin output format. For more information about Wiki output format requirements, see “Wiki - MediaWiki” on page 20 and “Wiki - MoinMoin” on page 20.

To deploy output to an output destination

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to deploy output.
2. On the **Target** menu, click **Deploy**. ePublisher deploys the output files to the specified output location.

Customizing Target Settings

Based on your ePublisher implementation, after you create a project using Stationery, you can customize target settings for the targets available in your project if you have appropriate permissions. You can only customize target settings in a project if you have target setting modification permissions.

If you are using ePublisher Designer, you have target setting modification permissions. If you are using ePublisher Express, you may or may not have target setting modification permissions. When you install ePublisher Express, you must select the **Allow users to modify Target Settings and Properties** check box in order to have permissions to modify the target settings for the targets available in your project. If you do not select this check box during installation, you will not be able to customize target settings in projects. However, you can enable target setting modification permissions after you install ePublisher Express if needed. For more information, see “Enabling Target Setting Permissions After Installing ePublisher Express” on page 27.

If you have permissions to modify the target settings in projects, you can customize the following target settings for most output formats:

Note: If you are using ePublisher Express, any customizations you make to target settings will be overwritten the next time you synchronize your ePublisher Express project with Stationery. For more information, see “Synchronizing Projects with Stationery” on page 347.

- Accessibility settings. For more information, see “Specifying Accessibility Settings” on page 383.
- Company information. For more information, see “Specifying Company Information” on page 384.
- File processing behavior for front matter, index files, and table of contents files. For more information, see “Specifying File Processing Behavior for Front Matter, Index, and Table of Contents Files” on page 384.
- When to create new pages. For more information, see “Specifying Page Breaks Settings” on page 385.
- How you want to name your page files and image files when generating output. For more information, see “Specifying Page, Image, and Table File Naming Patterns” on page 385.
- Index settings. For more information, see “Specifying Index Settings” on page 386.
- How links to files or external URLs display in browser windows. For more information, see “Specifying How Links to Files or External URLs Display in Browser Windows” on page 387.
- Character encoding settings for targets. For more information, see “Specifying Character Encoding for Targets” on page 387.
- Language used by targets. For more information, see “Specifying the Language Used by Targets” on page 388.
- PDF generation settings. For more information, see “Specifying PDF Generation Settings” on page 388.
- Table of contents settings. For more information, see “Specifying Table of Contents Settings” on page 389.
- Report settings. For more information, see “Specifying Report Settings” on page 392.
- Output format-specific settings, such as settings specific to the WebWorks Help output format or the Microsoft HTML Help output format. For more information, see “Specifying Output Format-Specific Settings” on page 392.
- Variable settings. For more information, see “Customizing Variable Settings in Projects” on page 393.

- Condition settings. For more information, see “Customizing Condition Settings in Projects” on page 395.
- Cross-reference settings. For more information, see “Customizing Cross-Reference Settings in Projects” on page 395.

After you make any customizations to the target settings for the targets available in your project, generate output so that you can review your changes and verify that the generated output displays and functions properly. You can generate output for all the source documents and groups in your project, or you can generate output for a single group or source document. For more information about generating output, see “Generating Output” on page 353.

Specifying Accessibility Settings

In ePublisher, accessibility refers to how users with disabilities access electronic information and how writers and producers of online content produce accessible output that can function with assistive devices used by individuals with disabilities. Creators of online content, such as writers who produce online content and help systems and others who are responsible for producing accessible help, or Section 508 compliant content, must follow certain guidelines established by the W3C and the U.S. government. If you are responsible for producing accessible online content, you must provide alternate text and descriptions for all images and image maps and summaries for all tables included in the online content. Ensure you specify this information when you prepare your source documents for output generation. For more information, see “Creating Accessible Online Content in FrameMaker” on page 169 and “Creating Accessible Online Content in Word” on page 274.

To specify accessibility settings for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **Accessibility**, specify the appropriate values for the Accessibility settings. For more information about Accessibility settings and values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Company Information

You can add your company's contact information to each generated output page. By default, ePublisher displays the company contact information on the bottom and/or top of your output pages. Where the company information displays depends on what the Stationery designer specified in the Stationery file.

You can specify the following company information:

- Company email address
- Company fax number
- Company logo image
- Company name
- Company phone number
- Company web page

To specify company information for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **Company Information**, specify the appropriate values for the company information settings. For more information about the company information settings and values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying File Processing Behavior for Front Matter, Index, and Table of Contents Files

You can specify file processing behavior for front matter, index files, and table of contents files. For example, you can specify whether or not you want to generate output for front matter included in your source documents.

To specify file processing behavior for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **File Processing**, specify the appropriate values for file processing settings. For more information about the file processing settings and values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Page Breaks Settings

When ePublisher processes source documents, it creates new topic pages based on settings specified by the Stationery designer in the Stationery. However, you can modify how you would like ePublisher to handle the page breaks.

To specify page break settings for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **Files**, in the **Page break handling** field, select the value you want to specify. For more information about the values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Page, Image, and Table File Naming Patterns

You can specify page, image, and table file naming patterns that you want ePublisher to use when generating output.

For example, you can specify if you would like to include the following items in page, image, and table file names when generating output:

- Target name
- Name of the group in Document Manager that contains the topic
- Page heading text or title

You can use image naming patterns to specify names for embedded image output files. However, if you insert your images by reference in Adobe FrameMaker or use the **Link to File** or **Insert and Link** option in the Insert Picture window in Microsoft Word, ePublisher preserves the original file names.

You can only specify table file naming patterns for Wiki - MoinMoin output. When ePublisher generates Wiki - MoinMoin Wiki, it creates a separate file for each table in a topic.

Note: You can also use Filename markers to specify page and image output file names.

For more information about using markers to specify output file names, see “Specifying Output File Names in FrameMaker” on page 133 and “Specifying Output File Names in Word” on page 236.

To specify page, image, and table file naming patterns for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **Files**, specify the appropriate values for the page, image, and file naming patterns you want to use. For more information about file settings and values, click **Help**.

Note: You can only specify table file naming patterns for targets that use the Wiki - MoinMoin output format.

4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Index Settings

In ePublisher, you can specify if you want to generate an index for your help system. If you choose to generate an index for your help system, you must have index markers in your source documents. For more information about creating index markers in your source documents, see “Creating Index Entries in FrameMaker” on page 121 and “Creating Index Entries in Word” on page 224.

To specify index settings for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.

3. Under **Index**, specify the appropriate value for each index setting. For more information about the index settings and values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying How Links to Files or External URLs Display in Browser Windows

ePublisher allows you to specify how you want links that open baggage files or links that open external URLs displayed in your output. A baggage file is any file that your source document references but is not contained in the ePublisher project, such as a .jpeg, .avi, .swf, .gif, or .png file or a Microsoft Word, Adobe FrameMaker, or XML file.

To specify link settings for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **Links**, specify the appropriate value for each links setting. For more information about the links settings and values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Character Encoding for Targets

In ePublisher, encoding refers to the character encoding method used to convert bytes into characters. Programs use encoding when they display HTML documents. Documents in English and most other Western European languages typically use the widely supported character encoding UTF-8. If you are producing output localized for other languages, such as Japanese, Korean, Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, Greek, Turkish, or Eastern European, Cyrillic, or Baltic languages, you must specify the correct encoding for each target for which you generate output.

Ensure the encoding you specify when you generate your output matches the encoding used in the environment where your output will be posted. For example, if your output will be posted on a web server, the encoding you specify when you generate your output should match the encoding used on the web server. If your output and the computer or web server hosting your output do not use the same character encoding method, some characters may not display correctly when users view your output.

To specify character encoding for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **Locale**, specify the appropriate value for the **Encoding** setting. For more information about the encoding setting values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying the Language Used by Targets

In ePublisher, locale refers to the language used when displaying output for a target. If you produce localized output, specify the correct language for each target in your ePublisher project.

To specify the language to use for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **Locale**, specify the appropriate value for the **Locale** setting. For more information about the locale setting values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying PDF Generation Settings

ePublisher can generate PDFs for each source document, for each top-level group in your project, or for each source document and each top-level group in your project.

Note: *If you are generating WebWorks help and you want to display a PDF button in your WebWorks Help system*, see “Specifying Output Format-Specific Settings” on page 392.

To specify PDF generation settings for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the output format next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **PDF**, specify the appropriate values for the PDF settings. For more information about PDF settings and values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Table of Contents Settings

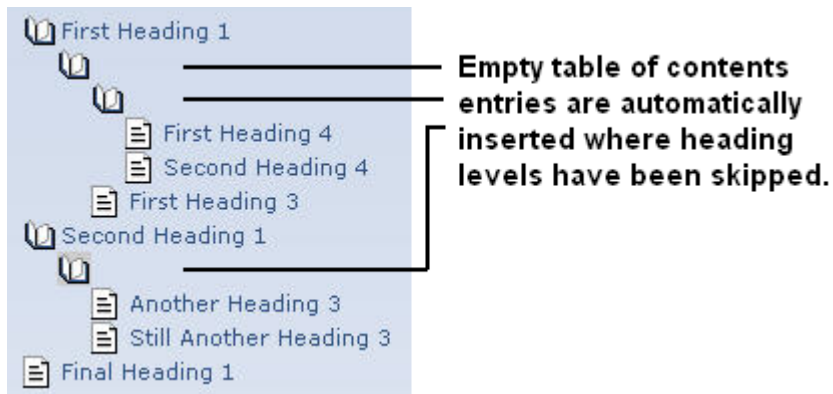
ePublisher allows you to specify whether you want to generate a table of contents, the file name you want to specify for your table of contents file, and how you want your table of contents to display in your generated output.

ePublisher provides table of contents settings to help you address how you want your table of contents to display. By default, ePublisher uses the table of contents levels specified in the project or in the Stationery file to create a table of contents for your help system based on the heading levels in your source documents. However, if you have source documents where writers skipped heading levels, you can specify how you want ePublisher to display skipped headings in the table of contents.

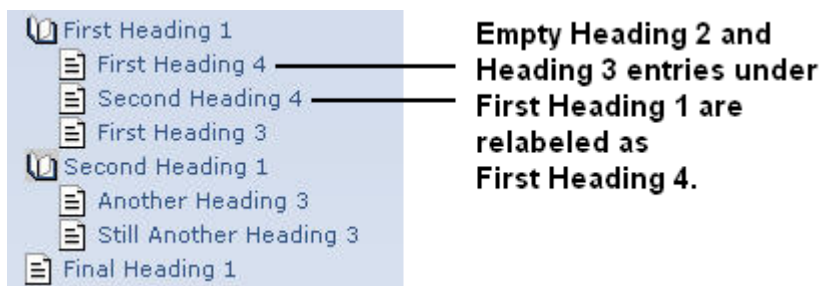
For example, assume that you have an ePublisher project that uses a Stationery file that specifies Heading 1, Heading 2, and Heading 3 as levels in the output table of contents. Then assume that in the source document, you skipped several Heading 2 levels. ePublisher displays an empty table of contents icon, similar to the following figure, in the location of the skipped Heading 2 levels unless you specify how you want to manage skipped heading levels in the generated table of contents.

You can specify the following behavior for table of contents where writers skipped headings:

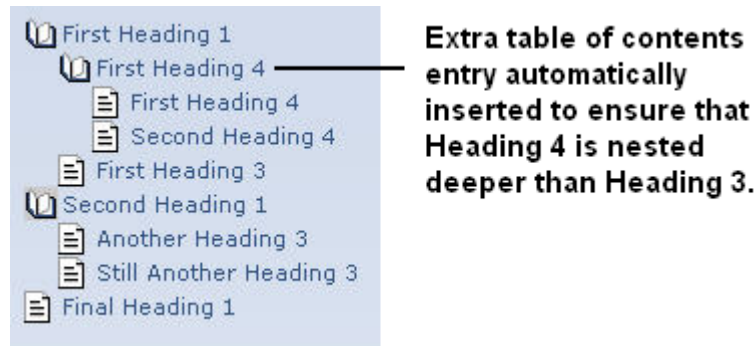
- *If you want ePublisher to automatically insert empty table of contents entries for skipped heading levels*, select the **Don't collapse** value. The following figure shows a table of contents with this option selected.



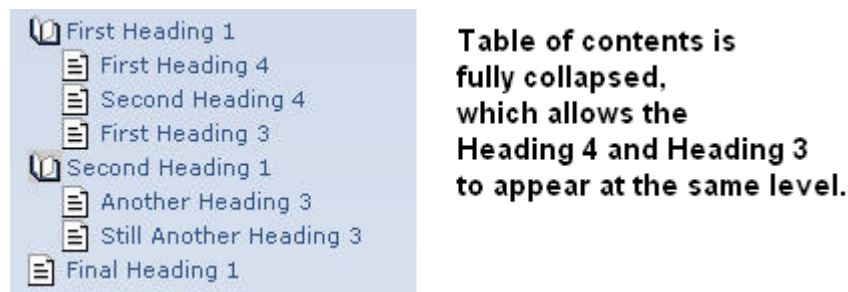
- *If you want ePublisher to automatically insert labeled entries for skipped heading levels*, select the **Re-label** value. ePublisher displays the heading text from the table of contents entry below the current entry as the table of contents label. The following figure shows a table of contents with this option selected.



- If you want *ePublisher* to automatically remove empty table of contents entries and move the heading that follows an empty table of contents entry up a level to replace the skipped table of contents level, select the **Smart collapse** value. The following figure shows a table of content with this option selected.



- If you want *ePublisher* to remove all skipped heading levels and table of contents entries and place all table of contents headings at the same level, regardless of the table of contents level specified in the *Stationery*, select the **Fully collapse** value. The following figure shows a table of contents with this option selected.



To specify table of contents settings for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify settings.
2. On the **Target** menu, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under **Table of contents**, specify the appropriate values for the table of contents settings. For more information about table of contents settings and values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

Specifying Report Settings

You can use reports to identify problems in your source documents. If an ePublisher report detects problems in your source document, ePublisher displays a notification alert in the report. You can specify which types of settings you want to use to validate your generated output and the type of notification you want to receive if ePublisher detects an issue when validating your output. For more information about using reports to validate your output and the different types of notifications you can receive, see “Validating Output Using Reports” on page 365.

Specifying Output Format-Specific Settings

You can specify output format-specific settings for the following output formats:

- eBook - ePUB 2.0
- Eclipse Help
- Microsoft HTML Help
- Microsoft WinHelp
- Microsoft Reader
- Oracle Help
- Palm Reader
- PDF
- PDF - XSL-FO
- Sun JavaHelp
- WebWorks Help
- WebWorks Reverb
- Wiki - Confluence
- Wiki - MediaWiki
- Wiki - MoinMoin

You must have the target that uses the output format selected in your project before you can see the output format-specific settings in the window. For example, to see WebWorks Help output format-specific settings in the window, you must have a target that uses the WebWorks Help output format selected as your active target. If you have a target that uses the Microsoft HTML Help output format selected as your active target, you will not be able to see WebWorks Help output format-specific settings in the window. You will only be able to see Microsoft HTML Help output format-specific settings.

To specify output format-specific settings for a target

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to specify output format-specific settings.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Target Settings**. You must have target modification permissions to modify target settings. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Under the name of the output format, specify the appropriate values for each output format-specific setting. For more information about output format-specific settings and values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.

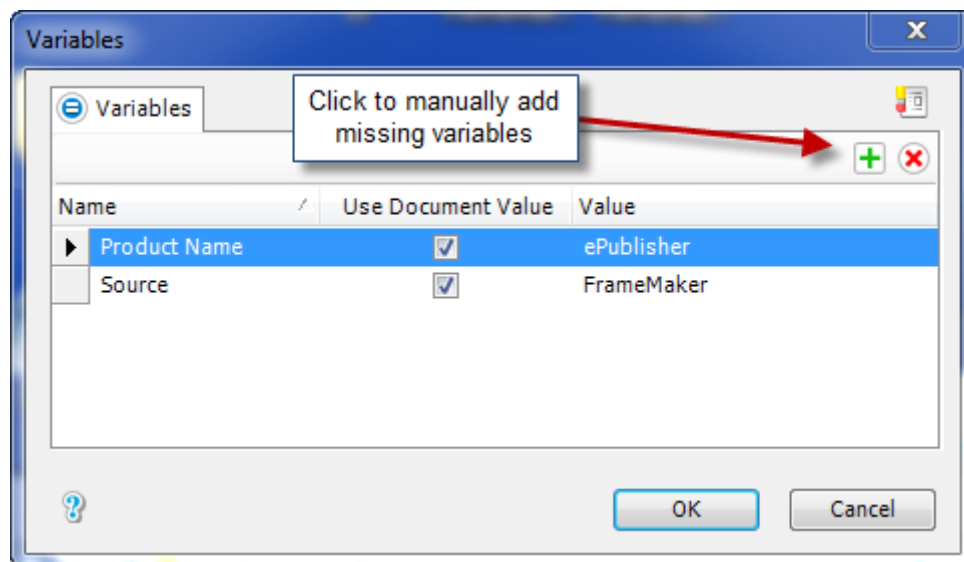
Customizing Variable Settings in Projects

In a project, you can use the variable values defined in your source document. You can also change the value of any variable in your source document in a project. Changing the value of a variable in a project does not change or affect the value of the variable in your source document. You can use the value of the variable you defined in your project when you generate output. Before you can work with variables in projects, you must insert variables in your source documents. For more information about variables and inserting variables and conditions in your source documents, see “Using Variables in FrameMaker” on page 123 and “Using Variables in Word” on page 225.

To customize a variable in a project

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to customize variable settings.
2. On the **Target** menu, click **Variables**. You must have target modification permissions to modify variable settings for a target. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.

Note: For Microsoft Word documents only, if you use variables that are built-in DocProperty types such as Author or Company, then you will need to manually add these variables into the project or stationery as they are not detected when scanned by ePublisher Designer. However, once added into either the stationery or project then they will be available for customization from that point forward.



3. In the **Name** column, find the variable you want to modify.
4. *If you want the your ePublisher project to use the variable value defined in your source document*, click in the **Value** field for the variable, and then select **Use document value** from the drop-down list.
5. *If you want to change the variable value ePublisher uses when generating output*, click in the **Value** field for the variable, and then type in a new value for the variable.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Generate your output. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
8. Review your output and confirm that variables display appropriately in your generated output. For more information, see “Viewing Output” on page 358.

Customizing Condition Settings in Projects

In a project, you can use the conditions defined in your source document to control the visibility of content to which you have applied conditions. You can also change the visibility specified for any condition in a project. Changing the visibility specified for any condition in a project does not change the visibility specified for the condition in your source documents. Before you can work with conditions in projects, you must apply conditions to content in your source documents. For more information about conditions and applying conditions in your source documents, see “Using Conditions in FrameMaker” on page 127 and “Using Conditions in Word” on page 229.

To customize a condition in a project

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to customize condition settings.
2. On the **Target** menu, click **Conditions**. You must have target modification permissions to modify condition settings for a target. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. In the **Name** column, find the condition for which you want condition to set the value.
4. Specify the appropriate value for the condition. For more information about condition values, click **Help**.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Generate your output. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
7. Review your output and confirm that conditionalized content displays appropriately in your generated output. For more information, see “Viewing Output” on page 358.

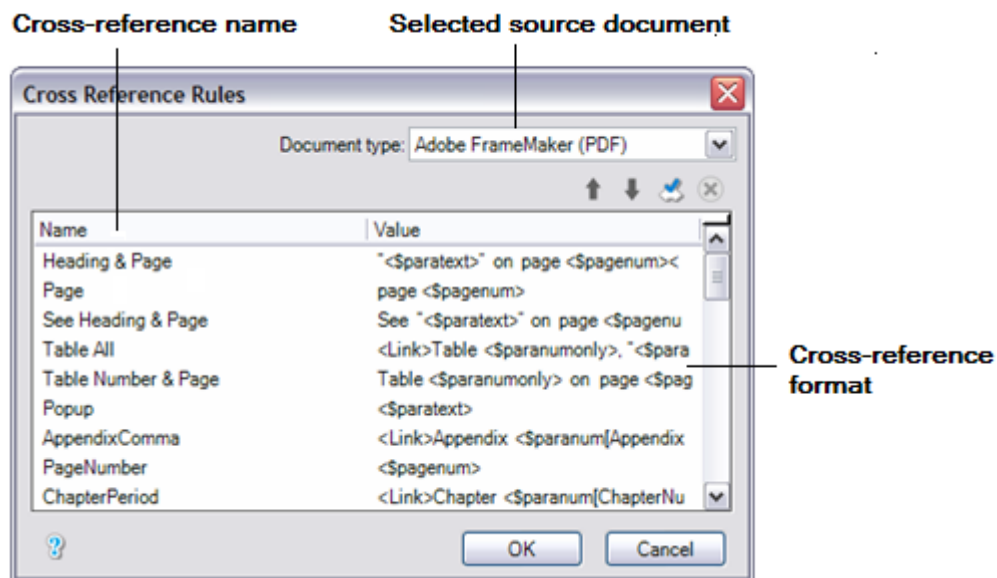
Customizing Cross-Reference Settings in Projects

Cross-references help users access related information quickly in printed and online content. When you convert your source documents to online help, if you have cross-references in your source documents, ePublisher automatically converts all cross-references to hypertext links. Typically, cross-references used for printed materials have a different format than cross-references used for online help. For example, cross-references in printed content typically include page numbers, while cross-references in online help typically do not include page numbers, because page numbers are out of context in online help.

In ePublisher, you use the Cross-Reference Rules window to add, edit, or delete cross-reference formats for your project. A cross-reference format is a combination of text and code that defines how you want your cross-reference to display. For example, your source documents may display the following cross-reference format: “Modifying Cross-Reference Formats on page *xxx*”, where *xxx* is the page number where the topic “Modifying Cross-Reference Formats” begins. However, you may modify the cross-reference format in ePublisher so that when you generate online content, the “Modifying Cross-Reference Formats” topic displays as a hyperlink without a page number, such as [Modifying Cross-Reference Formats in Projects](#).

ePublisher obtains the cross-reference formats and values in the Cross-Reference Rules window from your source documents. You can modify cross-reference formats in ePublisher. For more information about cross-reference building blocks or codes, see your content authoring tool documentation.

The following figure shows the Cross-Reference Rules window in ePublisher.



Modifying Cross-Reference Formats in Projects

Modify cross-reference formats when you want cross-references in your online content to use a different format than your printed content.

To modify a cross-reference format in a project

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to modify cross-reference formats.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Cross Reference Rules**. You must have target modification permissions to modify a cross-reference format for a target. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. Specify the appropriate value for each cross reference. For more information about cross reference values, click **Help**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Generate your output. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
6. Review your output and confirm that cross-references display appropriately in your generated output. For more information, see “Viewing Output” on page 358.

Adding Cross-Reference Formats to Projects

ePublisher obtains the cross-reference formats and values in the Cross-Reference Rules window from your source documents. You can also add cross-reference formats in ePublisher.

For example, if you started to use a new cross-reference format in your source document and the Stationery designer has not yet added this new cross-reference format to the Stationery associated with your project, you can add the new cross-reference format to your project and specify the cross-reference format you want to use for your new cross-reference format. After you add a new cross reference format ePublisher recognizes the new cross reference formats and applies the cross-reference format you specify.

To add a cross-reference format to a project

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to add a cross-reference format.
2. On the **Target menu**, click **Cross Reference Rules**. You must have target modification permissions to add a cross-reference format for a target. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. In the **Document type** field, select the content authoring tool for the cross-reference format you want to add.
4. Click the **Add New Cross Reference** icon.
5. In the **Name** field, type a name for the new cross-reference format you want to add to the project.

6. In the **Replacement** field, type a combination of text and code or building blocks that define how you want your new cross-reference to display. For more information about cross-reference building blocks or codes, see your content authoring tool Help.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK** again to close the window.
9. Generate your output. For more information, see “Generating Output” on page 353.
10. Review your output and confirm that cross-references display appropriately in your generated output. For more information, see “Viewing Output” on page 358.

Deleting Cross-Reference Formats from Projects

ePublisher obtains the cross-reference formats and values in the Cross-Reference Rules window from your source documents. You can delete cross-reference formats in ePublisher. Delete cross-reference formats when you no longer want to use the cross-reference format in your source documents.

If you delete the cross-reference format in your ePublisher project, but your source documents continue to use the cross-reference format, ePublisher will detect the deleted cross-reference format in your source documents and add it to your project again the next time you scan your source documents or generate output.

To delete a cross-reference format from a project

1. On the **Project** menu, select the target next to **Active Target** for which you want to delete a cross-reference format.
2. On the **Target** menu, click **Cross Reference Rules**. You must have target modification permissions to delete a cross-reference format for a target. For more information, see “Customizing Target Settings” on page 380.
3. In the **Document type** field, select the content authoring tool associated with the cross-reference format you want to delete.
4. In the **Name** column, select the cross-reference format you want to delete.
5. Click the **Delete Cross Reference** icon.
6. Click **OK**.

Customizing File Mappings

This section explains how to customize file mappings in a project.

Understanding File Mappings

In ePublisher, a file mapping is an association between a file extension and an ePublisher adapter. An ePublisher adapter is an ePublisher component that links the content authoring tool that you used to develop your content with ePublisher. ePublisher currently provides adapters for the following content authoring tools:

- Adobe FrameMaker
- Microsoft Word
- XML

In ePublisher, you can add any source documents that can be opened with Adobe FrameMaker, Microsoft Word, DITA-XML to your ePublisher project through the use of file mappings. By default, ePublisher provides a list of file extensions that are preset to use either Microsoft Word, Adobe FrameMaker, or the built-in XML adapter. For example, you can add `.txt` files to your ePublisher project by specifying the adapter ePublisher should use in order to open the `.txt` file. You can specify whether you want the Adobe FrameMaker, Microsoft Word, or XML adapter to open the `.txt` files you add to your project.

Certain file extensions, such as `.book`, `.fm`, and `.bk` files, are unique to a specific adapter. For example, `.book`, `.fm`, and `.bk` file can only be opened by Adobe FrameMaker. `.rtf`, `.xml`, and `.doc` are specific to Microsoft Word. If you try to generate output or an output preview using a file type associated with an ePublisher adapter and the file type cannot normally be opened with the content authoring tool associated with the ePublisher adapter, ePublisher displays an error message. The built-in XML adapter ePublisher provides is configured out-of-the-box to support DITA-XML. You can also configure ePublisher Stationery to support other XML types. However, XML input formats other than DITA-XML may not be supported by the WebWorks Technical Support team.

If you have an ePublisher Contract ID that enables only the Microsoft Word, the Adobe FrameMaker, or the built-in XML adapter, then you can use only that adapter when you use ePublisher. Although the option to choose another adapter may be available in the ePublisher user interface, you will not be able to generate output or preview output using the other adapters. You can only use the adapters enabled by your Contract ID.

Modifying File Mappings

ePublisher provides a default list of file mappings in which file extensions have been preset to use a specific adapter. However, in some cases you may need to modify file mappings for a project. For file extensions that can either be opened with Microsoft Word or Adobe FrameMaker, such as `.txt` files, you can specify the adapter you want ePublisher to use for the file extension. You can modify file mappings for a specific project or for all of your ePublisher projects.

To modify a file mapping

1. *If you want to modify a file mapping for a specific project*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, click **Project Settings**.
 - b. In the **File Extension** column, click the file extension for which you want to modify the file mapping.
2. *If you want to modify a file mapping for all of your ePublisher projects*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Edit** menu, click **Preferences**.
 - b. On the **File Mappings** tab, in the **File Extension** column, click the file extension for which you want to modify the file mapping.
3. In the **Adapter** column, select the ePublisher adapter you want to associate with the file extension. The ePublisher adapter you associate with the file extension will be the ePublisher adapter that opens files with the specified file extension.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK** again. Each new ePublisher project you create after you modify the file mapping will use the ePublisher adapter you associated with the file extension.

Creating New File Mappings

If there is a file extension that you would like to use but the file extension is not available in ePublisher in the default list of file extensions, you can create a new file mapping. To create a new file mapping, add a new file extension and associate, or map, the file extension to an ePublisher adapter. You can use the new, or custom, file mapping to specify that ePublisher open files using the new file extension with Adobe FrameMaker, Microsoft Word, or the built-in XML adapter. When you create a new file mapping, ePublisher saves information about the new file mapping you created, and you can apply the new file mapping to all of the subsequent projects that you open.

When you create a file mapping and specify an ePublisher adapter for the file extension, ensure the file extension can be opened using the content authoring tool associated with the adapter outside of ePublisher before you create the new file mapping. If the file extension cannot be normally opened using the content authoring tool, then ePublisher will also not be able to generate output from the source document using the ePublisher adapter.

For example, assume your Contract ID enables licensing for ePublisher Express for FrameMaker. Next assume that you add HTML as a file mapping and associate the .html file extension with the Microsoft Word adapter. When you create the file mapping for the .html file extension with the Microsoft Word adapter, ePublisher allows you to add the HTML file to your project. However, since you do not have a valid license key for the ePublisher Express for Microsoft Word, ePublisher displays the following error message.



To create a new file mapping

1. *If you want to create a new file mapping for a specific project*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, click **Project Settings**.
 - b. Click the **Add** icon.
2. *If you want to create a new file mapping for all of your ePublisher projects*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Edit** menu, click **Preferences**.
 - b. On the **File Mappings** tab, click the **Add** icon.
3. In the **File extension** field, type the file extension you want to use for the file mapping. For example, you can add .html as a file extension.
4. In the **Adapter** field, select the ePublisher adapter you want to associate with the file extension. The ePublisher adapter you associate with the file extension will be the ePublisher adapter that opens files with the specified file extension. For example, you can select Microsoft Word as the adapter for the .html file extension.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK** again. Each new ePublisher project you create after you modify the file mapping will use the ePublisher adapter you associated with the file extension.

Deleting File Mappings

Delete a file mapping when you no longer want to use the file mapping in your ePublisher project.

To delete a file mapping

1. *If you want to delete a file mapping for a specific project*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Project** menu, click **Project Settings**.
 - b. In the **File extension** field, select the file extension for the file mapping you want to delete.
2. *If you want to delete a file mapping for all of your ePublisher projects*, complete the following steps:
 - a. On the **Edit** menu, click **Preferences**.
 - b. On the **File Mappings** tab, in the **File extension** field, select the file extension for the file mapping you want to delete.
3. Click the **Delete** icon.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK** again. Each new ePublisher project you create after you delete the file mapping will not use the ePublisher adapter you deleted.